# Oracle® Banking Supply Chain Finance Supply Chain Finance User Guide





Oracle Banking Supply Chain Finance Supply Chain Finance User Guide, Release 14.8.1.0.0

G44460-01

Copyright © 2018, 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This software and related documentation are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are protected by intellectual property laws. Except as expressly permitted in your license agreement or allowed by law, you may not use, copy, reproduce, translate, broadcast, modify, license, transmit, distribute, exhibit, perform, publish, or display any part, in any form, or by any means. Reverse engineering, disassembly, or decompilation of this software, unless required by law for interoperability, is prohibited.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice and is not warranted to be error-free. If you find any errors, please report them to us in writing.

If this is software, software documentation, data (as defined in the Federal Acquisition Regulation), or related documentation that is delivered to the U.S. Government or anyone licensing it on behalf of the U.S. Government, then the following notice is applicable:

U.S. GOVERNMENT END USERS: Oracle programs (including any operating system, integrated software, any programs embedded, installed, or activated on delivered hardware, and modifications of such programs) and Oracle computer documentation or other Oracle data delivered to or accessed by U.S. Government end users are "commercial computer software," "commercial computer software documentation," or "limited rights data" pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, the use, reproduction, duplication, release, display, disclosure, modification, preparation of derivative works, and/or adaptation of i) Oracle programs (including any operating system, integrated software, any programs embedded, installed, or activated on delivered hardware, and modifications of such programs), ii) Oracle computer documentation and/or iii) other Oracle data, is subject to the rights and limitations specified in the license contained in the applicable contract. The terms governing the U.S. Government's use of Oracle cloud services are defined by the applicable contract for such services. No other rights are granted to the U.S. Government.

This software or hardware is developed for general use in a variety of information management applications. It is not developed or intended for use in any inherently dangerous applications, including applications that may create a risk of personal injury. If you use this software or hardware in dangerous applications, then you shall be responsible to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy, and other measures to ensure its safe use. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates disclaim any liability for any damages caused by use of this software or hardware in dangerous applications.

Oracle®, Java, MySQL, and NetSuite are registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Intel and Intel Inside are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation. All SPARC trademarks are used under license and are trademarks or registered trademarks of SPARC International, Inc. AMD, Epyc, and the AMD logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Advanced Micro Devices. UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

This software or hardware and documentation may provide access to or information about content, products, and services from third parties. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates are not responsible for and expressly disclaim all warranties of any kind with respect to third-party content, products, and services unless otherwise set forth in an applicable agreement between you and Oracle. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates will not be responsible for any loss, costs, or damages incurred due to your access to or use of third-party content, products, or services, except as set forth in an applicable agreement between you and Oracle.

# Contents

1

2

Preface		
Purpose	i	
Before You Begin	i	
Module Pre-requisite	i	
Audience	i	
Acronyms and Abbreviations	ii	
Basic Actions	ii	
Conventions	iii	
Diversity and Inclusion	iii	
Documentation Accessibility	iv	
Icons	iv	
Related Resources	vi	
Screenshot Disclaimer	vi	
Module Post-requisite	vi	
Supply Chain Finance  Maintenance for Supply Chain Finance		
2.1 System Parameters Maintenance	2	
2.1.1 View System Parameters	2	
2.2 Product Parameters Maintenance	13	
2.2.1 Create Product Parameters	13	
2.2.2 View Product Parameters	24	
2.3 Program Parameters Maintenance	25	
2.3.1 Create Program Parameters	26	
2.3.2 View Program Parameters	42	
2.4 Account Maintenance	43	
2.4.1 Account Role	44	
2.4.1.1 Create Account Role	44	
2.4.1.2 View Account Role	45	

2.4.2 Entry Codes

2.4.2.1 Create Account Entry Code

46

47

	2.4	.2.2	View Account Entry Code	48
	2.4.3	Acco	ounting Entries	49
	2.4	.3.1	Create Account Entries	49
	2.4	.3.2	View Account Entries	53
	2.4.4	Exter	rnal Account Mapping	54
	2.4	.4.1	Create External Account Mapping	55
	2.4	.4.2	View External Account Mapping	58
	2.4.5	Interr	nal Account Mapping	60
	2.4	.5.1	Create Internal Account Mapping	60
	2.4	.5.2	View Internal Account Mapping	62
2.5	Alert	s Mair	ntenance	63
	2.5.1	Alert	Contact Details	63
	2.5	5.1.1	Create Alert Contact Details	64
	2.5	5.1.2	View Alert Contact Details	65
	2.5.2	Alert	Definition	66
	2.5	5.2.1	Create Alert Definition	66
	2.5	5.2.2	View Alert Definition	67
	2.5.3	Alert	Decisioning	69
	2.5	5.3.1	Create Alert Decisioning	69
	2.5	5.3.2	View Alert Decisioning	74
	2.5.4	Alert	Template Details	76
	2.5	5.4.1	Create Alert Template Details	76
	2.5	5.4.2	View Alert Template Details	77
	2.5.5	Alert	Template ID	79
	2.5	5.5.1	Create Alert Template ID	79
	2.5	5.5.2	View Alert Template ID	80
2.6	Char	ges M	1aintenance	82
	2.6.1	Char	rge Code	82
	2.6	5.1.1	Create Charge Code	82
	2.6	5.1.2	View Charge Code	83
	2.6.2	Char	rge Rule Maintenance	85
	2.6	5.2.1	Create Charge Rule Maintenance	85
	2.6	5.2.2	View Charge Rule	87
	2.6.3	Char	rge Decisioning	88
	2.6	5.3.1	Create Charge Decisioning	88
	2.6	5.3.2	View Charge Decisioning	95
	2.6.4	Char	ge Preferential Pricing	97
	2.6	5.4.1	Create Charge Preferential Pricing	97
	2.6	5.4.2	View Preferential Pricing	101
2.7	Insur	ance I	Maintenance	102
	2.7.1	Crea	ite Insurance	103
	2.7.2	View	Insurance	104

	2.8 Interest Maintenance	105
	2.8.1 Interest Pricing	106
	2.8.1.1 Create Interest Pricing	106
	2.8.1.2 View Interest Pricing	110
	2.8.2 Interest Rate Decisioning	111
	2.8.2.1 Create Interest Rate Decisioning	111
	2.8.2.2 View Interest Rate Decisioning	114
	2.9 Limits Structure Maintenance	115
	2.9.1 Create Limits Structure	116
	2.9.2 View Limits	123
3	Finance Disbursement	
	3.1 Disbursement Task	1
4	Finance Settlement	
	4.1 Initiate Finance Settlement	
	4.2 Settlement Task	6
	Finance Amendment	
	5.1 Initiate Finance Amendment	1
	5.2 Amendment Task	8
	Transaction Reversal	
	6.1 Initiate Transaction Reversal	1
	6.2 Disbursement Reversal Task	5
	6.3 Settlement Reversal Task	26
	6.4 Amendment Reversal Task Process	45
7	Inquiries	
	7.1 Accounting Inquiry	1
	7.2 Charge Inquiry	3
	7.3 Finance Inquiry	6
	7.4 Message Inquiry	8
	7.5 Structure Limits Inquiry	11
	7.6 Structure Limits Txn Inquiry	13

8	Batch Jobs		
	8.1 EOD Batch	1	
	8.2 Independent Batch	3	
9	Process Codes		
А	Functional Activity Codes		
	Index		



## **Preface**

- Purpose
- Before You Begin
- Module Pre-requisite
- Audience
- Acronyms and Abbreviations
- Basic Actions
- Conventions
- Diversity and Inclusion
- Documentation Accessibility
- <u>Icons</u>
- Related Resources
- Screenshot Disclaimer
- Module Post-requisite

## Purpose

This guide is designed to help acquaint you with the Oracle® Banking Supply Chain Finance.

It provides an overview of the system and guides you through the various steps involved in setting up and providing the supply chain finance services for the customers of your bank.

# Before You Begin

Refer to the Getting Started User Guide for information on common functionalities like login, navigation, and general settings. Reviewing that guide is advisable before proceeding with this document.

# Module Pre-requisite

Specify **User ID** and **Password**, and login to **Home** screen.

## **Audience**

This guide is primarily intended for the following user/user roles:



Table 1 Audience

Role	Function
Back-office executive	Input functions for transactions
Back-office managers/officers	Authorization of functions
Product Managers	Product definition and authorization

# Acronyms and Abbreviations

The list of the acronyms and abbreviations used in this guide are as follows:

Table 2 Acronyms and Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Description
OBSCF	Oracle Banking Supply Chain Finance
SCF	Supply Chain Finance
OBSCFCM	Oracle Banking Supply Chain Finance and Cash Management
FCUBS	FlexCube Universal Banking System
OBDX	Oracle Banking Digital Experience
ELCM	Enterprise Limits and Collateral Management
API	Application Programming Interface
EOD	End of Day
FIFO	First In First Out
LIFO	Last In First Out
HAFO	Highest Amount First Out
LAFO	Lowest Amount First Out
STP	Straight Through Processing
PO	Purchase Order
UI	User Interface

## **Basic Actions**

The basic actions performed in the screens are as follows:

Table 3 Basic Actions

Actions	Description
Approve	Click <b>Approve</b> to approve the initiated record.  This button is displayed once you click <b>Authorize</b> .
Audit	Click <b>Audit</b> to view the maker details, checker details of the record.     This button is displayed only for the records that are already created.
Authorize	Click <b>Authorize</b> to authorize the record created. A maker of the screen is not allowed to authorize the same. Only a checker can authorize a record.  This button is displayed only for the already created records. For more information on the process, refer Authorization Process.



Table 3 (Cont.) Basic Actions

Actions	Description
Cancel	Click Cancel to cancel the action performed.
Close	Click <b>Close</b> to close a record. This action is available only when a record is created.
Collapse All	Click Collapse All to hide the details in the sections.  This button is displayed once you click Compare.
Compare	Click <b>Compare</b> to view the comparison through the field values of old record and the current record.  This button is displayed in the widget once you click <b>Authorize</b> .
Confirm	Click Confirm to confirm the action performed.
Expand All	Click <b>Expand All</b> to expand and view all the details in the sections.  This button is displayed once you click <b>Compare</b> .
New	Click <b>New</b> to add a new record. The system displays a new record to specify the required data. The fields marked with Required are mandatory.  This button is displayed only for the records that are already created.
ок	Click <b>OK</b> to confirm the details in the screen.
Reject	Click <b>Reject</b> to reject the initiated record.  This button is displayed once you click <b>Authorize</b> .
Save	Click <b>Save</b> to save the details entered or selected in the screen.
Unlock	Click <b>Unlock</b> to update the details of an existing record. The system displays an existing record in editable mode.  • This button is displayed only for the records that are already created.
View	Click <b>View</b> to view the details in a particular modification stage.  This button is displayed in the widget once you click <b>Authorize</b> .
View Difference only	Click View Difference only to view a comparison through the field element values of old record and the current record, which has undergone changes.  This button is displayed once you click Compare.

## Conventions

The following text conventions are used in this document:

Convention	Meaning
boldface	Boldface type indicates graphical user interface elements associated with an action, or terms defined in text or the glossary.
italic	Italic type indicates book titles, emphasis, or placeholder variables for which you supply particular values.
monospace	Monospace type indicates commands within a paragraph, URLs, code in examples, text that appears on the screen, or text that you enter.

# **Diversity and Inclusion**

Oracle is fully committed to diversity and inclusion. Oracle respects and values having a diverse workforce that increases thought leadership and innovation. As part of our initiative to



build a more inclusive culture that positively impacts our employees, customers, and partners, we are working to remove insensitive terms from our products and documentation. We are also mindful of the necessity to maintain compatibility with our customers' existing technologies and the need to ensure continuity of service as Oracle's offerings and industry standards evolve. Because of these technical constraints, our effort to remove insensitive terms is ongoing and will take time and external cooperation.

## **Documentation Accessibility**

For information about Oracle's commitment to accessibility, visit the Oracle Accessibility Program website at <a href="http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=docacc">http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=docacc</a>.

#### **Access to Oracle Support**

Oracle customer access to and use of Oracle support services will be pursuant to the terms and conditions specified in their Oracle order for the applicable services.

## **Icons**

The list of icons available on the screens are as follows:

Table 4 Icons - Common

Icon	Function
J L	Minimize
7 F	
г ¬	Maximize
LJ	
×	Close
Q	Perform Search
-	Open a list
$\leftrightarrow$	Date Range
<b>±</b>	Add a new record
K	Navigate to the first record
X	Navigate to the last record
4	Navigate to the previous record



Table 4 (Cont.) Icons - Common

Icon	Function
•	Navigate to the next record
88	Grid view
=	List view
G	Refresh
+	Click this icon to add a new row.
-	Click this icon to delete a row, which is already added.
<u></u>	Calendar
Û	Alerts
6	Unlock Option
₽	View Option
₩	Reopen Option
0 0 0	Options
(i)	Info
呂	Tree View



Table 4 (Cont.) Icons - Common

Icon	Function
	Table View

#### Table 5 Icons - Widget

Icon	Function
<b>E</b>	Open status
D	Unauthorized status
Ľ.	Rejected status
A	Closed status
D	Authorized status
	Modification Number

## Related Resources

For more information, refer to the following resources:

- Oracle® Banking Common Core User Guide
- Oracle® Banking Security Management System User Guide
- Oracle® Banking Getting Started User Guide
- · Receivables and Payables User Guide

## Screenshot Disclaimer

Personal information used in the interface or documents is dummy and does not exist in the real world. It is only for reference purposes.

# Module Post-requisite

After finishing all the requirements, please log out from the **Home** screen.



# Supply Chain Finance

#### Overview

Oracle® Banking Supply Chain Finance is a comprehensive digitized end-to-end solution that supports the full lifecycle of supply chain finance across receivables and payables, offering supplier-centric and buyer-centric financing. The solution addresses each of the supply chain processes from design through execution thereby enabling banks to optimize the working capital and supply chain operations of their corporate customers. Its unique value lies in its ability to provide the business with predefined processes and a world-class framework that takes care of business risk and compliance needs.

#### **Benefits**

- Suppliers are paid early
- Buyers can extend their payment terms
- Financial Institutions get their fee income at less risk and less cost.

The Oracle® Banking Supply Chain Finance platform enables the interaction between all the parties of the trade i.e., the suppliers, the buyers, and the bank. The finance provider, or the bank settles supplier invoices in advance or on due date of the invoice, for a lower financing cost than the suppliers' own source of funds. When the finance provider extends finance, it can be at the request of the supplier or at the request of the buyer by earmarking the credit limits of the concerned party. Different SCF techniques for financing are employed depending on the party requesting for finance and the business scenarios.

The Oracle® Banking Supply Chain Finance application also provides Audit Trail feature to log the changes made on transactions and record the date of each change being made.



#### (i) Note

This feature is enabled by default, and cannot be disabled.

#### **Functionality**

One of the core functionalities or the foundations of Oracle® Banking Supply Chain Finance is the support for creation of flexible and parametrized programs with capability to link a buyer to multiple suppliers, or a supplier to multiple buyers.

There are two types of supply chain finance programs:

- Supplier Centric Program When the supplier is a large corporate; then the buyer with whom the supplier is dealing becomes the Counter Party/Spoke and the supplier becomes the Anchor of the SCF program. This program is called as Supplier Centric **Program.** The anchor onboards all his counter parties or spokes to the SCF program.
- Buyer Centric Program When the Buyer is a large corporate; then the supplier with whom the buyer is dealing becomes the Counter party/Spoke and buyer becomes the Anchor of the SCF program. This program is called as Buyer Centric Program. The anchor onboards all his counter parties or spokes to the SCF program.

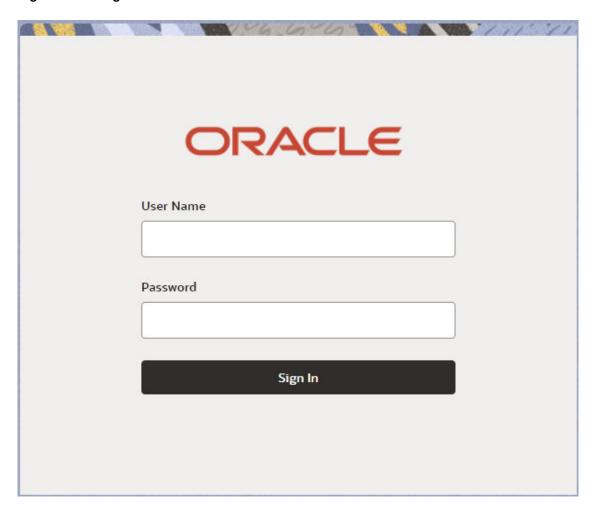


#### Home: Dashboard

Successfully signing into the Oracle® Banking Supply Chain Finance application displays the Dashboard as your home screen. It is a collection of various portlets that are displayed based on your role and access rights. The Dashboard enables easy access and analysis of transactional and static data through these interactive and contextual portlets. User can drag and move different portlets, resize, auto adjust the size, and expand/collapse the portlet.

On starting the Oracle® Banking Supply Chain Finance application, the below login screen is displayed:

Figure 1-1 Login



- 1. Specify your **User Name** and **Password** to access the application.
- Click Sign In to log into application. The Dashboard screen displays.



Figure 1-2 Dashboard



Oracle® Banking Supply Chain Finance Dashboard currently consists of the following portlets for Supply Chain Finance:

**Table 1-1 Dashboard Portlets** 

Portlets	Description
Invoices Raised	This widget displays the data for financed and non-financed Invoices on monthly basis as a bar graph. On clicking the table icon on the top-right corner, the same data is displayed in tabular format with financed/non-financed invoices grouped into monthly buckets. On clicking the bar graph, the screen will pop-up with corporate name and aggregated invoice amount and further clicking on the '+' (expand) icon beside corporate name launches the Invoice Inquiry screen with data of supplier name; To Date and From Date as per the selected date.
Outstanding Pre-Shipment Finances	This widget displays the list of outstanding pre-shipment finances in form of doughnut. The finances are displayed separately for Finances with Linked Invoices (Eligible for Conversion to Post Shipment Finances) and Finances without Linked Invoices. On clicking the doughnut, the screen will pop-up with the list of finances displaying the Finance Reference No, Maturity Date, Total Outstanding Amount, Program Name, Buyer Name, and Supplier Name. The filter option allows the user to filter based on supplier, program, and buyer.
Customer wise utilization trend	This widget gives a bird's eye view of the utilization for each program plotted for each month. The limit type and date range can be selected from the filter option.
Facilities Expiring	This widget lists all facilities nearing expiry or expired and offers a drilldown at each entity level. The user can filter the facilities expired for a specific time period, and facilities near expiry within the specific days.



Table 1-1 (Cont.) Dashboard Portlets

Portlets	Description
Facility Utilization	This widget classifies all facilities into three categories and those are nearing breach, breached, and under-utilized. The drilldown allows the user to view these details at an entity level. There is an option to search and filter the details for a specific entity also.  Nearing Breach: When utilized amount is more than 85% of the sanctioned amount.  Breached: When utilized amount is greater than or equal to the sanctioned amount.  Under Utilized: When utilized amount is less than 20% of the sanctioned amount.
Facility Wise Sanctioned Limit trend	This widget displays the sanctioned limit as a trend-line plotted over the preceding the six months. The filter option allows the user to select a specific entity and limit type along with time frame to plot this line.
Top Defaulters	This widget displays the list of top defaulters for the previous and current months.
Transaction Status Details	Transactions are grouped product-wise into groups as disbursed, partially settled, or fully settled for a specific date range, which is editable. The user can select on any product to view further details of transaction for the product.
Aging of Invoices	This widget displays invoice aging information in the form of a doughnut. The graph displays the invoice amount volume split as per aging buckets which are configurable at the time of implementation i.e., 0-30 days, 30-60 days, and so on. Range criteria can be defined with a maximum of 6 ranges. On clicking any of the range buckets on the graph, a pop-up window appears with the list of corporates whose invoices are due for that aging bucket and further clicking on the '+' (expand) icon beside corporate name launches the Receivables Inquiry screen with data of supplier name, issue date, due date, etc., as per the selected date. Click the bar-chart icon on the top-right corner to change the view from doughnut (default) to bar chart. The user can also flip the widget to view the same details for aging of overdue invoices.
Settlement Trend for Pre- Shipment Finances	This widget displays the list of settled pre-shipment finances in form of trend line plotted over the preceding six months by default. The user can view the finances for 12 months. The settled finances are displayed in the following categories; Settled Through Post-Shipment Disbursement, Settled Through Invoice Payment, and Settled Through Direct Finance Payment. The filter option allows the user to filter the finances based on the borrower.
Upcoming Repayments	This widget displays the finance and interest payments that are due in the next 7 days as a bar graph. Each day displays the finance payment dues combined with the interest payment dues. A separate Interest payment due bar is displayed only if the underlying finance is not matured. On clicking the bar graph, the screen will pop-up with list of dues displaying the Finance Reference Number, Amount, and the Borrower name. The filter option allows the user to filter based on the start date, and currency.
Top 5 Corporates	This widget displays information of the top five customers; with respect to their total Receivables and Payables. On clicking the table icon at the top-right, the graph populates the business volume data of the same top 5 customers in tabular format.



Table 1-1 (Cont.) Dashboard Portlets

Portlets	Description
Business Volume Trend	This widget displays the business trends (total receivables and payables) of the previous six months including the current month based on historic data. The trend line/bar graph is plotted based on the highs/peak.
Payments – Invoice Recon	This widget provides a snapshot of the reconciliation details of payments against the entity selected, i.e., invoice, cash flow, allocation, or finance. Click the respective icons to view these details as a doughnut or as a line graph. You can view the volume percentage of payment records that are manually reconciled, autoreconciled, partially reconciled, and unreconciled. Using the filter options, you can select a specific customer and/or modify the date range. Click the refresh icon to reset the data. If you have selected the line-graph option, you can click on specific trend-line points where the Volume (Y) axis meets the Month (X) axis. A pop-up window appears, displaying the names of the corporates and the count of records for that particular month and the reconciliation status.
SLA Status Summary	This widget displays the SLA status of the transactions in three categories i.e., within SLA, nearing SLA, or breached SLA in form of doughnut. You can flip the widget to view the list of transactions in a tabular format. The filter option allows the user to filter the transactions based on the Customer Number, Branch, Process Name, Date Range, and SLA Status.
Finance Maturing	This widget displays the list of the invoice finances, purchase order finances, and the total outstanding finances which are maturing each week in the form of a trend line. While the default view is for the upcoming month, this time frame to can be changed to view further details. The user can flip the widget to view the detailed list of finances maturing. The user can the filter to view the finances for a specific borrower.
Top Borrowers	This widget is a bar graph which shows the top 5 borrowers for the previous year and current year. Clicking the bar-chart for any borrower offers a drilldown list of finances for the borrower.

Perform following actions on the **Dashboard** screen:

- To add more portlets, click the **Add** icon located at the top-right corner of the Dashboard.
- To remove a portlet, click the Remove icon located at the portlet's top-right corner.
- To configure the portlet, click the **Configure Tile** located at the portlet's top-left corner.
- To flip the portlet view, click the Flip Forward or Flip Back icon.
- To change the portlet's position, click and hold the **Drag to reorder** icon at the portlet's bottom-center and then move portlet to the desired position.
- To apply filter on the portlet's data, click the Filter icon to view the pop-up select filter values.

# Maintenance for Supply Chain Finance

This topic describes the maintenance of reference data to be set on day zero to use the Supply Chain Finance module.

To enable the functioning of Supply Chain Finance application, certain reference data needs to be set up on day zero. The user needs to set up reference data like products, programs, limits, charge details, interest pricing, etc. The user may also need to identify administrators to perform admin related tasks (creating users, assigning tasks and functions to the users as per their profile, etc.,).

#### **Maintaining Core Reference Data**

Certain core reference data is required to be set up for execution of Supply Chain Finance transactions such as country list, currency, customer category, holiday list, list of financial institutions/banks, branch, FX rates, and so on.

Refer the Oracle Banking Common Core User Guide for setting up core reference data.

This topic consists the following sub-topics:

#### System Parameters Maintenance

This topic describes the information to view and modify the day-zero system parameters for Supply Chain Finance module.

#### Product Parameters Maintenance

This topic describes the information to create new products and set its attributes.

#### Program Parameters Maintenance

This topic describes the information to create a new program for financing along with its attributes.

#### Account Maintenance

This topic describes the information to setup the reference data for Accounting such as account mapping, entry codes, roles, and accounting entries in Supply Chain Finance system.

#### Alerts Maintenance

This topic describes the information to setup the reference data for Alerts such as contact details, definition, and decisioning in Supply Chain Finance system.

#### Charges Maintenance

This topic describes the information to maintain the charges in Supply Chain system.

#### Insurance Maintenance

This topic describes the information to maintain details of the insurance company from where the banks intends to purchase insurance policies for covering the default risk of the debtor/borrower corporate.

#### Interest Maintenance

This topic describes the information to maintain the interest in Supply Chain Finance system.

#### Limits Structure Maintenance

This topic describes the information to configure limit structures by mapping various limit types to appropriate entities.



## 2.1 System Parameters Maintenance

This topic describes the information to view and modify the day-zero system parameters for Supply Chain Finance module.

This screen displays the day-zero system parameters which are setup during an implementation. This set up will be configured as part of Day Zero delivery of the application and can be modified by the bank through a UI, if required. The system parameters are segregated into the following data segments.

- Workflow
- Finance
- Dashboard
- Product
- Delinguency
- Application
- Feature Activation

This topic consists the following sub-topics:

View System Parameters

This topic describes the systematic instruction to view, modify, or authorize the day zero system parameters for Supply Chain Finance module.

## 2.1.1 View System Parameters

This topic describes the systematic instruction to view, modify, or authorize the day zero system parameters for Supply Chain Finance module.

A tile is present for each record that has been created. The bottom portion of each record-tile displays the following:

- The status, whether Authorized, Unauthorized, or Rejected
- Open or Closed
- The number of times the record has been submitted by the Maker added.
- On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Maintenance. Under Maintenance, Click System Parameters.
- Under System Parameters, click View System Parameters.

The View System Parameters screen displays.

Figure 2-1 View System Parameters

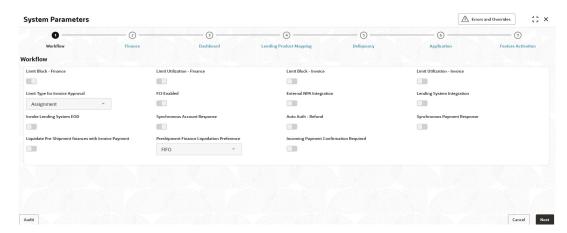




3. Click **Options** icon and select **Unlock** to modify the records.

The System Parameters - Workflow (parameters) screen displays.

Figure 2-2 System Parameters - Workflow



4. On Workflow tab, default configuration of workflow parameters is displayed and can be configured as per the bank's requirements.

For more information on fields, refer to the field description table.

Table 2-1 Workflow - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Limit Block – Finance	Switch the toggle ON to enable limit blocking during finance transactions.
Limit Utilization – Finance	Switch the toggle ON to enable limit utilization and release during finance transactions.
Limit Block – Invoice	Switch the toggle ON to enable limit blocking during invoice transactions.
Limit Utilization – Finance	Switch the toggle ON to enable limit utilization and release during invoice transactions.
Limit Type for Invoice Approval	Select the limit type required for invoice approval.
FCI Enabled	Switch the toggle ON to enable or disable the FCI integration.
External NPA Integration	Switch the toggle ON to enable the NPA integration with external system.
Lending System Integration	Switch the toggle ON to enable the Integration with lending system.
Invoke Lending System EOD	Switch the toggle ON to enable the Integration of EOD process with the Lending System.
Synchronous Account Response	Switch the toggle ON to enable the account response as synchronous.
Auto Auth – Refund	Switch the toggle ON to enable the auto authorization required for the refund transactions.
Synchronous Payment Response	Switch the toggle ON to enable the payment response as synchronous.
Liquidate Pre-Shipment finances with Invoice Payment	Switch this toggle ON to enable the liquidation of pre-shipment finances where post-shipment finance is not identified for an invoice.



Table 2-1 (Cont.) Workflow - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Pre-Shipment Finance Liquidation Preference	Select the liquidation preference for the settlement of pre-shipment finance.
	The available options are:     FIFO     Invoice linked with PO and FIFO     Invoice linked with PO
	This field is mandatory if Liquidate Pre-Shipment finances with Invoice Payment is enabled.
Incoming Payment Confirmation Required	Switch the toggle ON to enable the confirmation for the incoming payment.

#### ① Note

For existing implementations where pre-shipment finances exist, a new parameter **Liquidate Pre-Shipment finances for Invoice Disbursement** is introduced at the system level.

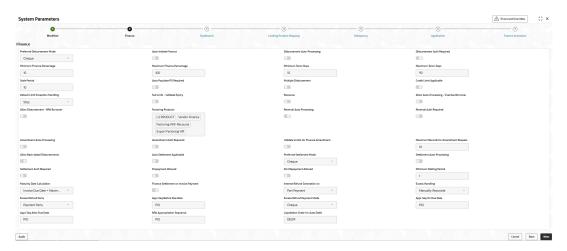
#### (i) Note

During version upgrade, the system will read the value of Liquidate Pre-Shipment finances for Invoice Disbursement and update the data for **Pre-Shipment Finance Liquidation Preference** and **Liquidation Order for Auto Debit** fields in Post-shipment programs based on this maintenance in the System Parameters. A migration script will be prepared for relevant Post-shipment programs during upgrade.

Click Next button.

The **System Parameters - Finance (parameters)** screen displays.

Figure 2-3 System Parameters - Finance



6. On **Finance** tab, default configuration of finance parameters is displayed and can be configured as per the bank's requirements.



Table 2-2 Finance - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Auto-Initiate Finance	Switch the toggle ON to enable the Auto-Initiation of the finance disbursement transaction.
Preferred Disbursement Mode	Select the preferred disbursement mode for the finance transaction.
Wode	The available options are:  Cheque
	• EFT
	CBT - Cross Border Transfer
	Account Transfer
Disbursement Auto – Processing	Switch the toggle ON to enable the auto processing of the finance disbursement transaction.
Disbursement Auth Required	Switch the toggle ON to enable the authorization required for the disbursement of the finance transaction.
Minimum Finance Percentage	Specify the minimum finance percentage of Invoice amount allowed for financing.
Maximum Finance Percentage	Specify the minimum finance percentage of Invoice amount allowed for financing.
Minimum Tenor Days	Specify the minimum tenor allowed for a finance.
Maximum Tenor Days	Specify the maximum tenor allowed for a finance.
Stale Period	Specify the stale period in days after which the invoice cannot be financed any more. Stale period is calculated from Invoice date.
Multiple Disbursement	Switch this toggle ON if multiple disbursement is allowed on same invoice.
Auto Populate PO Required	Switch this toggle ON to auto populate the PO required.
Credit Limit Applicable	Switch the toggle ON to enable the credit limits applicability to the product.
Default Limit Exception	Select the default exception handling for the Limit services.
Handling	The available options are:  Stop
	• Skip
	Utilize
Sub Limit - Validate Expiry	Switch the toggle ON to enable the Expiry date validation for the sub-limits.
Recourse	Switch the toggle ON to enable recourse for the program.
Allow Auto-Processing - Overdue Borrower	Switch the toggle ON to enable the auto processing of disbursement for Overdue borrower.
Allow Disbursement - NPA Borrower	Switch the toggle ON to enable the disbursement for NPA borrower.
Factoring Products	Select the preferred products for the finance transaction.
Reversal Auto Processing	Switch the toggle ON to enable the auto processing of finance reversal transaction.
Reversal Auth Required	Switch the toggle ON to enable the authorization required for the reversal of the finance transaction.
Amendment Auto- Processing	Switch the toggle ON to enable the auto processing of finance amendment transaction.
Amendment Auth Required	Switch the toggle ON to enable the authorization required for the amendment of the finance transaction.
Validate Limits for Finance Amendment	Switch this toggle ON to enable limits validation for finance amendment transaction.



Table 2-2 (Cont.) Finance - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Maximum Records for Amendment Request	Specify the maximum number of finance amendment requests that can be raised.
Allow Back-Dated Disbursements	Switch the toggle ON to enable the back-dated disbursements.
Auto Settlement Applicable	Switch the toggle ON to enable Auto-Initiation of the finance repayment transaction.
Preferred Settlement Mode	Select the preferred settlement mode for the finance transaction.
	The available options are:
	Account Transfer     CBT - Cross Border Transfer
	Cheque
	• EFT
Settlement Auto – Processing	Switch the toggle ON to enable the auto processing of the finance repayment transaction.
Settlement Auth Required	Switch the toggle ON to enable the authorization required for the repayment of the finance transaction.
Prepayment Allowed	Switch the toggle ON to enable the prepayment for the finance. That is Part or full repayment before the finance due date.
Part Repayment Allowed	Switch the toggle ON to enable the part repayment for the finance.
Minimum Waiting Period	Specify the minimum period up to which the finance cannot be closed. This should be enabled only if pre-closure is allowed.
Maturity Date Calculation	Select the finance maturity date calculation method.
	The available options are:
	<ul> <li>Business Date + Maximum Tenor</li> <li>Payment Due Date</li> </ul>
	Invoice Due Date
	Invoice Due Date + Maximum Tenor
Finance Settlement on Invoice Payment	Switch the toggle ON to enable the underlying Finance repayment post the manual recon for the Invoice payment.
Interest Refund	Select the type of payment for Interest Refund to be generated.
Generation on	The available options are:
	Part Payment     Full Payment
	• Full Payment
Excess Handling	Select how excess payment made towards settling of outstanding invoice/finance should be handled.
	The available options are:  • Auto-Reconcile
	Auto-Reconcile and Refund
	Manually-Reconcile
	Refund to beneficiary or payment party
Excess Refund Party	Select the party to refund the excess amount.
	The available options are:
	<ul><li>Beneficiary/Counter Party</li><li>Payment Party</li></ul>
	rayinent raity



Table 2-2 (Cont.) Finance - Field Description

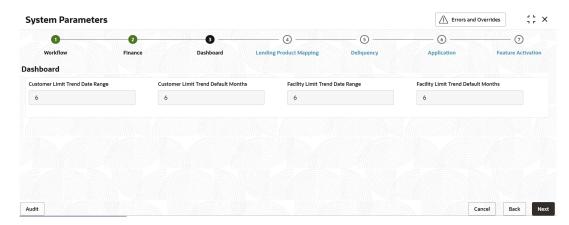
Field Name	Description
	·
Appr Seq Before Due Date	Specify the appropriation sequence for the repayment amount if the payment is received before due date.
	The available options are:
	• I - Interest
	P - Principal F - Penalty on Interest
	E - Penalty on Interest     Valid Values – PIE, PEI, IPE, IEP, EIP, EPI
Evence Refund Boyment	
Excess Refund Payment Mode	Select the mode of payment for the excess payment refund.  The available options are:
	Account Transfer
	CBT - Cross Border Transfer
	Cheque
	• EFT
Appr Seq On Due Date	Specify the appropriation sequence for the repayment amount if payment is received on due date.
	The available options are:
	I - Interest     P - Principal
	E - Penalty on Interest
	Valid Values – PIE, PEI, IPE, IEP, EIP, EPI
Appr Seq After Due Date	Specify the appropriation sequence for the repayment amount if payment is received after due date.
	The available options are:
	I - Interest
	P - Principal
	O - Penalty on Principal  E - Penalty on Interest
	Valid Values – EOIP, EIOP, etc.,
NPA Appropriation	Specify the appropriation sequence for the repayment amount if
Sequence	payment is received after the finance has turned NPA.
	The available options are:
	• I - Interest
	P - Principal     O - Penalty on Principal
	E - Penalty on Interest
	Valid Values – EOIP, EIOP and so on.
Liquidation Order for Auto Debit	Specify the default auto-debit liquidation order to be applied in case partial funds are debited from the payment party on auto-debit.
	The available options are:
	E - Penalty on Interest Outstanding
	O - Penalty on Principal Outstanding     Monthly Interset Due
	<ul> <li>I – Monthly Interest Due</li> <li>D - Overdue Finance (Delinquent finances)</li> </ul>
	• <b>F</b> - Finance Due or Overdue (Outstanding Finances)
	This field is mandatory if <b>Auto Debit Applicable</b> is enabled.

#### 7. Click Next button.

The System Parameters - Dashboard (parameters) screen displays.



Figure 2-4 System Parameters - Dashboard



8. On **Dashboard** tab, default configuration of dashboard parameters is displayed and can be configured as per the bank's requirements.

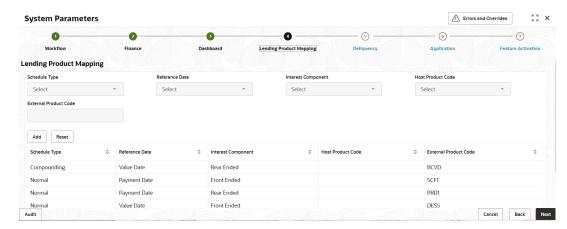
Table 2-3 Dashboard - Field Description

Field	Description
Customer Limit Trend Date Range	Specify the date range for the customer limit trend in the dashboard.
Customer Limit Trend Default Months	Specify the month range for the customer limit trend in the dashboard.
Facility Limit Trend Date Range	Specify the date range for the facility limit trend in the dashboard.
Facility Limit Trend Default Months	Specify the month range for the facility limit trend in the dashboard.

9. Click Next button.

The **System Parameters - Lending Product Mapping** screen displays.

Figure 2-5 System Parameters - Lending Product Mapping



**10.** On **Lending Product Mapping** tab, default configuration of lending product mapping parameters is displayed and can be configured as per the bank's requirements.

For more information on fields, refer to the field description table.



Table 2-4 Lending Product Mapping - Field Description

Field	Description
Schedule Type	Select the interest rate schedule.
	The available options are:
	Normal
	Compounding
Reference Date	Select the reference date for the interest schedule.
	The available options are:
	Value Date
	Payment Date
Interest Component	Select the type of Interest component.
	The available options are:
	Front Ended
	Rear Ended
Host Product Code	Select the host product code to map individual supply chain products to external product codes.
External Product Code	Specify the product code defined in the Lending System.

- 11. Once you enter the details, click **Add** or click **Reset** to reset the fields, if required.
  - a. Once an entry is made in the grid, click in the Action column, to Edit or Delete it.
  - b. Transactions created in the Oracle® Banking Supply Chain Finance application will be mapped to the appropriate products in the lending application basis the above features and mapping.

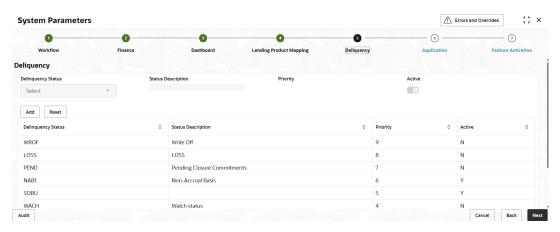
#### Note

You can maintain only one record for a given combination of Schedule Type, Reference Date, Interest Component, and Host Product Code.

12. Click Next button.

The System Parameters - Delinquency (parameters) screen displays.

Figure 2-6 System Parameters - Delinquency



**13.** On **Delinquency** tab, default configuration of delinquency parameters is displayed and can be configured as per the bank's requirements.



For more information on fields, refer to the field description table.

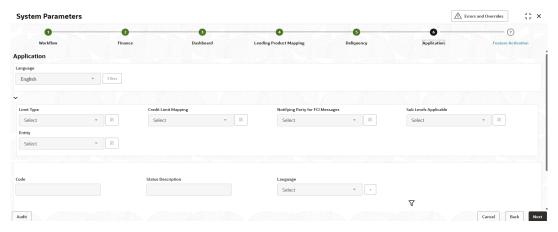
Table 2-5 Delinquency - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Delinquency Status	Select the delinquency status as per the regulatory requirements. Relevant statuses maintained in lending system gets populated here.
	Example:  NORM - Normal Status  CAU - Caution  WACH - Watch Status
Status Description	Displays the description of the delinquency status selected.  Example:  NORM - Normal Status  NAB - Non-Accrual Basis  WACH - Watch Status
Priority	Displays the priority of the delinquency status selected.
Active	Switch the toggle ON to enable the type of delinquency status as Active depending on regulatory requirements.

- 14. Once you enter the details, click **Add**. or click **Reset** to reset the fields, if required
  - Once an entry is made in the grid, click in the Action column, to Edit or Delete it.
- 15. Click Next button.

The System Parameters - Application (parameters) screen displays.

Figure 2-7 System Parameters - Application



**16.** On **Application** tab, default configuration of application parameters is displayed and can be configured as per the bank's requirements.

For more information on fields, refer to the field description table.



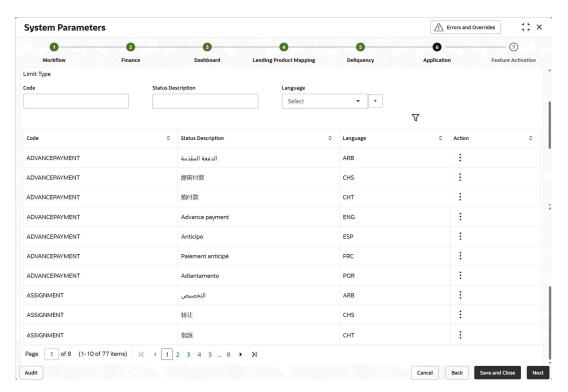
Table 2-6 Application - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Language	Select the language from the drop-down and click <b>Filter</b> . This displays the existing codes created for each application parameter in the selected language.
Limit Type	Displays the list of limit types to be mapped with entity in the <b>Limits Structure</b> maintenance.
	Click the <b>Modify</b> icon to add new, or view the existing limit types.
Notifying Party for FCI Messages	Displays the list of notifying parties on whose behalf the relevant FCI message is sent for the applicable events such as <b>Raise Dispute</b> action in the Receivables and Payables Management screen.
	Click the <b>Modify</b> icon to add new, or view the existing notifying parties.
Sub Levels Applicable	Displays the list of entities that are applicable for maintaining sub level exception handling in the <b>Credit Limit Mapping</b> tab in <b>Product Parameters</b> maintenance.
	Click the <b>Modify</b> icon to add new, or view the existing entities for sub level exception handling.
Entity	Displays the list of entities in the Supply Chain Finance application.
	Click the <b>Modify</b> icon to add new, or view the existing entities.

17. Click the **Modify** icon next to the required application parameter for which a new code needs to be created.

The application displays the selected parameter in the section below. You can create new codes or view the existing codes.

Figure 2-8 Application - Parameter Modification





18. Specify the values in the below fields and click the Add icon to add the new codes.

For more information on fields, refer to the field description table.

**Table 2-7 Parameter Modification - Field Description** 

Field Name	Description
Parameter Name	Displays the name of the application parameter selected for modification.
Code	Specify the unique code to be created for the selected application parameter.
Status Description	Specify the description for the code to be created. You can specify the description in the required language.
Language	Select the language for which the code is to be created.

19. Click Next button.

The **System Parameters - Feature Activation** screen displays.

Figure 2-9 System Parameters - Feature Activation

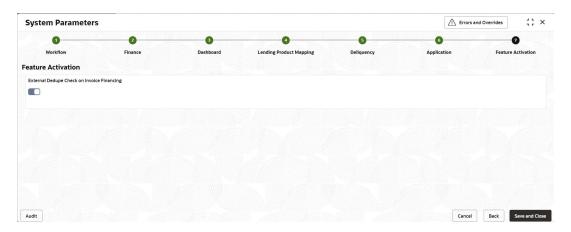


Table 2-8 System Parameters - Feature Activation

Field Name	Description
External Dedupe Check on Invoice Financing	If this feature is switched ON, then the <b>Integration with Invoice Registry</b> will be done for verifying duplicate financing. If this feature is switched Off, the <b>Integration with Invoice Registry</b> will not be done.

- 20. Once you enter the details, click the Add icon to add a new code.
  - a. Once an entry is made in the grid, click in the **Action** column, to **Edit** or **Delete** it.
  - Click the Filter icon to filter the existing codes by language.
- 21. Click Save and Close to save the record and send for authorization (if applicable).



#### ① Note

If any flag in the system parameters is changed, the system promptly updates it upon authorization. However, processing the impact of the flag takes approximately 1-2 hours.

- 22. On the View System Parameters screen, click Options icon and then select any of the following options:
  - a. Authorize To authorize or reject the record. Authorizing/Rejecting requires necessary access rights.
    - · Optional: Click View to view the record details.
    - Select the record and click Approve to approve the record.
    - Select the record and click Reject to reject the record. Specify the relevant comments in the pop-up window that appears, and click Confirm.
  - **b.** View To view the record details.

## 2.2 Product Parameters Maintenance

This topic describes the information to create new products and set its attributes.

Banks can create and categorize various products for financing.

This topic consists the following sub-topics:

- <u>Create Product Parameters</u>
   This topic describes the systematic instruction to create products and maintain its
- parameters.
- <u>View Product Parameters</u>
   This topic describes the systematic instruction to view, modify, delete, or authorize product records that have been created.

### 2.2.1 Create Product Parameters

This topic describes the systematic instruction to create products and maintain its parameters.

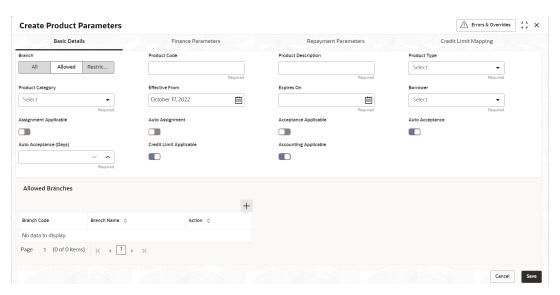
The product parameters are segregated into the following data segments.

- Basic Details
- Finance Parameters
- Repayment Parameters
- Credit Limit Mapping
- On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Maintenance.
- Under Maintenance, Click Product Parameters. Under Product Parameters, Click Create Product Parameters.

The Create Product Parameters - Basic Details screen displays.



Figure 2-10 Create Product Parameters - Basic Details



On Basic Details tab, specify the fields to configure the basic details for the product being created.



For more information on the fields, refer to the field description table.

Table 2-9 Basic Details - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Branch	Select the option under which the product is to be created.  All - Product defined is applicable to all the branches.  Allowed - Product defined is applicable to only the selected branches.  Restricted - Product defined is applicable to all the branches except the selected branches.  You can select only one of the options at any given time.
Product Code	Specify a unique code to identify the product.
Product Description	Specify a description for the product.
Product Type	Select whether the product is <b>Buyer Centric</b> or <b>Supplier Centric</b> .
Product Category	Select the underlying instrument category, whether <b>Invoice</b> or <b>Purchase Order</b> .
Effective From	Click the Calendar icon to select the date from when the product is active.  If the field is left blank, then the branch date is considered by default.
Expires On	Click the Calendar icon to select the date up to when the product is valid.
Borrower	Select the borrower to be associated with the product, whether <b>Anchor</b> or <b>Spoke</b> .



Table 2-9 (Cont.) Basic Details - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Assignment Applicable	Switch the toggle ON if assignment on invoice is applicable for financing.
Auto Assignment	Switch the toggle ON if the assignment is to be performed automatically post invoice upload.
Acceptance Applicable	Switch the toggle ON if acceptance on invoice is applicable for financing.
Auto Acceptance	Switch the toggle ON if the acceptance is to be performed automatically post invoice upload.
Auto Acceptance (Days)	Specify the number of days after which the instrument is automatically deemed as accepted.
Credit Limit Applicable	Switch the toggle ON to map credit limits to the product.
	If you enable this toggle, the Credit Limit Mapping tab appears. You can map the limit type and related entities.
Accounting Applicable	Switch the toggle ON if accounting is applicable.

#### (i) Note

On maintenance screens where product selection is required, only products relevant to the logged-in user's branch will be displayed.

#### (i) Note

For existing implementations where the application is used in a single branch, the existing products can be mapped to either **ALL** or **Allowed** branch options at the discretion of the bank or Financial Institution during upgrade to current release version.

For existing implementations where the application is used in multiple branches, the existing products must be mapped to respective branches under **Allowed** branch option at the discretion of the bank or Financial Institution during upgrade to current release version.

- On selection of Allowed or Restricted branch type, the Allowed/Restricted Branches section displays. Perform the below actions to add branch(es) for the product being created.
  - a. Click Add to add a row.
  - b. In the Branch Code field, click Search.

The **Branch Code** pop-up screen displays.

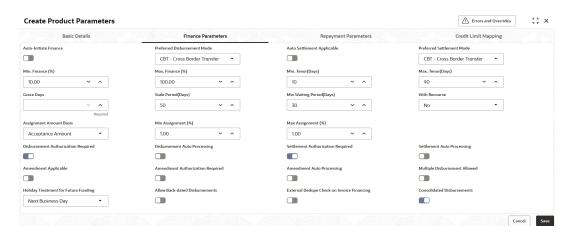
- c. Enter the partial or complete code/name of the branch in the respective fields.
- d. Click **Fetch**. The relevant branch(es) appears.
- e. Select the required branch.
- f. Click **Save** in the **Action** column to save the row.
- g. Click Edit in the Action column to edit the row or click Delete in the Action column to delete the row.



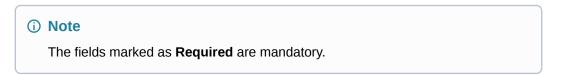
Click Finance Parameters tab.

The Create Product Parameters - Finance Parameters screen displays.

Figure 2-11 Create Product Parameters - Finance Parameters



6. On **Finance Parameters** tab, specify the fields to configure the finance parameters for the product being created.



For more information on the fields, refer to the field description table.

**Table 2-10 Finance Parameters - Field Description** 

Field Name	Description
Auto-Initiate Finance	Switch the toggle ON to enable automated financing (Straight Through Processing) of instruments such as invoices, debit notes, and so on.
Preferred Disbursement Mode	Select the preferred mode of disbursement for this product.  The available options are:  • Account Transfer  • CBT – Cross Border Transfer  • Cheque  • EFT  This field is mandatory when Auto Initiate Finance is enabled.
Auto Settlement Applicable	Switch the toggle ON to enable automated settlement (repayment) for this product.
Preferred Settlement Mode	Select the preferred mode of settlement for this product.  The available options are:  • Account Transfer  • CBT – Cross Border Transfer  • Cheque  • EFT



Table 2-10 (Cont.) Finance Parameters - Field Description

Et LIAL.	Providence of the control of the con
Field Name	Description
Min. Finance (%)	Specify the minimum finance percentage allowed for financing a transaction of this product.
Max. Finance (%)	Specify the maximum finance percentage allowed for financing a transaction of this product.
Min. Tenor (Days)	Specify the minimum tenor allowed for financing a transaction of this product.
Max. Tenor (Days)	Specify the maximum tenor allowed for financing a transaction of this product.
Grace Days	Specify the number of grace days.  This is the period post the finance due date, within which the finance can be settled without penalty.
Stale Period (Days)	Specify the number of stale days.  This is the period post the invoice date, after which the invoice becomes stale and will not be financed automatically any more for this product.
Min Waiting Period (Days)	Specify the minimum period up to which the finance cannot be closed for this product.
With Recourse	Select <b>Yes</b> to specify that the finance is allowed with recourse, else select <b>No</b> .
Assignment Amount Basis	Select the assignment amount type for financing a transaction of this product.  The available options are:  • Acceptance Amount  • Net Invoice Amount
Min. Assignment (%)	Specify the minimum percentage of the assignment amount allowed for financing a transaction of this product.
Max. Assignment (%)	Specify the maximum percentage of the assignment amount allowed for financing a transaction of this product.
Disbursement Auth Required	Switch the toggle ON to enable authorization for STP disbursement transactions.
Disbursement Auto Processing	Switch the toggle ON to enable automatic processing of disbursement transactions.
Settlement Auth Required	Switch the toggle ON to enable authorization for STP finance settlement transactions.
Settlement Auto Processing	Switch the toggle ON to enable automatic processing of settlement transactions.
Amendment Applicable	Switch the toggle ON to enable amendment for this product.
Amendment Auth Required	Switch the toggle ON to enable authorization for the finance amendment transactions.
Amendment Auto Processing	Switch the toggle ON to enable automatic processing of finance amendment transactions.
Multiple Disbursement Allowed	Switch the toggle ON to enable multiple finance disbursements for an invoice.
Holiday Treatment for Future Funding	Select the day to consider if the finance disbursement falls on a holiday.  The available options are:  Next Business Day  Previous Business Day



Table 2-10 (Cont.) Finance Parameters - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Allow Back-Dated Disbursements	Switch the toggle ON to enable the back-dated disbursements for this product.
Conditions for Marking Invoice Paid	Select whether the financed invoice should be marked as <b>Paid</b> during Disbursement or during Settlement.
	This field appears only when the Buyer is the borrower, for which the Product should have one of the following configurations:  Product Type = Buyer Centric; Product Category = Invoice; Borrower = Anchor
	<ul> <li>Product Type = Supplier Centric; Product Category = Invoice;</li> <li>Borrower = Spoke</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Disbursement:         <ul> <li>If the invoice is financed to the maximum finance percentage, then during disbursement it is marked as Paid. The outstanding invoice amount, if any, is handled as per margin handling settings.</li> <li>If the invoice is not financed to the maximum finance percentage, then during disbursement, the invoice is marked as Partially Paid. Once the outstanding invoice amount is settled based on margin handling settings, then the invoice is marked as Paid.</li> </ul> </li> <li>Settlement:         <ul> <li>If an invoice is financed to the maximum finance percentage, and if all underlying finances are fully paid off during settlement, then the invoice is marked as Paid.</li> <li>If the invoice is not financed to the maximum finance percentage, then during settlement the invoice is marked as Partially Paid. It is then marked as Paid, after the outstanding payment is made.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
External Dedupe Check on Invoice Financing	When this feature is ON, it will check for duplicate financing with the Invoice Registry. If it is OFF, the check will not happen.
Consolidated Disbursements	This field determines whether financing is processed in batches or per instrument. When set to <b>Yes</b> , instruments will be grouped together under a single financing, provided they meet the necessary criteria. If set to <b>No</b> , each instrument will be financed individually, with consolidation occurring only if the request count exceeds the specified threshold.

#### (i) Note

Pre-Shipment settlement gets initiated only if the **Auto Settlement Applicable** is enabled.

#### Note

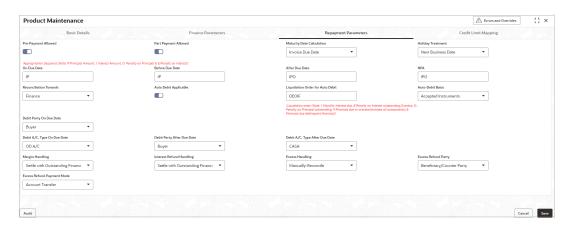
For existing implementations, **Conditions for Marking Invoice Paid** is defaulted to Null i.e., the invoice gets marked as Paid if an invoice payment is directly received. Banks or Financial Institutions should modify the fields as per the table to achieve a different functionality, if required.

7. Click Repayment Parameters tab.



The Create Product Parameters - Repayment Parameters screen displays.

Figure 2-12 Create Product Parameters - Repayment Parameters



**8.** On **Repayment Parameters** tab, specify the fields to configure the repayment parameters for the product being created.



The fields marked as **Required** are mandatory.

For more information on the fields, refer to the field description table.

**Table 2-11 Repayment Parameters - Field Description** 

Field Name	Description
Pre-Payment Allowed	Switch the toggle ON if prepayment is allowed for finances availed under this product. That is part or full repayment before the finance due date.
Part Payment Allowed	Switch the toggle on if part payment is allowed for finances availed under this product.
Maturity Date Calculation	Select the basis for calculating the maturity date of the finance.  The available options are:  When Invoice option selected in Product Category:  Invoice Due Date  Business Date + Max Tenor  Invoice Due Date + Max Tenor  Payment Due Date  When PO option selected in Product Category:  PO Date  PO Date + Max Tenor  Business Date + Max Tenor
Holiday Treatment	Select the value if the maturity date falls on a holiday for this product.  The available options are:  Next Business Date  No Change  Previous Business Date



Table 2-11 (Cont.) Repayment Parameters - Field Description

Field Name	Description
On Due Date	Specify the appropriation sequence for the repayment amount if the payment is received on due date.
	The available options are:  • P – Principal Amount
	I – Interest Amount
	E – Penalty on Interest
Before Due Date	Specify the appropriation sequence for the repayment amount if the payment is received before due date.
	The available options are:  • P – Principal Amount
	I – Interest Amount
	E – Penalty on Interest
After Due Date	Specify the appropriation sequence for the repayment amount if the payment is received after due date.
	The available options are:
	• P – Principal Amount
	I – Interest Amount     O - Penalty on Principal
	E – Penalty on Interest
NPA	Specify the appropriation sequence for the repayment amount if the payment is received after the finance has turned NPA.
	The available options are: P – Principal Amount
	I – Interest Amount
	O - Penalty on Principal
	E – Penalty on Interest
Reconciliation Towards	Select whether the reconciliation is towards Invoice or Finance.
Auto Debit Applicable	Switch the toggle ON if the account should be auto debited on the finance/invoice due date for this product.
Liquidation Order for Auto Debit	Specify the default auto-debit liquidation order to be applied in case partial funds are debited from the payment party on auto-debit.
	The available options are:
	E - Penalty on Interest Outstanding     Departs on Principal Outstanding
	<ul> <li>O - Penalty on Principal Outstanding</li> <li>I – Monthly Interest Due</li> </ul>
	D - Overdue Finance (Delinquent finances)
	F - Finance Due or Overdue (Outstanding Finances)
	This field is mandatory if <b>Auto Debit Applicable</b> is enabled.



Table 2-11 (Cont.) Repayment Parameters - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Auto-Debit Basis	Select the basis on which of the instruments should be auto-debited on the finance/invoice due date.
	The available options are:  • Accepted Instruments - The account is auto-debited when the invoice/debit note is in the Accepted status, and Reconciliation Towards is set to Invoice.
	Financed Instruments - The account is auto-debited when the invoice/debit note is financed, irrespective of acceptance status, and Reconciliation Towards is set to Invoice.
	Accepted or Financed Instruments - The account is auto- debited when the invoice/debit note is either accepted or financed, and Reconciliation Towards is set to Invoice.
	All Instruments - The account is auto-debited when     Reconciliation Towards is set to Invoice, irrespective of     whether the invoice/debit note is accepted or financed.
	This field is displayed only if <b>Auto Debit Applicable</b> is enabled. By default, <b>All Instruments</b> is selected.
Debit Party On Due Date	Select the party from whose account the amount should be debited.
	The available options are:  Buyer
	Supplier
	This field is mandatory if <b>Auto Debit Applicable</b> is enabled.
Debit A/C. Type On Due	Select the account Type to be debited.
Date	The available options are:  CASA  OD A/C
	This field is mandatory if <b>Auto Debit Applicable</b> is enabled.
Debit Party After Due Date	Select the party from whose account the amount should be debited, if the business date is greater than finance maturity date for this product.
	The available options are:  • Buyer
	Supplier  This field is mandstory if Auto Debit Applicable is enabled.
Debit A/C. Type After Due	This field is mandatory if <b>Auto Debit Applicable</b> is enabled.  Select the account type to be debited if the business date is greater
Date	than finance maturity date for this product.
	The available options are:
	CASA OD A/C
	This field is mandatory if <b>Auto Debit Applicable</b> is enabled.
Margin Handling	Select how the margin should be handled.
	The available options are:  • Auto-Settle and Refund to Supplier  • Manually Settle O/s Finances
	Refund to the Supplier
	Settle with Outstanding Finances
	This field is displayed only if <b>Product Category</b> is selected as <b>Invoice</b> in Basic Details tab.



Table 2-11 (Cont.) Repayment Parameters - Field Description

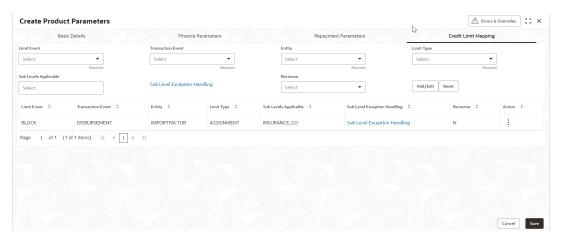
Field Name	Description
Margin Payment Mode	Select the mode of payment for the margin amount.  The available options are:  • Account Transfer  • CBT – Cross Border Transfer  • Cheque  • EFT  This field is displayed only if Margin Handling is selected as Refund to the Supplier or Auto-Settle and Refund to Supplier.
Interest Refund Handling	Select how the interest refund should be handled. The available options are:  • Auto-Settle and Refund to IBP  • Manually Settle O/s Finances  • Refund to the Interest Bearing Party  • Settle with Outstanding Finances
Interest Refund Payment Mode	Select the mode of payment for the interest refunds.  The available options are:  • Account Transfer  • CBT – Cross Border Transfer  • Cheque  • EFT  This field is displayed only if Interest Refund Handling is selected as Refund to the Interest Bearing Party or Auto-Settle and Refund to IBP.
Excess Handling  Excess Refund Party	Select how the excess payment made towards settlement of outstanding invoice/finance, should be handled.  The available options are:  • Auto-Reconcile  • Auto-Reconcile and Refund  • Manually-Reconcile  • Refund to beneficiary or payment party  Select the party to refund the excess amount to.  The available options are:  • Beneficiary/Counter Party
Excess Refund Payment Mode	Payment Party      Select the mode of payment for the excess payment refund.  The available options are:     Account Transfer     CBT – Cross Border Transfer     Cheque     EFT

9. Click Credit Limit Mapping tab.

The Create Product Parameters - Credit Limit Mapping screen displays.



Figure 2-13 Credit Limit Mapping



10. On Credit Limit Mapping tab, specify the fields to configure the credit limits for the product being created. This tab is displayed only if Credit Limit Applicable is enabled in the Basic Details tab.



For more information on the fields, refer to the field description table.

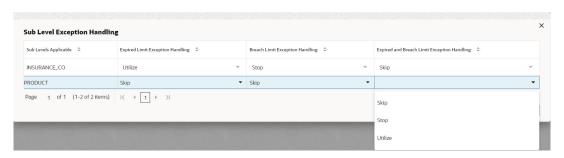
Table 2-12 Credit Limit Mapping - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Limit Event	Select the event for which the limit is to be applied.
Transaction Event	Select the transaction event for which the limit event is to be applied.
Entity	Select the main entity for which the limit is to be applied.
Limit Type	Select the type of limit.
Sub Levels Applicable	Select the applicable sub-level entities/nodes.
Recourse	Select whether recourse is applicable.

11. Click **Sub Level Exception Handling** link to specify the exception handling behavior for the sub-level entities/nodes.

The **Sub Level Exception Handling** pop-up screen displays.

Figure 2-14 Sub Level Exception Handling





On Sub Level Exception Handling screen, specify the fields to set the exception handling behavior.

For more information on the fields, refer to the field description table.

Table 2-13 Sub Level Exception Handling - Field Description

Field Name	Description
1 leid Name	Description
Sub Levels Applicable	Displays the selected sub-level entities/nodes.
Expired Limit Exception	Select the exception handling behavior when the limit is expired.
Handling	The available options are:
	Skip
	Stop
	Utilize
Breach Limit Exception Handling	Select the exception handling behavior when the limit is breached.
	The available options are:
	• Skip
	• Stop
	Utilize
Expired and Breach Limit Exception Handling	Select the exception handling behavior when the limit is both expired and breached.
	The available options are:  Skip
	• Stop
	Utilize
	- Othize

- Select the required exception behaviors and click Ok to save the details.
- 13. Click Add/Edit to add the details to the grid.
- **14.** Click **Reset** to clear the selected values, if required.
- **15.** Perform the following steps to act on the records in the grid.
  - Click Options icon in the Action column to edit or delete the row.
- **16.** Click **Save** to save the record and send it for authorization (if applicable).

# 2.2.2 View Product Parameters

This topic describes the systematic instruction to view, modify, delete, or authorize product records that have been created.

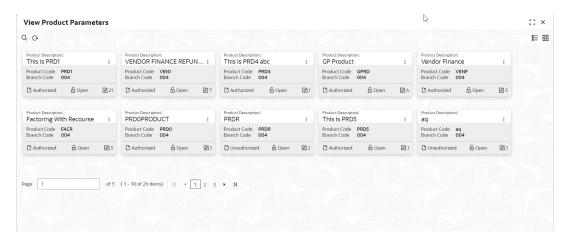
A tile is present for each record that has been created. The bottom portion of each record-tile displays the following:

- The status, whether Authorized, Unauthorized, or Rejected
- Open or Closed
- The number of times the record has been submitted by the Maker added.
- On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Maintenance.
- Under Maintenance, click Product Parameters. Under Product Parameters, click View Product Parameters.

The View Product Parameters screen displays.



Figure 2-15 View Product Parameters



- Filter the records in the View screen:
  - a. Click **Search** icon to view the filters. The user can filter the records by Product Code, Product Type, Product Category, Borrower, Authorization Status, and Record Status.
  - **b.** Select the required filter criteria and click **Search** button to filter the records.
  - c. Click **Reset** to reset the filter criteria.
- Click Refresh icon to refresh the records.
- 5. Click **Options** icon and then, select any of the following options:
  - unlock To modify the record details. Refer to the Create screen for the field level details.
    - Click Audit to view the maker details, checker details of the record.
    - Click Show History hyperlink to view the historical data of the record.
  - Authorize To authorize or reject the record. Authorizing/Rejecting requires necessary access rights.
    - Optional: Click View to view the record details.
    - If there are more than one modification, Click **Compare** to view the comparison through the field values of old record and the current record.
    - Select the record and click Approve to approve the record.
    - Select the record and click **Reject** to reject the record. Specify the relevant comments in the pop-up window that appears, and click **Confirm**.
  - Delete/Close To remove the record.
    - Optional: In the confirmation pop-up window, click View to view the record details.
    - Click Proceed to delete the record.
  - **d. Copy** To copy the record parameters for creating a new record.
  - e. View To view the record details.
  - Reopen To reopen the closed record.

# 2.3 Program Parameters Maintenance

This topic describes the information to create a new program for financing along with its attributes.



A program is a linkage of a buyer to one or more suppliers or linkage of a supplier to one or more buyers.

This topic consists the following sub-topics:

Create Program Parameters

This topic describes the systematic instruction to create products and maintain its parameters.

View Program Parameters

This topic describes the systematic instruction to view, modify, delete, or authorize program records that have been created.

## 2.3.1 Create Program Parameters

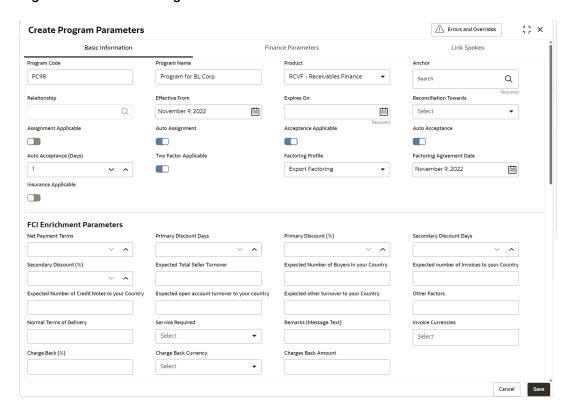
This topic describes the systematic instruction to create products and maintain its parameters.

The program parameters are segregated into the following data segments.

- Basic Information
- Finance Parameters
- Link Spokes
- On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Maintenance.
- 2. Under Maintenance, Click Program Parameters. Under Program Parameters, Click Create Program Parameters.

The Create Program Parameters - Basic Information screen displays.

Figure 2-16 Create Program Parameters - Basic Information





On Basic Information tab, specify the fields to configure the basic information for the program being created.

## Note

The fields marked as **Required** are mandatory.

For more information on fields, refer to the field description table.

Table 2-14 Basic Information - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Program Code	Specify a unique code to identify the program.
Program Name	Specify a name for the program.
Product	Select the underlying finance product to be associated with the program.
Anchor	Click the Search icon to select the anchor for the program. An anchor can be a customer or a non-customer.
Relationship	Click the Search icon to select the relationship associated with the selected anchor.
Effective From	Click the Calendar icon to select the date from when the program is active.
	If the field is left blank, then the branch date is considered by default.
Expires On	Click the Calendar icon and select the date up to when the program is valid.
Reconciliation towards	Select whether the reconciliation is towards Invoice or Finance.
Assignment Applicable	Switch the toggle ON to enable assignment on invoice applicable for financing.
Auto Assignment	Switch the toggle ON to enable assignment automatically post invoice upload.
Acceptance Applicable	Switch the toggle ON to enable acceptance for invoice applicable for financing.
Auto Acceptance	Switch the toggle ON to enable automatic acceptance of an instrument for the program.
Auto Acceptance (Days)	Specify the number of days after which the instrument is automatically deemed as accepted under this program.
	This field is displayed only if <b>Auto Acceptance Applicable</b> toggle is switched ON.
Two Factor Applicable	Switch the toggle ON to enable a two-factor system for the program in case the anchor is trading with foreign buyers/suppliers.
Factoring Profile	Select the profile for factoring as <b>Import Factoring</b> or <b>Export Factoring</b> .
	This field is displayed only if <b>Two Factor Applicable</b> toggle is switched ON.
Factoring Agreement Date	Select the factoring agreement date signed between the export factor and the import factor.
	This field is displayed only if <b>Two Factor Applicable</b> toggle is switched ON.
Insurance Applicable	Switch the toggle ON to enable insurance for the program.



Table 2-14 (Cont.) Basic Information - Field Description

Field Name	Description
FCI Enrichment Parameters	This section is displayed only if <b>Two Factor Applicable</b> toggle is switched ON.
	Note: An FCI Message 1 - Seller's Information is generated upon the onboarding of a new Seller in the application (Program Parameters) for a Factoring Program with Factoring Profile designated as Export Factoring. This message is subsequently transmitted to the Import Factor via an FCI message batch job.
Net Payment Terms	Specify the number of days after which the invoices can be due for payment.
Primary Discount Days	Specify the number of days applicable for the primary discount.
Primary Discount %	Specify the primary discount percentage.
Secondary Discount Days	Specify the number of days applicable for the secondary discount.
Secondary Discount %	Specify the secondary discount percentage.
Expected Total Seller Turnover	Specify the total turnover expected from the seller.
Expected Number of Buyers in your Country	Specify the number of buyers expected in the import factor's country for this seller.
Expected Number of Invoices to your Country	Specify the expected number of invoices which will be raised on the import factor's country for this seller.
Expected Number of Credit Notes to your Country	Specify the expected number of credit notes which will be raised on the import factor's country for this seller.
Expected open account turnover to your country	Specify the open account turnover to on the import factor's country for this seller.
Expected other turnover to your Country	Specify any other turnover to on the import factor's country for this seller.
Other Factors	Specify the import factors involved in the factoring i.e., if more one than factor is involved for the same seller in the same country.
Normal Terms of Delivery	Specify the delivery terms, if any.
Services Required	Specify the services required from the import factor. The available options are:  Full Service, non-recourse  Recourse  Collection only Special service (RESCUE, POM, IV)  Non-notification  Buyer to pay directly to EF/Seller  Agency Agreement
Remarks (Message Text)	Specify the comments regarding the factoring, if any.
Invoice Currencies	Select the currency for invoice. You can select multiple currencies in this field.
Charge Back %	Specify the charge back percentage in cases of dispute.
Charge Back Currency	Specify the currency of the charge back amount.
Charge Back Amount	Specify the charge back amount in cases of dispute.



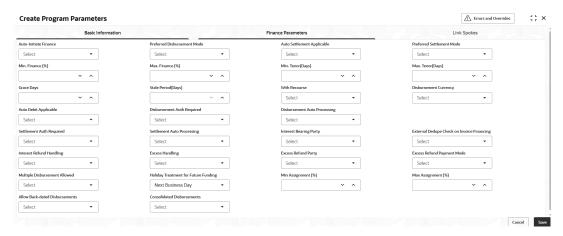


On maintenance screens where program selection is required, programs linked to the products that are relevant to the logged-in user's branch gets displayed.

4. Click Finance Parameters tab.

The Create Program Parameters - Finance Parameters screen displays.

Figure 2-17 Create Program Parameters - Finance Parameters



5. On **Finance Parameters** tab, specify the fields to configure the finance parameters for the program being created.



The fields marked as **Required** are mandatory.

For more information on fields, refer to the field description table.

**Table 2-15 Finance Parameters - Field Description** 

Field Name	Description
Auto-Initiate Finance	Select <b>Yes</b> to enable auto financing under this program. Else select <b>No</b> .
Preferred Disbursement Mode	Select the preferred mode of disbursement for this program.  The available options are:  • Account Transfer  • CBT – Cross Border Transfer  • Cheque  • EFT  This field is mandatory if Auto-Initiate Finance is enabled.
Auto Settlement Applicable	Select <b>Yes</b> to enable automated settlement (repayment), under this program. Else select <b>No</b> .



Table 2-15 (Cont.) Finance Parameters - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Preferred Settlement Mode	Select the preferred mode of settlement for this program.  The available options are:  Account Transfer  CBT – Cross Border Transfer  Cheque  EFT
Min. Finance (%)	Specify the minimum finance percentage allowed for financing a transaction of this program.
Max. Finance (%)	Specify the maximum finance percentage allowed for financing a transaction of this program.
Min. Tenor (Days)	Specify the minimum tenor allowed for financing a transaction of this program.
Max. Tenor (Days)	Specify the maximum tenor allowed for financing a transaction of this program.
Grace Days	Specify the number of grace days.  This is the period post the finance due date, within which the finance can be settled without penalty.
Stale Period (Days)	Specify the number of stale days.  This is the period post the invoice date, after which the invoice becomes stale and will not be financed automatically any more for this program.
With Recourse	Select <b>Yes</b> to specify that the finance is allowed with recourse, else select <b>No</b> .
Disbursement Currency	Select the currency in which the finance should be disbursed.  This field is mandatory when <b>Auto-Initiate Finance</b> is enabled.
Auto Debit Applicable	Select <b>Yes</b> to enable auto debit to recover the outstanding finance due from the borrower for this program. Else select <b>No</b> .
Liquidation Order for Auto Debit	Specify the default auto-debit liquidation order to be applied in case partial funds are debited from the payment party on auto-debit.  The available options are:  • E - Penalty on Interest Outstanding  • O - Penalty on Principal Outstanding  • I – Monthly Interest Due  • D - Overdue Finance (Delinquent finances)  • F - Finance Due or Overdue (Outstanding Finances)  This field is mandatory if Auto Debit Applicable is enabled.



Table 2-15 (Cont.) Finance Parameters - Field Description

Field Name	Description .
Field Name	Description
Auto-Debit Basis	Select the basis on which of the instruments should be auto-debited on the finance/invoice due date.
	<ul> <li>The available options are:         <ul> <li>Accepted Instruments - The account is auto-debited when the invoice/debit note is in the Accepted status, and Reconciliation Towards is set to Invoice.</li> <li>Financed Instruments - The account is auto-debited when the invoice/debit note is financed, irrespective of acceptance status, and Reconciliation Towards is set to Invoice.</li> </ul> </li> <li>Accepted or Financed Instruments - The account is auto-debited when the invoice/debit note is either accepted or financed, and Reconciliation Towards is set to Invoice.</li> <li>All Instruments - The account is auto-debited when Reconciliation Towards is set to Invoice, irrespective of whether the invoice/debit note is accepted or financed.</li> <li>This field is displayed only if Auto Debit Applicable is enabled. By default, All Instruments is selected.</li> </ul>
Disbursement Auth Required	Select <b>Yes</b> to enable authorization for the disbursement transactions under this program. Else select <b>No</b> .
Disbursement Auto Processing	Select <b>Yes</b> to enable automatic processing of disbursement transactions under this program. Else select <b>No</b> .
Amendment Auth Required	Select <b>Yes</b> to enable authorization for the amendment transactions under this program. Else select <b>No</b> .
	This field appears only if the <b>Product</b> selected has <b>Amendment Applicable</b> enabled.
Amendment Auto Processing	Select <b>Yes</b> to enable automatic processing of amendment transactions under this program. Else select <b>No</b> .
	This field appears only if the <b>Product</b> selected has <b>Amendment Applicable</b> enabled.
Settlement Auth Required	Select <b>Yes</b> to enable authorization for the settlement transactions under this program. Else select <b>No</b> .
Settlement Auto Processing	Select <b>Yes</b> enable automatic processing of settlement transactions under this program. Else select <b>No</b> .
Interest Bearing Party	Select the party that bears the interest.  The available options are:  • Anchor  • Spoke



Table 2-15 (Cont.) Finance Parameters - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Conditions for Marking Invoice Paid	Select whether the financed invoice should be marked as <b>Paid</b> during Disbursement or during Settlement.
	This field appears only when the <b>Product</b> selected in the <b>Basic</b> Information tab has one of the following configurations:  • Product Type = Buyer Centric; Product Category = Invoice; Borrower = Anchor  • Product Type = Supplier Centric; Product Category = Invoice; Borrower = Spoke
	The options available in this field are:  • Disbursement:  - If the invoice is financed to the maximum finance percentage, then during disbursement it is marked as Paid.  The outstanding invoice amount, if any, is handled as per margin handling settings.
	<ul> <li>If the invoice is not financed to the maximum finance percentage, then during disbursement, the invoice is marked as <b>Partially Paid</b>. Once the outstanding invoice amount is settled based on margin handling settings, then the invoice is marked as <b>Paid</b>.</li> </ul>
	Settlement:     If an invoice is financed to the maximum finance percentage, and if all underlying finances are fully paid off during settlement, then the invoice is marked as Paid.      If the invoice is not financed to the maximum finance percentage, then during settlement the invoice is marked as Partially Paid. It is then marked as Paid, after the outstanding payment is made.
Margin Handling	Select how the margin should be handled.  The available options are:  • Auto-Settle and Refund to Supplier  • Manually Settle O/s Finances  • Refund to the Supplier  • Settle with Outstanding Finances  This field is displayed only if the Product selected in this program has Product Category selected as Invoice.
Margin Payment Mode	Select the mode of payment for the margin amount.  The available options are:  • Account Transfer  • CBT – Cross Border Transfer  • Cheque  • EFT  This field is displayed only if Margin Handling is selected as Refund
Interest Refund Handling	to the Supplier or Auto-Settle and Refund to Supplier.  Select how the interest refund should be handled.
interest Neturia Harianny	The available options are:  • Auto-Settle and Refund to IBP  • Manually Settle O/s Finances  • Refund to the Interest Bearing Party  • Settle with Outstanding Finances



Table 2-15 (Cont.) Finance Parameters - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Interest Refund Payment Mode	Select the mode of payment for the interest refunds.  The available options are:  • Account Transfer  • CBT – Cross Border Transfer  • Cheque  • EFT  This field is displayed only if Interest Refund Handling is selected as Refund to the Interest Bearing Party or Auto-Settle and Refund to IBP.
External Dedupe Check on Invoice Financing	Select <b>Yes</b> to enable the automatic processing of external dedupe check on invoice financing. Else select <b>No</b> .
Excess Handling	Select how excess payment made towards settling of outstanding invoice/finance, should be handled.  The available options are:  • Auto-Reconcile  • Auto-Reconcile and Refund  • Manually-Reconcile  • Refund to beneficiary or payment party
Excess Refund Party	Select the party to refund the excess amount to. The available options are: Beneficiary/Counter Party Payment Party
Excess Refund Payment Mode	Select the mode of payment for the excess payment refund.  The available options are:  • Account Transfer  • CBT – Cross Border Transfer  • Cheque  • EFT
Multiple Disbursement Allowed	Select <b>Yes</b> to enable multiple finance disbursements for an invoice. Else select <b>No</b> .
Holiday Treatment for Future Funding	Select the day to consider if the finance disbursement falls on a holiday.  The available options are:  Next Business Day  Previous Business Day
Min Assignment (%)	Specify the minimum percentage of the assignment amount allowed for financing a transaction of this program.
Max Assignment (%)	Specify the maximum percentage of the assignment amount allowed for financing a transaction of this program.
Credit Cover (%)	Specify the credit cover percentage allowed for the transaction under this program.  This field is displayed only if Assignment event in the Credit limit Mapping tab of Product Parameters is same as the limit type maintained in the Limit Type for Invoice Approval in System Parameters.



Table 2-15 (Cont.) Finance Parameters - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Credit Cover Start Date	Specify the credit cover start date for the transaction under this program.
	This field is displayed only if Assignment event in the Credit limit Mapping tab of Product Parameters is same as the limit type maintained in the Limit Type for Invoice Approval in System Parameters.
Credit Cover End Date	Specify the credit cover end date for the transaction under this program.
	This field is displayed only if <b>Assignment</b> event in the <b>Credit limit Mapping</b> tab of <b>Product Parameters</b> is same as the limit type maintained in the <b>Limit Type for Invoice Approval</b> in <b>System Parameters</b> .
Allow Back-Dated Disbursements	Select <b>Yes</b> to enable back-dated disbursements for the transaction under this program. Else select <b>No</b> .
External Dedupe Check on Invoice Financing	Select <b>Yes</b> to enable the system checks for duplicate financing entries with our invoice registry partner and alerts the user if any are found. Else select <b>No</b> .
Consolidated Disbursements	Click drop-down button. The available options are: Yes No If Consolidated Disbursements is Yes, bunching of invoices/debit notes or purchase orders is to be done basis existing logic. Note: If invoices exceeding 100 threshold value are disbursed or uploaded together, the application will disregard the maintenance of this flag and will group the invoices for a single disbursement, provided that the bunching criteria are met. If Consolidated Disbursements is No, then each invoice/debit note or purchase order to be financed individually even if they qualify the bunching criteria.

#### (i) Note

Pre-Shipment settlement gets initiated only if the **Auto Settlement Applicable** is enabled.

### Note

The application supports defining a specific assignment amount during a transaction. Similarly, a specific credit cover percentage can be defined against exposure on the import factor or buyer.

#### (i) Note

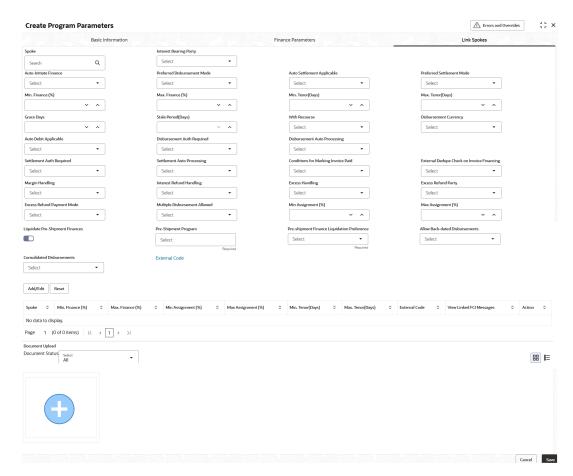
For existing implementations, **Conditions for Marking Invoice Paid** is defaulted to Null i.e., the invoice gets marked as Paid if an invoice payment is directly received. Banks or Financial Institutions should modify the fields as per the table to achieve a different functionality, if required.



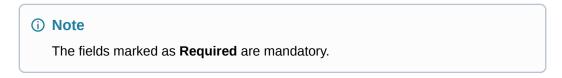
Click Link Spokes tab.

The Create Program Parameters - Link Spokes screen displays.

Figure 2-18 Create Program Parameters - Link Spokes



On Link Spokes tab, specify the fields to link multiple spokes/counterparties to the anchor and configure the finance parameters.



For more information on fields, refer to the field description table.

Table 2-16 Link Spokes - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Spoke	Click the search icon to select a spoke for the program. A Spoke can be a customer or a non-customer.
Interest Bearing Party	Select the party that bears the interest.
	The available options are:  • Anchor  • Spoke



Table 2-16 (Cont.) Link Spokes - Field Description

Field Name	Description
	Description
Import Factor	Click the search icon to select the import factor to be linked to the spoke.
	This field is displayed only if <b>Two Factor Applicable</b> is enabled in the <b>Basic Information</b> tab.
Insurance Company	Click the search icon to select the insurance company to be linked to the spoke.
	This field is displayed only if <b>Insurance Applicable</b> is enabled in the <b>Basic Information</b> tab.
Auto-Initiate Finance	Select <b>Yes</b> to enable auto financing for this spoke. Else select <b>No</b> .
Preferred Disbursement	Select the preferred mode of disbursement for this spoke.
Mode	The available options are:
	Account Transfer     CBT – Cross Border Transfer
	• Cheque
	• EFT
	This field is mandatory if <b>Auto-Initiate Finance</b> is enabled.
Auto Settlement Applicable	Select <b>Yes</b> to enable automated settlement (repayment) for this spoke. Else select <b>No</b> .
Preferred Settlement Mode	Select the preferred mode of settlement for this spoke.
	The available options are:
	Account Transfer     CRT    Cross Review Transfer
	<ul><li>CBT – Cross Border Transfer</li><li>Cheque</li></ul>
	• EFT
Min. Finance (%)	Specify the minimum finance percentage allowed for financing a transaction of this spoke.
Max. Finance (%)	Specify the maximum finance percentage allowed for financing a transaction of this spoke.
Min. Tenor (Days)	Specify the minimum tenor allowed for financing a transaction of this spoke.
Max. Tenor (Days)	Specify the maximum tenor allowed for financing a transaction of this spoke.
Grace Days	Specify the number of grace days.
	This is the period post the finance due date, within which the finance can be settled without penalty.
Stale Period (Days)	Specify the number of stale days.
	This is the period post the invoice date, after which the invoice becomes stale and will not be financed automatically any more for this program.
With Recourse	Select <b>Yes</b> to specify that the finance is allowed with recourse, else select <b>No</b> .
Disbursement Currency	Select the currency in which the finance should be disbursed for this spoke.
	This field is mandatory when <b>Auto-Initiate Finance</b> is enabled.
Auto Debit Applicable	Select <b>Yes</b> to enable auto debit to recover the outstanding finance due from the borrower for this spoke. Else select <b>No</b> .



Table 2-16 (Cont.) Link Spokes - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Liquidation Order for Auto Debit	Specify the default auto-debit liquidation order to be applied in case partial funds are debited from the payment party on auto-debit.
	The available options are:  • E - Penalty on Interest Outstanding
	O - Penalty on Principal Outstanding
	I – Monthly Interest Due     Country Figure (Palingwent finances)
	<ul> <li>D - Overdue Finance (Delinquent finances)</li> <li>F - Finance Due or Overdue (Outstanding Finances)</li> </ul>
	This field is mandatory if <b>Auto Debit Applicable</b> is enabled.
Auto-Debit Basis	Select the basis on which the account should be debited on the finance/invoice due date.
	The available options are:
	Accepted Instruments - The account is auto-debited when the invoice/debit note is in the Accepted state, and Reconciliation Towards is set to Invoice.
	<ul> <li>Financed Instruments - The account is auto-debited when the invoice/debit note is financed, irrespective of acceptance status, and Reconciliation Towards is set to Invoice.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Accepted or Financed Instruments - The account is auto- debited when the invoice/debit note is either accepted or financed, and Reconciliation Towards is set to Invoice.</li> </ul>
	All Instruments - The account is auto-debited when     Reconciliation Towards is set to Invoice, irrespective of     whether the invoice/debit note is accepted or financed.
	This field appears only if <b>Auto Debit Applicable</b> is set to <b>Yes</b> .
Disbursement Auth Required	Select <b>Yes</b> to enable authorization for the disbursement transactions for this spoke. Else select <b>No</b> .
Disbursement Auto Processing	Select <b>Yes</b> to enable automatic processing of disbursement transactions for this spoke. Else select <b>No</b> .
Amendment Auth Required	Select <b>Yes</b> to enable authorization for the amendment transactions for this spoke. Else select <b>No</b> .
	This field appears only if the <b>Product</b> selected has <b>Amendment Applicable</b> enabled.
Amendment Auto Processing	Select <b>Yes</b> to enable automatic processing of amendment transactions for this spoke. Else select <b>No</b> .
	This field appears only if the <b>Product</b> selected has <b>Amendment Applicable</b> enabled.
Settlement Auth Required	Select <b>Yes</b> to enable authorization for the settlement transactions for this spoke. Else select <b>No</b> .
Settlement Auto Processing	Select <b>Yes</b> enable automatic processing of settlement transactions for this spoke. Else select <b>No</b> .
External Dedupe Check on Invoice Financing	Select <b>Yes</b> to enable the system checks for duplicate financing entries with our invoice registry partner and alerts the user if any are found. Else select <b>No</b> .



Table 2-16 (Cont.) Link Spokes - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Conditions for Marking Invoice Paid	Select whether the financed invoice should be marked as <b>Paid</b> during Disbursement or during Settlement.
	This field appears only when the Buyer is the borrower, for which the Product should have one of the following configurations:  Product Type = Buyer Centric; Product Category = Invoice; Borrower = Anchor  Product Type = Supplier Centric; Product Category = Invoice; Borrower = Spoke
	The options available in this field are:  • Disbursement:  - If the invoice is financed to the maximum finance percentage, then during disbursement it is marked as Paid.  The outstanding invoice amount, if any, is handled as per margin handling settings.
	<ul> <li>If the invoice is not financed to the maximum finance percentage, then during disbursement, the invoice is marked as <b>Partially Paid</b>. Once the outstanding invoice amount is settled based on margin handling settings, then the invoice is marked as <b>Paid</b>.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Settlement:         <ul> <li>If an invoice is financed to the maximum finance percentage, and if all underlying finances are fully paid off during settlement, then the invoice is marked as Paid.</li> <li>If the invoice is not financed to the maximum finance percentage, then during settlement the invoice is marked as Partially Paid. It is then marked as Paid, once the outstanding payment is made.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Margin Handling	Select how the margin should be handled.
	The available options are:  • Auto-Settle and Refund to Supplier  • Manually Settle O/s Finances  • Refund to the Supplier  • Settle with Outstanding Finances  This field is displayed only if the Product selected in this program
	has Product Category selected as Invoice.
Margin Payment Mode	Select the mode of payment for the margin amount.  The available options are:  • Account Transfer  • CBT – Cross Border Transfer  • Cheque  • EFT  This field is displayed only if Margin Handling is selected as Refund.
	This field is displayed only if Margin Handling is selected as Refund to the Supplier or Auto-Settle and Refund to Supplier.
Interest Refund Handling	Select how the interest refund should be handled. The available options are:  • Auto-Settle and Refund to IBP  • Manually Settle O/s Finances  • Refund to the Interest Bearing Party  • Settle with Outstanding Finances



Table 2-16 (Cont.) Link Spokes - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Interest Refund Payment Mode	Select the mode of payment for the interest refunds.  The available options are:  Account Transfer  CBT – Cross Border Transfer  Cheque  EFT  This field is displayed only if Interest Refund Handling is selected as Refund to the Interest Bearing Party or Auto-Settle and Refund to IBP.
Excess Handling	Select how excess payment made towards settling of outstanding invoice/finance, should be handled.  The available options are:  Auto-Reconcile  Auto-Reconcile and Refund  Manually-Reconcile  Refund to beneficiary or payment party
Excess Refund Party	Select the party to refund the excess amount to. The available options are: Beneficiary/Counter Party Payment Party
Excess Refund Payment Mode	Select the mode of payment for the excess payment refund. The available options are:
Multiple Disbursement Allowed	Select <b>Yes</b> to enable multiple finance disbursements for an invoice. Else select <b>No</b> .
Min Assignment (%)	Specify the minimum percentage of the assignment amount allowed for financing a transaction of this spoke.
Max Assignment (%)	Specify the maximum percentage of the assignment amount allowed for financing a transaction of this spoke.
Credit Cover (%)	Specify the credit cover percentage allowed for the transaction for this spoke.  This field is displayed only if Assignment event in the Credit limit Mapping tab of Product Parameters is same as the limit type maintained in the Limit Type for Invoice Approval in System Parameters.
Credit Cover Start Date	Specify the credit cover start date for the transaction for this spoke.  This field is displayed only if <b>Assignment</b> event in the <b>Credit limit Mapping</b> tab of <b>Product Parameters</b> is same as the limit type maintained in the <b>Limit Type for Invoice Approval</b> in <b>System Parameters</b> .
Credit Cover End Date	Specify the credit cover end date for the transaction for this spoke.  This field is displayed only if <b>Assignment</b> event in the <b>Credit limit Mapping</b> tab of <b>Product Parameters</b> is same as the limit type maintained in the <b>Limit Type for Invoice Approval</b> in <b>System Parameters</b> .



Table 2-16 (Cont.) Link Spokes - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Liquidate Pre-Shipment Finances	Switch the toggle ON to enable linking of Pre-Shipment and Post-Shipment programs.
Pre-Shipment Program	Displays the applicable pre-shipment programs auto populated for the selected supplier-buyer combination.
	This field is enabled only if <b>Liquidate Pre-Shipment Finances</b> is enabled.
Pre-Shipment Finances Liquidation Preference	Select the liquidation preference for the settlement of pre-shipment finance.
	The available options are: Invoice Linked with PO
	FIFO     Invoice Linked with PO and FIFO
	This field is enabled only if <b>Liquidate Pre-Shipment Finances</b> is enabled.
Allow Back-Dated Disbursements	Select <b>Yes</b> to enable back-dated disbursements for the transaction of this spoke. Else select <b>No</b> .
FCI Enrichment Parameters	This section is displayed only if <b>Two Factor Applicable</b> toggle is switched ON.
	Note: An FCI Message 1 - Seller's Information is generated upon the onboarding of a new Seller in the application (Program Parameters) for a Factoring Program with Factoring Profile designated as Export Factoring. This message is subsequently transmitted to the Import Factor via an FCI message batch job.  Note: An FCI message is generated whenever a Spoke is newly
	added to the program.
Net Payment Terms	Specify the number of days after which the invoices can be due for payment.
Primary Discount Days	Specify the number of days applicable for the primary discount.
Primary Discount %	Specify the primary discount percentage.
Secondary Discount Days	Specify the number of days applicable for the secondary discount.
Secondary Discount %	Specify the secondary discount percentage.
Expected Total Seller Turnover	Specify the total turnover expected from the seller.
Expected Number of Buyers in your Country	Specify the number of buyers expected in the import factor's country for this seller.
Expected Number of Invoices to your Country	Specify the expected number of invoices which will be raised on the import factor's country for this seller.
Expected Number of Credit Notes to your Country	Specify the expected number of credit notes which will be raised on the import factor's country for this seller.
Expected open account turnover to your country	Specify the open account turnover to on the import factor's country for this seller.
Expected other turnover to your Country	Specify any other turnover to on the import factor's country for this seller.
Other Factors	Specify the import factors involved in the factoring i.e., if more one than factor is involved for the same seller in the same country.
Normal Terms of Delivery	Specify the delivery terms, if any.



Table 2-16 (Cont.) Link Spokes - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Services Required	Specify the services required from the import factor. The available options are:  • Full Service, non-recourse  • Recourse  • Collection only  • Special service (RESCUE, POM, IV)  • Non-notification  • Buyer to pay directly to EF/Seller  • Agency Agreement
Remarks (Message Text)	Specify the comments regarding the factoring, if any.
Invoice Currencies	Select the currency for invoice. You can select multiple currencies in this field.
Charge Back %	Specify the charge back percentage in cases of dispute.
Charge Back Currency	Specify the currency of the charge back amount.
Charge Back Amount	Specify the charge back amount in cases of dispute.
Consolidated Disbursements	This field determines whether financing is processed in batches or per instrument. When set to <b>Yes</b> , instruments will be grouped together under a single financing, provided they meet the necessary criteria. If set to <b>No</b> , each instrument will be financed individually, with consolidation occurring only if the request count exceeds the specified threshold.

## Note

Pre-Shipment settlement gets initiated only if **Auto Settlement Applicable** is enabled.

#### Note

For existing implementations of SCF, Liquidate Pre-Shipment Finances and Pre-Shipment Finances Liquidation Preference will be captured in Program Parameters basis their value in System parameters. System Parameters will be defaulted to 'No' but can be changed to 'Yes' at the discretion of the bank or Financial Institution during upgrade to current release version. In such cases the application will establish Pre-Post shipment finance linkage if a valid pre-shipment linkage is found

### Note

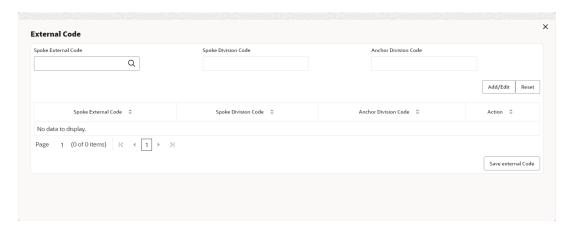
For existing implementations, **Conditions for Marking Invoice Paid** will be defaulted to blank implying that the invoice will be marked as Paid, only if an invoice payment is directly received. Banks or Financial Institutions should modify the field too.

8. Click **External Code** link to specify the external spoke codes.

The External Code pop-up screen displays.



Figure 2-19 Link Spokes - External Code



- a. In the Spoke External Code field, click the search icon to select the external spoke code. The corresponding Spoke Division Code and Anchor Division Code gets displayed in the adjacent columns.
- b. Click Add/Edit to add the details in the grid.
- c. Repeat these steps to add more external codes.
- d. If required, click Options icon under the Action column in the grid and then click Delete to remove the record.
- e. Click Save external Code to save the external code details.
- 9. Click Add/Edit to add the record to the grid.
- **10.** Click **Reset** to clear the selected values, if required.
- 11. Perform the following steps to take action on the records in the grid.
  - Click Options icon in the Action column to edit or delete the row.
- 12. In the **Document Upload** section, click **Add** to upload the documents.
  - Click the Document Status drop-down to filter the documents based on status.
- 13. Click Save to save the record and send it for authorization (if applicable).

## 2.3.2 View Program Parameters

This topic describes the systematic instruction to view, modify, delete, or authorize program records that have been created.

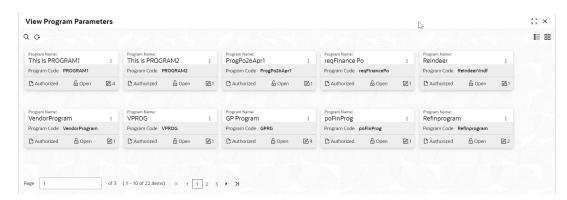
A tile is present for each record that has been created. The bottom portion of each record-tile displays the following:

- The status, whether Authorized, Unauthorized, or Rejected
- Open or Closed
- The number of times the record has been submitted by the Maker added.
- On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Maintenance.
- Under Maintenance, click Program Parameters. Under Program Parameters, click View Program Parameters.



The View Program Parameters screen displays.

#### Figure 2-20 View Program Parameters



- Filter the records in the View screen:
  - a. Click **Search** icon to view the filters. The user can filter the records by Program Code, Program Name, Product Code, Anchor Id, Authorization Status, and Record Status.
  - b. Select the required filter criteria and click **Search** button to filter the records.
  - Click Reset to reset the filter criteria.
- Click Refresh icon to refresh the records.
- 5. Click **Options** icon and then, select any of the following options:
  - unlock To modify the record details. Refer to the Create screen for the field level details.
    - Click Audit to view the maker details, checker details of the record.
    - Click Show History hyperlink to view the historical data of the record.
  - Authorize To authorize or reject the record. Authorizing/Rejecting requires necessary access rights.
    - Optional: Click View to view the record details.
    - If there are more than one modification, Click **Compare** to view the comparison through the field values of old record and the current record.
    - Select the record and click Approve to approve the record.
    - Select the record and click Reject to reject the record. Specify the relevant comments in the pop-up window that appears, and click Confirm.
  - c. Delete/Close To remove the record.
    - Optional: In the confirmation pop-up window, click View to view the record details.
    - Click **Proceed** to delete the record.
  - **d. Copy** To copy the record parameters for creating a new record.
  - e. View To view the record details.
  - f. Reopen To reopen the closed record.

## 2.4 Account Maintenance

This topic describes the information to setup the reference data for Accounting such as account mapping, entry codes, roles, and accounting entries in Supply Chain Finance system.



This topic consists the following sub-topics:

#### Account Role

This topic describes the information to setup the reference data for Accounting roles in Supply Chain Finance system.

#### Entry Codes

This topic describes the information to setup the reference data for entry codes in Supply Chain Finance system.

#### Accounting Entries

This topic describes the information to setup the reference data for Accounting entries in Supply Chain Finance system.

### External Account Mapping

This topic describes the information to create external account mapping. i.e., mapping of a customer external account to a specific product, event, etc.

#### Internal Account Mapping

This topic describes the information to setup the reference data for internal account mapping in Supply Chain Finance system.

## 2.4.1 Account Role

This topic describes the information to setup the reference data for Accounting roles in Supply Chain Finance system.

This topic consists the following sub-topics:

#### Create Account Role

This topic describes the systematic instruction to create role codes for the purpose of accounting.

#### View Account Role

This topic describes the systematic instruction to view, modify, delete, or authorize accounting role records that have been created.

### 2.4.1.1 Create Account Role

This topic describes the systematic instruction to create role codes for the purpose of accounting.

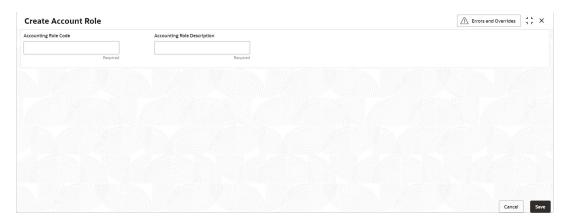
This is required to identify the Dr or Cr leg in an accounting entry. Dr or Cr legs with other parameters like amount type, are created through **Entry Codes** submenu.

- On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Maintenance.
- 2. Under Maintenance, click Accounting. Under Accounting, click Role.
- 3. Under Role, click Create Account Role.

The Create Account Role screen displays.



Figure 2-21 Create Account Role



Specify the fields on Create Account Role screen.



For more information on fields, refer to the field description table.

Table 2-17 Create Account Role - Field Description

Field	Description
Accounting Role Code	Specify a unique code for the accounting role being created.
Accounting Role Description	Specify a description to associate with the role.

5. Click **Save** to save the record and send it for authorization.

## 2.4.1.2 View Account Role

This topic describes the systematic instruction to view, modify, delete, or authorize accounting role records that have been created.

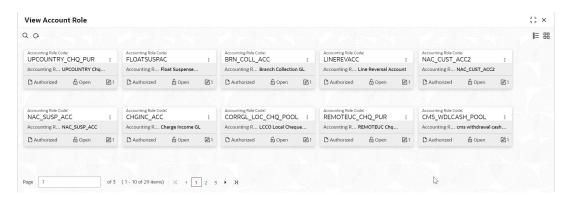
A tile is present for each record that has been created. The bottom portion of each record-tile displays the following:

- · The status, whether Authorized, Unauthorized, or Rejected
- Open or Closed
- The number of times the record has been submitted by the Maker added.
- On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Maintenance.
- 2. Under Maintenance, click Accounting. Under Accounting, click Role. Under Role, click View Account Role.

The View Account Role screen displays.



#### Figure 2-22 View Account Role



- Filter the records in the View screen:
  - a. Click **Search** icon to view the filters. The user can filter the records by Accounting Role Code, Accounting Role Description, Authorization Status, and Record Status.
  - b. Select the required filter criteria and click **Search** button to filter the records.
  - c. Click Reset to reset the filter criteria.
- Click Refresh icon to refresh the records.
- 5. Click **Options** icon and then, select any of the following options:
  - unlock To modify the record details. Refer to the Create screen for the field level details.
    - Click Audit to view the maker details, checker details of the record.
    - Click Show History hyperlink to view the historical data of the record.
  - Authorize To authorize or reject the record. Authorizing/Rejecting requires necessary access rights.
    - Optional: Click View to view the record details.
    - If there are more than one modification, Click Compare to view the comparison through the field values of old record and the current record.
    - Select the record and click Approve to approve the record.
    - Select the record and click Reject to reject the record. Specify the relevant comments in the pop-up window that appears, and click Confirm.
  - c. Delete/Close To remove the record.
    - Optional: In the confirmation pop-up window, click View to view the record details.
    - Click Proceed to delete the record.
  - Copy To copy the record parameters for creating a new record.
  - e. View To view the record details.
  - Reopen To reopen the closed record.

# 2.4.2 Entry Codes

This topic describes the information to setup the reference data for entry codes in Supply Chain Finance system.

The topic consists the following sub-topics:



Create Account Entry Code

This topic describes the systematic instruction to create entry codes, or Dr and Cr legs for an accounting entry.

View Account Entry Code

This topic describes the systematic instruction to view, modify, delete, or authorize accounting entry code records that have been created.

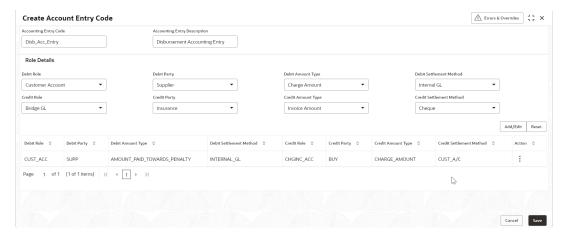
## 2.4.2.1 Create Account Entry Code

This topic describes the systematic instruction to create entry codes, or Dr and Cr legs for an accounting entry.

- On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Maintenance.
- 2. Under Maintenance, click Accounting. Under Accounting, click Entry Codes.
- 3. Under Entry Codes, click Create Account Entry Code.

The Create Account Entry Code screen displays.

Figure 2-23 Create Account Entry Code



4. Specify the fields on Create Account Entry Code screen.



For more information on fields, refer field description table.

Table 2-18 Create Account Entry Code - Field Description

Field	Description
Accounting Entry Code	Specify a unique identification code for the accounting entry.
Accounting Entry Description	Specify a description for the accounting entry.
Role Details	This section displays the following fields to specify the role details for creating an account entry code.



Table 2-18 (Cont.) Create Account Entry Code - Field Description

Field	Description
Debit Role	Select the role of the debit party.
Debit Party	Select the party type to debit.
Debit Amount Type	Select the amount type to debit.
Debit Settlement Method	Select the method to be used for debit settlement.
Credit Role	Select the role of the credit party.
Credit Party	Select the party to credit.
Credit Amount Type	Select the amount type to credit.
Credit Settlement Method	Select the method to be used for credit settlement.

- Click Add/Edit to add the details to the grid.
  - Click Options icon in the Action column to edit or delete the row.
- 6. Click **Reset** to clear the selected values, if required.
- 7. Click **Save** to save the record and send it for authorization.

## 2.4.2.2 View Account Entry Code

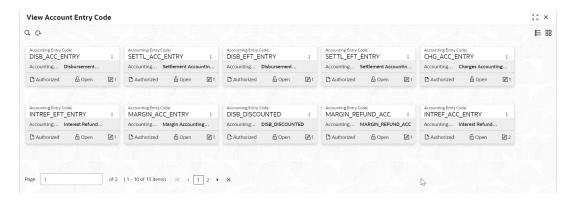
This topic describes the systematic instruction to view, modify, delete, or authorize accounting entry code records that have been created.

A tile is present for each record that has been created. The bottom portion of each record-tile displays the following:

- The status, whether Authorized, Unauthorized, or Rejected
- Open or Closed
- The number of times the record has been submitted by the Maker added.
- On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Maintenance.
- Under Maintenance, click Accounting. Under Accounting, click Entry Codes. Under Entry Codes, click View Account Entry Code.

The View Account Entry Code screen displays.

Figure 2-24 View Account Entry Code



**3.** Filter the records in the **View** screen:



- a. Click Search icon to view the filters. The user can filter the records by Accounting Entry Code, Accounting Entry Description, Authorization Status, and Record Status.
- b. Select the required filter criteria and click **Search** button to filter the records.
- Click Reset to reset the filter criteria.
- Click Refresh icon to refresh the records.
- 5. Click **Options** icon and then, select any of the following options:
  - unlock To modify the record details. Refer to the Create screen for the field level details.
    - Click Audit to view the maker details, checker details of the record.
    - Click Show History hyperlink to view the historical data of the record.
  - Authorize To authorize or reject the record. Authorizing/Rejecting requires necessary access rights.
    - Optional: Click View to view the record details.
    - If there are more than one modification, Click **Compare** to view the comparison through the field values of old record and the current record.
    - Select the record and click **Approve** to approve the record.
    - Select the record and click Reject to reject the record. Specify the relevant comments in the pop-up window that appears, and click Confirm.
  - c. **Delete/Close** To remove the record.
    - Optional: In the confirmation pop-up window, click View to view the record details.
    - Click Proceed to delete the record.
  - Copy To copy the record parameters for creating a new record.
  - e. View To view the record details.
  - **f. Reopen** To reopen the closed record.

# 2.4.3 Accounting Entries

This topic describes the information to setup the reference data for Accounting entries in Supply Chain Finance system.

The topic consists the following sub-topics:

Create Account Entries

This topic describes the systematic instruction to create accounting entries by mapping entry codes with appropriate product, event, payment mode, and so on.

View Account Entries

This topic describes the systematic instruction to view, modify, delete, or authorize accounting entry records that have been created.

## 2.4.3.1 Create Account Entries

This topic describes the systematic instruction to create accounting entries by mapping entry codes with appropriate product, event, payment mode, and so on.

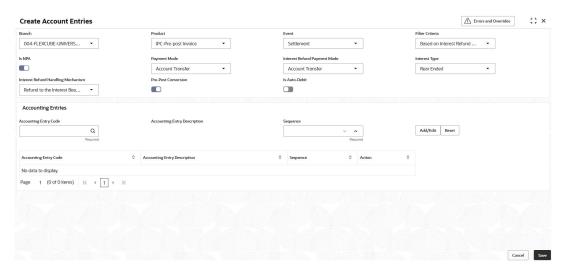
 On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Maintenance.



- 2. Under Maintenance, click Accounting. Under Accounting, click Accounting Entries.
- 3. Under Accounting Entries, click Create Account Entries.

The Create Account Entries screen displays.

Figure 2-25 Create Account Entries



4. Specify the fields on **Create Account Entries** screen.

Note
 The fields marked as Required are mandatory.

For more information on fields, refer to the field description table.

**Table 2-19 Create Account Entries - Field Description** 

Field	Description		
Branch	Select the branch to add accounting entries for. Values in this field are listed based on your access rights.		
Product	Select the product to add accounting entries for. User can select <b>ALL</b> to create the entry code for all the products.		
Event	Select the event to add accounting entries for.		
	The available options are:		
	Amendment		
	Auto Debit		
	Disbursement		
	<ul> <li>Disbursement Reversal</li> </ul>		
	<ul> <li>Excess Refund</li> </ul>		
	Interest Refund		
	Margin Refund		
	Residual Payment Refund		
	Settlement		
	Settlement Reversal		



Table 2-19 (Cont.) Create Account Entries - Field Description

Field	Description	
Filter Criteria	Select the filter criteria for specific application of accounting entries. Based on the selected filter criteria, select the type/mode from the respective field(s) that appear. For more information, refer to Filter Criteria for Events.	
Charge Type	Select the charge type from the drop-down. The available options are:  Credit  Debit This field appears if the Filter Criteria is selected as Charge Based.	
Charge Collection Type	Click the drop-down list and select the options from below:  Liquidate Online  Defer Charges  Liquidate Deferred Charges  This field appears if the Filter Criteria is selected as Charge Based.	
Is NPA	Switch this toggle ON if the accounting entry is for an NPA.	
Payment Mode	Select the mode of the payment.  The available options are:  Account Transfer  CBT – Cross Border Transfer  Cheque  EFT	
Interest Refund Payment Mode	Select the mode of the payment for interest refund.  The available options are:  • Account Transfer  • CBT – Cross Border Transfer  • Cheque  • EFT	
Interest Type	Select the type of interest collection. The available options are: Front Ended Rear Ended	
Interest Refund Handling Mechanism	Select how the interest refund should be handled. The available options are:  Manually Settle O/s Finances  Refund to the Interest Bearing Party  Settle with Outstanding Finances	
Pre-Post Conversion	Switch this toggle ON if the accounting entry is for a pre-post conversion.	
Is Auto-Debit	Switch this toggle ON if the accounting entry is for a debit initiated through auto-debit.	
Charge Type	Select the charge type as Credit or Debit.	
Payment Party	Select the payment party if the accounting entry set up is separate for a specific payment party.  The available options are:  Buyer  Supplier	



Table 2-19 (Cont.) Create Account Entries - Field Description

Field	Description
Account Type	Select the type of account to be mapped.  The available options are:  OD A/C  CASA
Accounting Entries	This section displays the following fields to select the accounting entry code and map it to an accounting entry.
Accounting Entry Code	Click the Search icon to select the required accounting entry code.
Accounting Entry Description	Displays the description of the selected entry code.
Sequence	Select the sequence to be set for the accounting entry code.

Table 2-20 Filter Criteria for Events - Field Description

Event	Filter Criteria	Additional Filter Options
Amendment	Interest Collection Type	Interest Type
	Charge Based	Charge Type
Disbursement	Payment Mode, Interest Collection Type and Pre- Post conversion  Charge Based	<ul><li>Payment Mode</li><li>Interest Type</li><li>Pre-Post Conversion</li><li>Charge Type</li></ul>
Settlement	Based on Interest Refund Payment Mode	<ul> <li>Is NPA</li> <li>Payment Mode</li> <li>Interest Refund Payment Mode</li> <li>Interest Type</li> <li>Interest Refund Handling Mechanism</li> <li>Pre-Post Conversion</li> <li>Is Auto-Debit</li> </ul>
	Based on Interest Refund Handling Mechanism	<ul> <li>Is NPA</li> <li>Payment Mode</li> <li>Interest Type</li> <li>Interest Refund Handling Mechanism</li> <li>Pre-Post Conversion</li> <li>Is Auto-Debit</li> </ul>
	Based on Interest Collection Type	<ul><li>Is NPA</li><li>Payment Mode</li><li>Interest Type</li><li>Pre-Post Conversion</li><li>Is Auto-Debit</li></ul>
	Based on Charges	<ul><li>Charge Type</li><li>Is Auto-Debit</li></ul>
Auto-Debit	Default	• NA
	Payment Party, Account Type and Payment Mode Based	<ul><li>Payment Party</li><li>Account Type</li><li>Payment Mode</li></ul>
Interest Refund	Payment Mode Based	Payment Mode



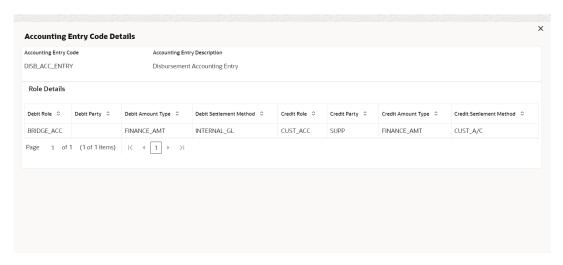
Table 2-20 (Cont.) Filter Criteria for Events - Field Description

Event	Filter Criteria	Additional Filter Options
Margin Refund	Payment Mode Based	Payment Mode
Excess Refund	Payment Mode Based	Payment Mode
Residual Payment Refund	Payment Mode Based	Payment Mode

- Click Add/Edit to add the details to the grid.
- Click the hyperlink to view the details of the selected Accounting Entry Code.

The Accounting Entry Code Details screen displays.

Figure 2-26 Accounting Entry Code Details



- 7. Perform the following steps to take action on the records in the grid.
  - Click Options icon in the Action column to edit or delete the row.
- 8. Click **Reset** to clear the selected values, if required.
- 9. Click Save to save the record and send it for authorization (if applicable).

### 2.4.3.2 View Account Entries

This topic describes the systematic instruction to view, modify, delete, or authorize accounting entry records that have been created.

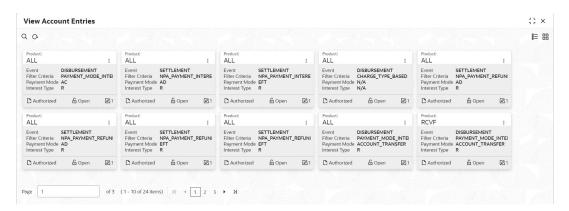
A tile is present for each record that has been created. The bottom portion of each record-tile displays the following:

- The status, whether Authorized, Unauthorized, or Rejected
- Open or Closed
- The number of times the record has been submitted by the Maker added.
- On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Maintenance.
- Under Maintenance, click Accounting. Under Accounting, click Accounting Entries.
   Under Accounting Entries, click View Account Entries.

The View Account Entries screen displays.



#### Figure 2-27 View Account Entries



- 3. Filter the records in the **View** screen:
  - a. Click **Search** icon to view the filters. The user can filter the records by Product, Event, Payment Mode, Interest Type, Authorization Status, and Record Status.
  - **b.** Select the required filter criteria and click **Search** button to filter the records.
  - Click Reset to reset the filter criteria.
- Click Refresh icon to refresh the records.
- 5. Click **Options** icon and then, select any of the following options:
  - unlock To modify the record details. Refer to the Create screen for the field level details.
    - Click Audit to view the maker details, checker details of the record.
    - Click Show History hyperlink to view the historical data of the record.
  - Authorize To authorize or reject the record. Authorizing/Rejecting requires necessary access rights.
    - Optional: Click View to view the record details.
    - If there are more than one modification, Click **Compare** to view the comparison through the field values of old record and the current record.
    - Select the record and click Approve to approve the record.
    - Select the record and click **Reject** to reject the record. Specify the relevant comments in the pop-up window that appears, and click **Confirm**.
  - c. Delete/Close To remove the record.
    - Optional: In the confirmation pop-up window, click View to view the record details.
    - Click Proceed to delete the record.
  - **d. Copy** To copy the record parameters for creating a new record.
  - e. View To view the record details.
  - Reopen To reopen the closed record.

# 2.4.4 External Account Mapping

This topic describes the information to create external account mapping. i.e., mapping of a customer external account to a specific product, event, etc.

This topic consists the following sub-topics:



#### Create External Account Mapping

This topic describes the systematic instruction to create external account mapping. That is mapping of a customer external account to a specific product, event and so on.

View External Account Mapping

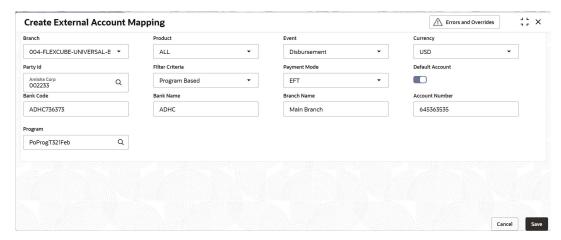
This topic describes the systematic instruction to view, modify, delete, or authorize external account mapping records that have been created.

### 2.4.4.1 Create External Account Mapping

This topic describes the systematic instruction to create external account mapping. That is mapping of a customer external account to a specific product, event and so on.

- On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Maintenance.
- Under Maintenance, click Accounting. Under Accounting, click External Account Mapping.
- Under External Account Mapping, click Create External Account Mapping.
   The Create External Account Mapping screen displays.

Figure 2-28 Create External Account Mapping



4. Specify the fields on Create External Account Mapping screen.

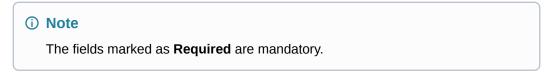


Table 2-21 Create External Account Mapping - Field Description

Field	Description
Branch	Select the branch to be mapped to customer's external account.
Product	Select the product to be mapped with the account.  The user can select <b>ALL</b> if the account is to be used for all the products.



Table 2-21 (Cont.) Create External Account Mapping - Field Description

Field	Description
Event	Select the account event from the list.
Currency	Select the currency of the external account.
Party Id	Click on the Search icon to select the party for whom account mapping needs to be done.
Filter Criteria	Select the appropriate filter criteria for specific application of accounting entries.  The available options are:  Default  Program Based  Division Code Based
Payment Mode	Select the mode of payment for the account. The available options are:  EFT  CBT – Cross Border Transfer
Default Account	Switch this toggle to specify if this account should be considered as the default one.  This field is displayed only if the <b>Payment Mode</b> is selected as <b>EFT</b> .
Account Number	Specify the account number.  This field is displayed only if the <b>Payment Mode</b> is selected as <b>EFT</b> .
Bank Code	Specify the Bank code of the branch of the entered account number. This field is displayed only if the <b>Payment Mode</b> is selected as <b>EFT</b> .
Bank Name	Specify the name of the bank.  This field is displayed only if the <b>Payment Mode</b> is selected as <b>EFT</b> .
Branch Name	Specify the name of the bank's branch associated with the entered IFSC code.  This field is displayed only if the <b>Payment Mode</b> is selected as <b>EFT</b> .
Ultimate Beneficiary	Specify the below details for the ultimate beneficiary.  Name on Account  Business Identifier Code  Bank Name  Account Number  This field is displayed only if the Payment Mode is selected as CBT - Cross Border Transfer.
Default Account	Select the toggle switch to enable, if it is a default account.  This toggle is displayed only if the <b>Payment Mode</b> is selected as <b>CBT - Cross Border Transfer</b> .
Unstructured Address(Ultimate Beneficiary)	Specify the below details for the unstructured address.  Address Line 1  Address Line 1  Address Line 1  Country  Contact Details  Email  This field is displayed only if the Payment Mode is selected as CBT - Cross Border Transfer.



Table 2-21 (Cont.) Create External Account Mapping - Field Description

Field	Description
Structured Address(Ultimate Beneficiary)	Specify the below details for the structured address.  Department Sub Department Street Name Building Number Building Name Floor Post Box Room Post Code Town Name Town Location Name District Name Country Sub Division Country Address Line 1 Address Line 2 This field is displayed only if the Payment Mode is selected as CBT - Cross Border Transfer.
Intermediary Bank	Specify the below details for intermediary bank.  Business Identifier Code  Bank Name  This field is displayed only if the Payment Mode is selected as CBT - Cross Border Transfer.
Unstructured Address(Intermediary Bank)	Specify the below details for unstructured address.  Address Line 1  Address Line 2  Address Line 3  Address Line 4  This field is displayed only if the Payment Mode is selected as CBT - Cross Border Transfer.
Structured Address(Intermediary Bank)	Specify the below details for structured address.  Department Sub Department Street Name Building Number Building Name Floor Post Box Room Post Code Town Name Town Location Name District Name Country Sub Division Country Address Line 1 Address Line 2 This field is displayed only if the Payment Mode is selected as CBT - Cross Border Transfer.



Table 2-22 Structured Address - Field Characters

Field	Data Type	Maximum Size	Mandatory/Optional
Department	Text, Alpha Numeric, With ISO Character	70	Optional
Sub Department	Text, Alpha Numeric, With ISO Character	70	Optional
Street Name	Text, Alpha Numeric, With ISO Character	70	Optional
Building Number	Text, Alpha Numeric, With ISO Character	16	Optional
Building Name	Text, Alpha Numeric, With ISO Character	35	Optional
Floor	Text, Alpha Numeric, With ISO Character	70	Optional
Post Box	Text, Alpha Numeric, With ISO Character	16	Optional
Room	Text, Alpha Numeric, With ISO Character	70	Optional
Post Code	Text, Alpha Numeric, With ISO Character	16	Optional
Town Name	Text, Alpha Numeric, With ISO Character	35	Mandatory
Town Location Name	Text, Alpha Numeric, With ISO Character	35	Optional
District Name	Text, Alpha Numeric, With ISO Character	35	Optional
Country Sub Division	Text, Alpha Numeric, With ISO Character	35	Optional
Country	LOV, Alpha Numeric, With ISO Character	3	Mandatory

Table 2-23 Hybrid Address - Fields Characters

Field	Data Type	Maximum Size	Mandatory/Optional
Address Line 1	Text, Alpha Numeric, With ISO Character	70	Optional
Address Line 2	Text, Alpha Numeric, With ISO Character	70	Optional

5. Click **Save** to save the data and send it for authorization.

# 2.4.4.2 View External Account Mapping

This topic describes the systematic instruction to view, modify, delete, or authorize external account mapping records that have been created.

A tile is present for each record that has been created. The bottom portion of each record-tile displays the following:

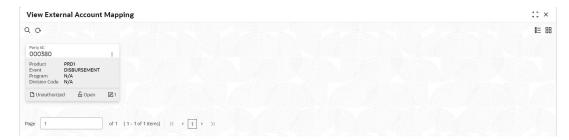
- · The status, whether Authorized, Unauthorized, or Rejected
- Open or Closed
- The number of times the record has been submitted by the Maker added.



- On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Maintenance.
- Under Maintenance, click Accounting. Under Accounting, click External Account Mapping. Under External Account Mapping, click View External Account Mapping.

The View External Account Mapping screen displays.

Figure 2-29 View External Account Mapping



- 3. Filter the records in the **View** screen:
  - a. Click **Search** icon to view the filters. The user can filter the records by Product, Event, Party Id, Program, Division Code, Authorization Status, and Record Status.
  - **b.** Select the required filter criteria and click **Search** button to filter the records.
  - c. Click **Reset** to reset the filter criteria.
- Click Refresh icon to refresh the records.
- 5. Click **Options** icon and then, select any of the following options:
  - unlock To modify the record details. Refer to the Create screen for the field level details.
    - Click Audit to view the maker details, checker details of the record.
    - Click **Show History** hyperlink to view the historical data of the record.
  - Authorize To authorize or reject the record. Authorizing/Rejecting requires necessary access rights.
    - Optional: Click View to view the record details.
    - If there are more than one modification, Click **Compare** to view the comparison through the field values of old record and the current record.
    - Select the record and click **Approve** to approve the record.
    - Select the record and click **Reject** to reject the record. Specify the relevant comments in the pop-up window that appears, and click **Confirm**.
  - c. Delete/Close To remove the record.
    - Optional: In the confirmation pop-up window, click View to view the record details.
    - Click Proceed to delete the record.
  - **d. Copy** To copy the record parameters for creating a new record.
  - e. View To view the record details.
  - **f. Reopen** To reopen the closed record.



# 2.4.5 Internal Account Mapping

This topic describes the information to setup the reference data for internal account mapping in Supply Chain Finance system.

This topic consists the following sub-topics:

Create Internal Account Mapping

This topic describes the systematic instruction to map internal accounts (Customer accounts and Bank GL accounts) with specific accounting roles.

View Internal Account Mapping

This topic describes the systematic instruction to view, modify, delete, or authorize internal account mapping records that have been created.

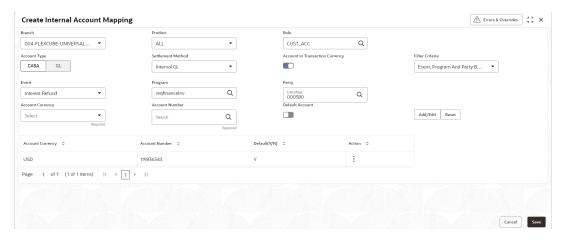
### 2.4.5.1 Create Internal Account Mapping

This topic describes the systematic instruction to map internal accounts (Customer accounts and Bank GL accounts) with specific accounting roles.

- On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Maintenance.
- Under Maintenance, click Accounting. Under Accounting, click Internal Account Mapping.
- 3. Under Internal Account Mapping, click Create Internal Account Mapping.

The Create Internal Account Mapping screen displays.

Figure 2-30 Create Internal Account Mapping



4. Specify the fields on Create Internal Account Mapping screen.

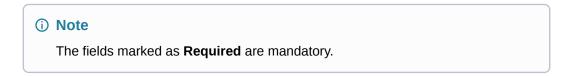




Table 2-24 Create Internal Account Mapping - Field Description

_	
Field	Description
Branch	Select the branch in which account is maintained.
Product	Select the product for which internal account mapping is to be maintained.
	The user can select <b>ALL</b> if the account is to be used for all the products.
Role	Click the Search icon to select the accounting role to map the account to.
Account Type	Switch the toggle button to select either <b>CASA</b> or <b>GL</b> for the mapping.
Settlement Method	Select the settlement method corresponding to the account type.
Account in Transaction Currency	Switch this toggle ON specify whether the accounting should be done in transaction currency or not.
Program	Select the appropriate filter criteria for specific application of accounting entries.  The available options are:  Event, Program, and Party Based  Program and Party Based  Party and Division Code Based  Event and Party Based  Program Based  Party Based  Charge Code Based  Charge Code Based  Click the Search icon and select the program to map the account with.  This field is displayed only if Filter Criteria selected as Program.
Party	Click the Search icon and select the party to whose account is to be mapped.  This field is displayed only if <b>Filter Criteria</b> selected as <b>Party</b> .
Division Code	Click the Search icon and select the applicable division code.
	This field is displayed only if <b>Filter Criteria</b> selected as <b>Division Code</b> .
Event	Select an event for account mapping. This field is displayed only if <b>Filter Criteria</b> selected as <b>Event</b> .
Charge Code	Select the charge code to map the account with.
	This field is displayed only if <b>Filter Criteria</b> selected as <b>Charge Code</b> .
Account Currency	Select the currency of the account to be mapped.
Account Number	Click the Search icon and select real/virtual account number.
Default Account	Switch this toggle ON to specify if this account should be considered as the default one.

- 5. Click **Add/ Edit** to add the details to the grid.
  - Click Options icon in the Action column to edit or delete the row.
- 6. Click **Reset** to clear the selected values, if required.
- 7. Click **Save** to save the data and send it for authorization.



### 2.4.5.2 View Internal Account Mapping

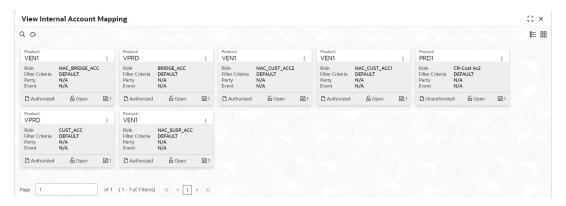
This topic describes the systematic instruction to view, modify, delete, or authorize internal account mapping records that have been created.

A tile is present for each record that has been created. The bottom portion of each record-tile displays the following:

- The status, whether Authorized, Unauthorized, or Rejected
- Open or Closed
- The number of times the record has been submitted by the Maker added.
- On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Maintenance.
- Under Maintenance, click Accounting. Under Accounting, click Internal Account Mapping. Under Internal Account Mapping, click View Internal Account Mapping.

The View Internal Account Mapping screen displays.

Figure 2-31 View Internal Account Mapping



- 3. Filter the records in the View screen:
  - a. Click **Search** icon to view the filters. The user can filter the records by Branch, Product, Role, Party, Event, Authorization Status, and Record Status.
  - **b.** Select the required filter criteria and click **Search** button to filter the records.
  - c. Click Reset to reset the filter criteria.
- 4. Click Refresh icon to refresh the records.
- 5. Click **Options** icon and then, select any of the following options:
  - Unlock To modify the record details. Refer to the Create screen for the field level details.
    - Click Audit to view the maker details, checker details of the record.
    - Click Show History hyperlink to view the historical data of the record.
  - Authorize To authorize or reject the record. Authorizing/Rejecting requires necessary access rights.
    - Optional: Click View to view the record details.
    - If there are more than one modification, Click **Compare** to view the comparison through the field values of old record and the current record.



- Select the record and click Approve to approve the record.
- Select the record and click Reject to reject the record. Specify the relevant comments in the pop-up window that appears, and click Confirm.
- c. **Delete/Close** To remove the record.
  - Optional: In the confirmation pop-up window, click View to view the record details.
  - Click Proceed to delete the record.
- d. **Copy** To copy the record parameters for creating a new record.
- e. View To view the record details.
- f. **Reopen** To reopen the closed record.

### 2.5 Alerts Maintenance

This topic describes the information to setup the reference data for Alerts such as contact details, definition, and decisioning in Supply Chain Finance system.

This topic consists the following sub-topics:

#### Alert Contact Details

This topic describes the information to setup the reference data to maintain the contact details of the party for alert codes.

#### Alert Definition

This topic describes the information to maintain the alert definitions in Supply Chain Finance system.

#### Alert Decisioning

This topic describes the information to set and manage the alerts in Supply Chain Finance system.

### Alert Template Details

This topic describes the information to maintain the email ID and SMS content for each combination of Template ID and Language, for each corporate in Supply Chain Finance system.

#### Alert Template ID

This topic describes the information to create a Template ID for specific events for each corporate in Supply Chain Finance system.

### 2.5.1 Alert Contact Details

This topic describes the information to setup the reference data to maintain the contact details of the party for alert codes.

The user can maintain contact details for multiple alerts for a selected party.

This topic consists the following sub-topics:

#### Create Alert Contact Details

This topic describes the systematic instruction to create a record of party contact details for alerts.

#### View Alert Contact Details

This topic describes the systematic instruction to view, modify, delete, or authorize alert contact detail records that have been created.



### 2.5.1.1 Create Alert Contact Details

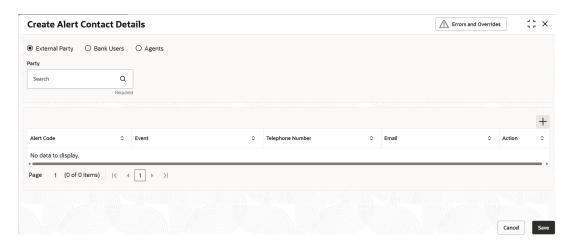
This topic describes the systematic instruction to create a record of party contact details for alerts.

A newly created contact details record takes effect once authorized and cannot be modified thereafter.

- On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Maintenance.
- 2. Under Maintenance, click Alerts. Under Alerts, click Alert Contact Details.
- 3. Under Alert Contact Details, click Create Alert Contact Details.

The Create Alert Contact Details screen displays.

Figure 2-32 Create Alert Contact Details



4. Select the following options to specify the fields on **Create Alert Contact Details** screen.

The available options are:

- External Party
- Bank Users
- Agents

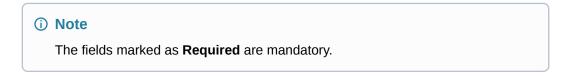


Table 2-25 Create Alert Contact Details - Field Description

Field	Description
Party	Click the Search icon and select the party to add the alert contact details for.



Table 2-25 (Cont.) Create Alert Contact Details - Field Description

Field	Description
Alert Code	Click the Search icon and select the alert code to enter the contact details for.
Telephone Number	Specify the telephone number to be considered for selected alert.
Email	Specify the email ID to be considered for the alert.

- 5. Click **Add** icon to add a row for a contact.
- 6. Perform any of the below action on the grid record(s).
  - · Click Edit icon to edit the contact details.
  - Click Save icon to save the contact details.
  - Click **Delete** icon to remove the row.
- 7. Click **Save** to save the record and send it for authorization.

### 2.5.1.2 View Alert Contact Details

This topic describes the systematic instruction to view, modify, delete, or authorize alert contact detail records that have been created.

A tile is present for each record that has been created. The bottom portion of each record-tile displays the following:

- The status, whether Authorized, Unauthorized, or Rejected
- Open or Closed
- The number of times the record has been submitted by the Maker added.
- On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Maintenance.
- 2. Under Maintenance, click Alerts. Under Alerts, click Alert Contact Details. Under Alert Contact Details, click View Alert Contact Details.

The View Alert Contact Details screen displays.

Figure 2-33 View Alert Contact Details



- 3. Filter the records in the **View** screen:
  - a. Click Search icon to view the filters. The user can filter the records by Party Id, Record Status, and Authorization Status.
  - b. Select the required filter criteria and click **Search** button to filter the records.
  - c. Click Reset to reset the filter criteria.



- Click Refresh icon to refresh the records.
- Click Options icon and then, select any of the following options:
  - unlock To modify the record details. Refer to the Create screen for the field level details.
    - Click Audit to view the maker details, checker details of the record.
    - Click Show History hyperlink to view the historical data of the record.
  - Authorize To authorize or reject the record. Authorizing/Rejecting requires necessary access rights.
    - Optional: Click View to view the record details.
    - If there are more than one modification, Click **Compare** to view the comparison through the field values of old record and the current record.
    - Select the record and click Approve to approve the record.
    - Select the record and click Reject to reject the record. Specify the relevant comments in the pop-up window that appears, and click Confirm.
  - c. **Delete/Close** To remove the record.
    - Optional: In the confirmation pop-up window, click View to view the record details.
    - Click Proceed to delete the record.
  - d. Copy To copy the record parameters for creating a new record.
  - e. View To view the record details.
  - Reopen To reopen the closed record.

### 2.5.2 Alert Definition

This topic describes the information to maintain the alert definitions in Supply Chain Finance system.

The **Alert Definition** functionality can be used to configure and manage the types of alerts. User can define alert categories for various events. These defined alerts can be further used in the **Alert Decisioning** screen to set alerts.

This topic consists the following sub-topics:

- Create Alert Definition
  - This topic describes the systematic instruction to configure and manage various types of alerts.
- View Alert Definition
  - This topic describes the systematic instruction to view, modify, delete, or authorize alert definition records that have been created.

### 2.5.2.1 Create Alert Definition

This topic describes the systematic instruction to configure and manage various types of alerts.

Newly created alert types take effect once authorized and cannot be modified thereafter.

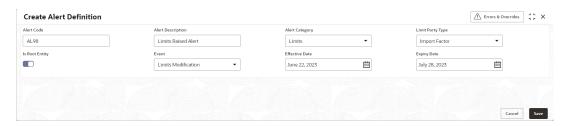
- On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Maintenance.
- 2. Under Maintenance, click Alerts. Under Alerts, click Alert Definition.



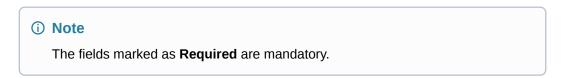
3. Under Alert Definition, click Create Alert Definition.

The **Create Alert Definition** screen displays.

Figure 2-34 Create Alert Definition



Specify the fields on Create Alert Definition screen.



For more information on fields, refer to the field description table.

Table 2-26 Create Alert Definition - Field Description

Field	Description	
Alert Code	Specify the unique alert code to be maintained in the system.	
Alert Description	Specify the description of the alert.	
Alert Category	Select the category of the alert.	
	The available options are:	
	• Limits	
	Finance	
Limit Party Type	Select the limit party to set the alert for.	
Is Root Entity	Switch this toggle ON to specify if the selected limit party is the main entity.	
Event	Select the event for which the alert should be used.	
Effective Date	Click the Calendar icon and select the date from when the alert is effective in the system.	
Expiry Date	Click the Calendar icon and select the date up to when the alert can be used in the system.	

5. Click **Save** to save the record and send it for authorization.

### 2.5.2.2 View Alert Definition

This topic describes the systematic instruction to view, modify, delete, or authorize alert definition records that have been created.

A tile is present for each record that has been created. The bottom portion of each record-tile displays the following:

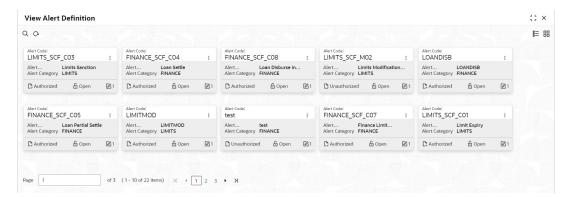
- The status, whether Authorized, Unauthorized, or Rejected
- Open or Closed



- The number of times the record has been submitted by the Maker added.
- On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Maintenance.
- Under Maintenance, click Alerts. Under Alerts, click Alert Definition. Under Alert Definition. click View Alert Definition.

The View Alert Definition screen displays.

Figure 2-35 View Alert Definition



- 3. Filter the records in the **View** screen:
  - a. Click **Search** icon to view the filters. The user can filter the records by Alert Code, Alert Description, Authorization Status, and Record Status.
  - **b.** Select the required filter criteria and click **Search** button to filter the records.
  - c. Click **Reset** to reset the filter criteria.
- 4. Click **Refresh** icon to refresh the records.
- 5. Click **Options** icon and then, select any of the following options:
  - unlock To modify the record details. Refer to the Create screen for the field level details.
    - Click **Audit** to view the maker details, checker details of the record.
    - Click Show History hyperlink to view the historical data of the record.
  - Authorize To authorize or reject the record. Authorizing/Rejecting requires necessary access rights.
    - Optional: Click View to view the record details.
    - If there are more than one modification, Click **Compare** to view the comparison through the field values of old record and the current record.
    - Select the record and click Approve to approve the record.
    - Select the record and click **Reject** to reject the record. Specify the relevant comments in the pop-up window that appears, and click **Confirm**.
  - c. Delete/Close To remove the record.
    - Optional: In the confirmation pop-up window, click View to view the record details.
    - Click Proceed to delete the record.
  - **d. Copy** To copy the record parameters for creating a new record.



- View To view the record details.
- **f. Reopen** To reopen the closed record.

# 2.5.3 Alert Decisioning

This topic describes the information to set and manage the alerts in Supply Chain Finance system.

The **Alert Decisioning** functionality is used to choose from the defined alerts and set the same for a recipient. The delivery mode and frequency for sending the alerts can also be defined.

This topic consists the following sub-topics:

#### Create Alert Decisioning

This topic describes the systematic instruction to set the delivery mode and frequency of sending alerts to a recipient.

View Alert Decisioning

This topic describes the systematic instruction to view, modify, delete, or authorize alert decisioning records that have been created.

### 2.5.3.1 Create Alert Decisioning

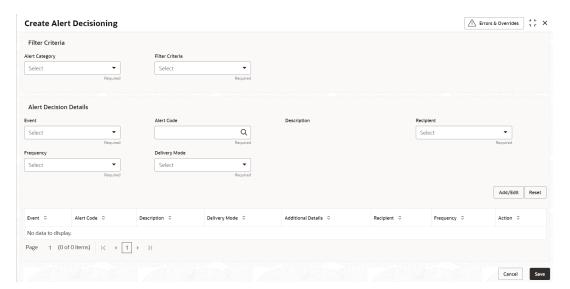
This topic describes the systematic instruction to set the delivery mode and frequency of sending alerts to a recipient.

Newly set decisioning records take effect once authorized. The phone number and email ID are obtained from the records maintained in the **Alert Contact Details** screen. Additional contact information can be entered in this screen.

- On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Maintenance.
- Under Maintenance, click Alerts. Under Alerts, click Alert Decisioning.
- 3. Under Alert Decisioning, click Create Alert Decisioning.

The Create Alert Decisioning screen displays.

Figure 2-36 Create Alert Decisioning





Specify the fields on **Create Alert Decisioning** screen.

### Note

The fields marked as **Required** are mandatory.

Table 2-27 Create Alert Decisioning - Field Description

Field	Description
Filter Criteria	This section displays the following fields to select the category and filter criteria for creating an alert decision.
Alert Category	Select the category of the event for which the alert needs to be set.  The available options are:
	Limits     Finance
Filter Criteria	Select the appropriate filter criteria for specific application of alerts. The available options are: Program Based Product Based Limit Party Default
Party	Click the Search icon and select the limit party to set the alerts for. This field appears if the <b>Filter Criteria</b> is selected as <b>Limit Party</b> .
Program	Click the Search icon and select the program to set the alerts for. This field appears if the <b>Filter Criteria</b> is selected as <b>Program Based</b> .
Product	Click the Search icon and select the product to set the alerts for. This field appears if the <b>Filter Criteria</b> is selected as <b>Product Based</b> .
Alert Decision Details	This section displays the following fields to define the alert decision details for the selected filter criteria.



Table 2-27 (Cont.) Create Alert Decisioning - Field Description

	ı
Field	Description
Event	Select the event for which the alert should be used. The list of events are displayed based on the selected category.
	If the Alert Category is selected as Finance, the following events are displayed in the drop-down list:  Finance Maturity  Finance Overdue  Loan Disburse  Loan Settle  Loan Partial Settle  Loan Payment Reminder  Finance Limit Exception  Loan Disburse In Progress  Loan Settle In Progress  Interest Collection Failure  Interest Payment Reminder  Interest Overdue  Finance Amendment  Finance Amendment  Finance Amendment In Progress  If the Alert Category is selected as Limits, the following events are displayed in the drop-down list:  Limits Modification  Limit Expiry
Alert Code	Limit Expiry  Click the Search icon and select the required alert code. The list of alert codes are displayed as per selected combination of alert category and event.
Description	Displays the description of the selected alert code.
Recipient	Select the recipient to whom the alert should be sent.
Frequency	Select the frequency to send the alerts as follows: Online - if the alert should be sent only when the event is generated. Scheduled - if the alert should be sent one or more times prior to the generation of the event.
Delivery Mode	Select the mode through which the alert should be sent.
Additional Phone	Specify the additional phone number to send the alert on. This field is displayed only for the <b>SMS</b> modes of delivery.
Additional Email	Specify the additional email address to send the alert on. This field is displayed only for the <b>Email</b> delivery mode.
Text Template for Email	Click the Search icon and select the text template for an email alert. This field is displayed only for <b>Online</b> frequency and <b>Email</b> delivery mode.
Attachment Template for Email	Click the Search icon and select the attachment template for an email alert.  This field is displayed only for <b>Online</b> frequency and <b>Email</b> delivery mode.
Text Template for SMS	Click the Search icon and select the text template for an SMS alert. This field is displayed only for <b>Online</b> frequency and <b>SMS</b> delivery mode.



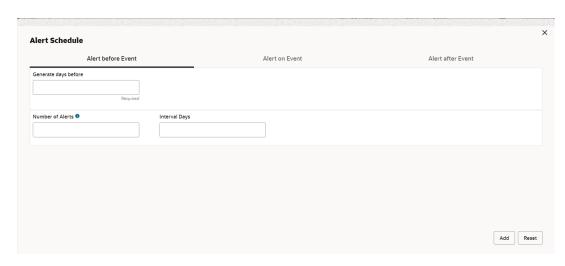
Table 2-27 (Cont.) Create Alert Decisioning - Field Description

Field	Description
Text Template for Dashboard	Specify the text template for the Dashboard alert. This field is displayed only for <b>Online</b> frequency and <b>Dashboard</b> delivery mode.

On selecting the Scheduled option in the Frequency field, click the Alert Calendar icon to select the alert schedule.

The Alert Schedule - Alert before Event popup screen displays.

Figure 2-37 Alert Schedule - Alert before Event



6. Specify the fields on Alert before Event tab.

Note
 The fields marked as Required are mandatory.

For more information on fields, refer to the field description table.

Table 2-28 Alert before Event - Field Description

Field	Description
Generate days before	Specify the number of days prior the event the alert to be sent.
Number of Alerts	Specify the total alerts to be sent.
Interval Days	Specify the interval in days between each alert.

7. In Alert Schedule pop-up screen, select the Alert on Event tab.

The Alert Schedule - Alert on Event popup screen displays.



Figure 2-38 Alert Schedule - Alert on Event



8. Specify the fields on the **Alert on Event** tab.



For more information on fields, refer to the field description table.

Table 2-29 Alert on Event - Field Description

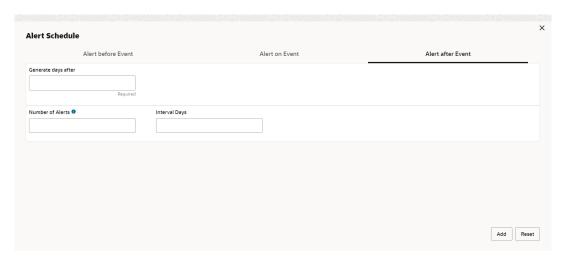
Field	Description
Text Template	Specify the text for the alert.
Attachment Template	Click the Search icon to select the attachment template for the email alert.
	This field is displayed only if the <b>Delivery Mode</b> is selected as <b>Email</b> .

9. In Alert Schedule popup screen, select the Alert after Event tab.

The Alert Schedule - Alert after Event popup screen displays.



Figure 2-39 Alert Schedule - Alert after Event



**10.** Specify the fields on the **Alert after Event** tab.



For more information on fields, refer to the field description table.

Table 2-30 Alert after Event - Field Description

Field	Description
Generate days before	Specify the number of days after the event the alert to be sent.
Number of Alerts	Specify the total alerts to be sent.
Interval Days	Specify the interval in days between each alert.

- Click Add/Edit to add alert decision details in the grid or modify a selected records from the grid.
- **12.** Perform the following steps to take action on the records in the grid.
  - a. Select the record in the grid and click **Options** icon under the **Action** column.
  - b. Click **Edit** to modify records in the grid.
  - c. Click **Delete** to remove the record.
- 13. Click **Save** to save the record and send it for authorization.

# 2.5.3.2 View Alert Decisioning

This topic describes the systematic instruction to view, modify, delete, or authorize alert decisioning records that have been created.

A tile is present for each record that has been created. The bottom portion of each record-tile displays the following:

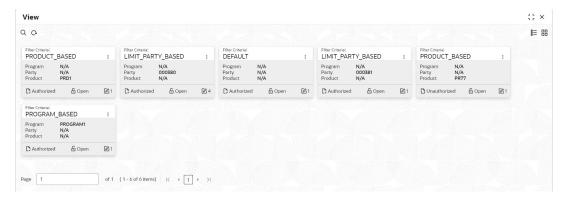
- The status, whether Authorized, Unauthorized, or Rejected
- Open or Closed



- The number of times the record has been submitted by the Maker added.
- On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Maintenance.
- 2. Under Maintenance, click Alerts. Under Alerts, click Alert Decisioning. Under Alert Decisioning, click View Alert Decisioning.

The View Alert Decisioning screen displays.

Figure 2-40 View Alert Decisioning



- 3. Filter the records in the **View** screen:
  - **a.** Click **Search** icon to view the filters. The user can filter the records by Party, Program, Product, Authorization Status, Record Status, and Category.
  - **b.** Select the required filter criteria and click **Search** button to filter the records.
  - Click Reset to reset the filter criteria.
- Click Refresh icon to refresh the records.
- 5. Click **Options** icon and then, select any of the following options:
  - Unlock To modify the record details. Refer to the Create screen for the field level details.
    - Click Audit to view the maker details, checker details of the record.
    - Click Show History hyperlink to view the historical data of the record.
  - Authorize To authorize or reject the record. Authorizing/Rejecting requires necessary access rights.
    - Optional: Click View to view the record details.
    - If there are more than one modification, Click **Compare** to view the comparison through the field values of old record and the current record.
    - Select the record and click **Approve** to approve the record.
    - Select the record and click **Reject** to reject the record. Specify the relevant comments in the pop-up window that appears, and click **Confirm**.
  - c. Delete/Close To remove the record.
    - Optional: In the confirmation pop-up window, click **View** to view the record details.
    - Click Proceed to delete the record.
  - Copy To copy the record parameters for creating a new record.



- View To view the record details.
- **f. Reopen** To reopen the closed record.

# 2.5.4 Alert Template Details

This topic describes the information to maintain the email ID and SMS content for each combination of Template ID and Language, for each corporate in Supply Chain Finance system.

This topic consists the following sub-topics:

- Create Alert Template Details
  - This topic describes the systematic instruction to create alert template details to a specific corporate.
- <u>View Alert Template Details</u>
   This topic describes the systematic instruction to view, modify, or authorize the alert temaplate details.

### 2.5.4.1 Create Alert Template Details

This topic describes the systematic instruction to create alert template details to a specific corporate.

Users can keep separate text for email and SMS for each **Template ID** and **Language** combination.

 On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Maintenance. Under Maintenance, click Alerts. Under Alerts, click Alert Template Details. Under Alert Template Details, click Create Alert Template Details.

The Create Alert Template Details screen displays.

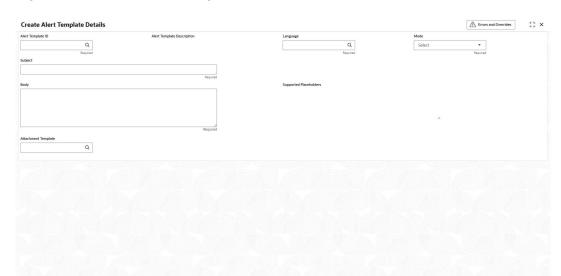


Figure 2-41 Create Alert Template Details

2. Specify the fields on **Create Alert Template Details** screen.





#### (i) Note

The fields marked as **Required** are mandatory.

For more information on fields, refer to the field description table.

Table 2-31 Create Alert Template Details - Field Description

Field	Description
Alert Template ID	Click the Search icon and select the specific template ID for which the text needs to be configured.
Alert Template Description	Displays the description of the selected alert template ID.
Language	Click the Search icon and select the specific language.
Mode	Select the mode through which the alert should be sent. The available options are:
	• Email • SMS
Subject	Specify the subject of the email to be sent.
Body	Specify the body of the alert message needs to be sent.
Supported Placeholders	Displays the supported placeholders.
Attachment Template	Click the Search icon and select the specific attachment template.

3. Click **Save** to save the record and send it for authorization.

# 2.5.4.2 View Alert Template Details

This topic describes the systematic instruction to view, modify, or authorize the alert temaplate details.

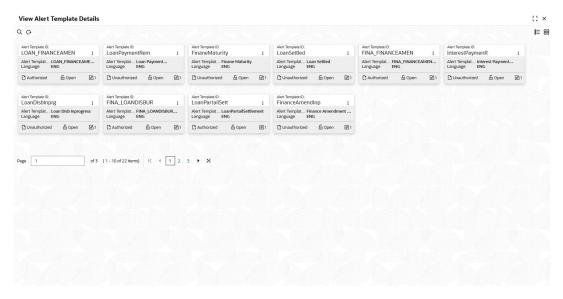
A tile is present for each record that has been created. The bottom portion of each record-tile displays the following:

- The status, whether Authorized, Unauthorized, or Rejected.
- Open or Closed.
- The number of times the record has been submitted by the Maker added.
- On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Maintenance. Under Maintenance, click Alerts. Under Alerts, click Alert Template Details. Under Alert Template Details, click View Alert Template Details.

The View Alert Template Details screen displays.



Figure 2-42 View Alert Template Details



- Filter the records in the View screen:
  - **a.** Click **Search** icon to view the filters. The user can filter the records by Corporate, Authorization Status, Record Status and Category.
  - b. Select the required filter criteria and click **Search** to filter the records.
  - Click Reset to reset the filter criteria.
- 3. Click **Refresh** icon to refresh the records.
- 4. Click **Options** icon and then select any of the following options:
  - unlock To modify the record details. Refer to the Create screen for the field level details.
    - Click Audit to view the maker details, checker details of the record.
    - Click Show History hyperlink to view the historical data of the record.
  - Authorize To authorize or reject the record. Authorizing/Rejecting requires necessary access rights.
    - Optional: Click View to view the record details.
    - If there are more than one modification, Click **Compare** to view the comparison through the field values of old record and the current record.
    - Select the record and click **Approve** to approve the record.
    - Select the record and click **Reject** to reject the record. Specify the relevant comments in the pop-up window that appears, and click **Confirm**.
  - Delete/Close To remove the record.
    - Optional: In the confirmation pop-up window, click View to view the record details.
    - · Click Proceed to delete the record.
  - **d. Copy** To copy the record parameters for creating a new record.
  - e. View To view the record details.
  - **f. Reopen** To reopen the closed record.



# 2.5.5 Alert Template ID

This topic describes the information to create a Template ID for specific events for each corporate in Supply Chain Finance system.

This topic consists the following sub-topics

- Create Alert Template ID
   This topic describes the systematic instruction to create template ID for specific events.
- View Alert Template ID
   This topic describes the systematic instruction to view, modify, or authorize alert template ID

### 2.5.5.1 Create Alert Template ID

This topic describes the systematic instruction to create template ID for specific events.

 On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Maintenance. Under Maintenance, click Alerts. Under Alerts, click Alert Template ID. Under Alert Template ID, click Create Alert Template ID.

The Create Alert Template ID screen displays.

Figure 2-43 Create Alert Template ID



2. Specify the fields on Create Alert Template ID screen.





Table 2-32 Create Alert Template ID - Field Description

Field	Description
Alert Template ID	Specify a unique ID for the template.
Alert Template Description	Specify the description of the template.
Alert Category	Select the category of the alert. The available options are:  • Finance  • Limits
Event	Select the event to set the alerts. The list of events are displayed based on the selected category.  If the Category is selected as Accounts, the following events are displayed in the drop-down list:  Account Creation  Account Modification  Account Closure
	If the Category is selected as Transactions, the following events are displayed in the drop-down list:  Credit Transaction  Debit Transaction

3. Click **Save** to save the record and send it for authorization.

### 2.5.5.2 View Alert Template ID

This topic describes the systematic instruction to view, modify, or authorize alert template ID.

A tile is present for each record that has been created. The bottom portion of each record-tile displays the following:

- The status, whether Authorized, Unauthorized, or Rejected.
- Open or Closed.
- The number of times the record has been submitted by the Maker added.
- On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Maintenance. Under Maintenance, click Alerts. Under Alerts, click Alert Template ID. Under Alert Template ID, click View Alert Template ID.

The View Alert Template ID screen displays.



Figure 2-44 View Alert Template ID



- 2. Filter the records in the View screen:
  - **a.** Click **Search** icon to view the filters. The user can filter the records by Corporate, Authorization Status, Record Status and Category.
  - **b.** Select the required filter criteria and click **Search** to filter the records.
  - c. Click **Reset** to reset the filter criteria.
- 3. Click **Refresh** icon to refresh the records.
- 4. Click **Options** icon and then select any of the following options:
  - unlock To modify the record details. Refer to the Create screen for the field level details.
    - Click Audit to view the maker details, checker details of the record.
    - Click Show History hyperlink to view the historical data of the record.
  - **b. Authorize** To authorize or reject the record. Authorizing/Rejecting requires necessary access rights.
    - Optional: Click View to view the record details.
    - If there are more than one modification, Click **Compare** to view the comparison through the field values of old record and the current record.
    - Select the record and click Approve to approve the record.
    - Select the record and click Reject to reject the record. Specify the relevant comments in the pop-up window that appears, and click Confirm.
  - c. **Delete/Close** To remove the record.
    - Optional: In the confirmation pop-up window, click View to view the record details.
    - Click Proceed to delete the record.
  - **d. Copy** To copy the record parameters for creating a new record.
  - e. View To view the record details.
  - **f. Reopen** To reopen the closed record.



# 2.6 Charges Maintenance

This topic describes the information to maintain the charges in Supply Chain system.

Banks are empowered to configure flexible and preferential pricing as per corporate profile and assessment. The levying of the charges can be triggered by specific events such as auto-debit, EOD and so on. Once configured, the charges would get levied for manual as well as auto processing mode for transactions.

Charge pricing is determined by configuring various pricing methods such as fixed amount, fixed percentage, slab based pricing, tier based pricing and so on. The frequency of calculation and collection, such as, daily/weekly/monthly/yearly, can also be defined for a charge. Both standard and discount type of charge is supported.

This topic consists the following sub-topics:

#### Charge Code

This topic describes the information to setup the reference data for charge codes in Supply Chain Finance system.

#### Charge Rule Maintenance

This topic describes the information to setup the rules for charge pricing/charge calculation based on the bank's requirements. Charge rule enables user to create a template for pricing method and link the same to a product/program or corporate through other submenus like charge decisioning and preferential charge pricing

#### Charge Decisioning

This topic describes the information to map the charge rule template and charge code to a specific products, program, event etc. The party, calculation, and collection frequencies for the charge can be defined as well.

#### Charge Preferential Pricing

This topic describes the information to configure the special pricing or charge application for a specific corporate.

# 2.6.1 Charge Code

This topic describes the information to setup the reference data for charge codes in Supply Chain Finance system.

This topic consists the following sub-topics:

#### Create Charge Code

This topic describes the systematic instruction to manage the charge code for a specific charge group, charge type, and charge category.

#### View Charge Code

This topic describes the systematic instruction to view, modify, delete, or authorize charge code records that have been created.

### 2.6.1.1 Create Charge Code

This topic describes the systematic instruction to manage the charge code for a specific charge group, charge type, and charge category.

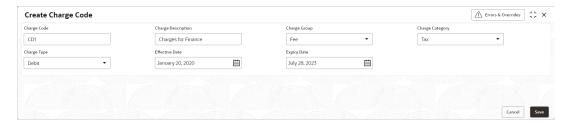
 On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Maintenance.



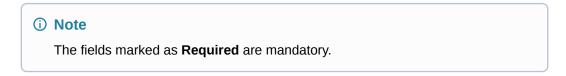
- 2. Under Maintenance, click Charges. Under Charges, click Charge Code.
- 3. Under Charge Code, click Create Charge Code.

The Create Charge Code screen displays.

Figure 2-45 Create Charge Code



Specify the fields on Create Charge Code screen.



For more information on fields, refer to the field description table.

Table 2-33 Create Charge Code - Field Description

Field	Description
Charge Code	Specify the unique charge code to be created.
Charge Description	Specify the description of the charge.
Charge Group	Select the group to which this charge code belongs. This field is purely for the purpose of maintaining information in the Management Information System (MIS).
	The available options are:
	Rebates
	• Tax
	Commission
	• Fee
Charge Category	Select the value to specify whether charge is of <b>Tax</b> or <b>Standard</b> category.
Charge Type	Specify if this charge code is of <b>Debit</b> or <b>Credit</b> type.
Effective Date	Click the Calendar icon to select the start date of the charge code validity.
Expiry Date	Click the Calendar icon to select the end date of the charge code validity.

5. Click **Save** to save the record and send it for authorization.

# 2.6.1.2 View Charge Code

This topic describes the systematic instruction to view, modify, delete, or authorize charge code records that have been created.

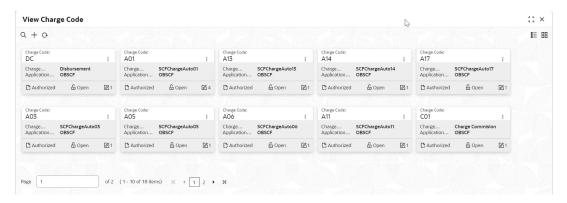
A tile is present for each record that has been created. The bottom portion of each record-tile displays the following:



- The status, whether Authorized, Unauthorized, or Rejected
- Open or Closed
- The number of times the record has been submitted by the Maker added.
- On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Maintenance.
- Under Maintenance, click Charges. Under Charges, click Charge Code. Under Charge Code, click View Charge Code.

The View Charge Code screen displays.

Figure 2-46 View Charge Code



- 3. Filter the records in the **View** screen:
  - a. Click Search icon to view the filters. The user can filter the records by Charge Code, Charge Description, Charge Group, Charge Category, Authorization Status, and Record Status.
  - b. Select the required filter criteria and click **Search** button to filter the records.
  - c. Click **Reset** to reset the filter criteria.
- Click Refresh icon to refresh the records.
- 5. Click **Options** icon and then, select any of the following options:
  - unlock To modify the record details. Refer to the Create screen for the field level details.
    - Click Audit to view the maker details, checker details of the record.
    - Click Show History hyperlink to view the historical data of the record.
  - Authorize To authorize or reject the record. Authorizing/Rejecting requires necessary access rights.
    - Optional: Click View to view the record details.
    - If there are more than one modification, Click **Compare** to view the comparison through the field values of old record and the current record.
    - Select the record and click **Approve** to approve the record.
    - Select the record and click Reject to reject the record. Specify the relevant comments in the pop-up window that appears, and click Confirm.
  - c. Delete/Close To remove the record.
    - Optional: In the confirmation pop-up window, click View to view the record details.



- Click Proceed to delete the record.
- Copy To copy the record parameters for creating a new record.
- e. View To view the record details.
- **f. Reopen** To reopen the closed record.

# 2.6.2 Charge Rule Maintenance

This topic describes the information to setup the rules for charge pricing/charge calculation based on the bank's requirements. Charge rule enables user to create a template for pricing method and link the same to a product/program or corporate through other submenus like charge decisioning and preferential charge pricing

This topic consists the following sub-topics:

Create Charge Rule Maintenance

This topic describes the systematic instruction to define rules for charge pricing/charge calculation based on the bank's requirements.

View Charge Rule

This topic describes the systematic instruction to view, modify, delete, or authorize program records that have been created.

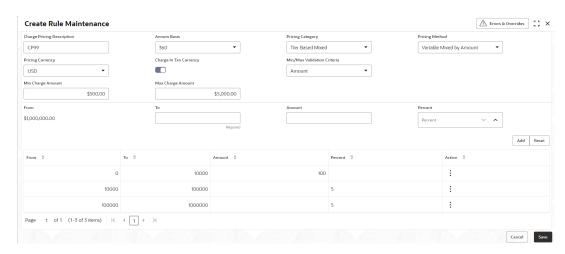
### 2.6.2.1 Create Charge Rule Maintenance

This topic describes the systematic instruction to define rules for charge pricing/charge calculation based on the bank's requirements.

- On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Maintenance.
- 2. Under Maintenance, click Charges. Under Charges, click Charge Rule Maintenance.
- 3. Under Charge Rule Maintenance, click Create Rule Maintenance.

The Create Rule Maintenance screen displays.

Figure 2-47 Create Rule Maintenance



4. Specify the fields on Create Rule Maintenance screen.





### (i) Note

The fields marked as **Required** are mandatory.

Table 2-34 Create Rule Maintenance - Field Description

Field	Description
Charge Pricing Description	Specify the pricing description of charge.
Annum Basis	Select the number of days to be considered in a year for tenor-based calculations.
Pricing Category	Select the pricing category. Based on the selected category, pricing methods will be loaded.
Pricing Method	Select the method to configure the charge pricing.
Pricing Currency	Select the currency in which pricing is to be done.
Charge in Txn Currency	Switch the toggle ON if the charge should be levied in transaction currency otherwise charge will get levied in pricing currency.
Min/Max Validation Criteria	Specify whether the charges should be applied based on the range of amount or percentage.
Min. Charge Amount/ Percent	Specify the minimum charge amount/ percentage to be considered. This field is displayed based on the value selected in the <b>Min/Max Validation Criteria</b> field.
Max. Charge Amount/ Percent	Specify the maximum charge amount/ percentage to be considered. This field is displayed based on the value selected in the <b>Min/Max Validation Criteria</b> field.
Fixed Amount	Specify the charge amount.  This field is displayed only if <b>Pricing Category</b> is selected as <b>Fixed Amount</b> .
Flat Charge	Switch the toggle ON if flat charge should be applied. This field is displayed only if <b>Pricing Category</b> is selected as <b>Fixed Percent</b> .
Fixed Percent	Specify the charge percentage. This field is displayed only if <b>Pricing Category</b> is selected as <b>Fixed Percent</b> .
From	Displays the start value of the amount/ percent/ duration range. This field is displayed only if <b>Pricing Category</b> is selected as <b>Tier Based</b> Categories.
То	Specify the end value of the amount/ percent/ duration range. This field is displayed only if <b>Pricing Category</b> is selected as <b>Tier Based</b> Categories.
Amount	Specify the charge amount. This field is displayed only if <b>Pricing Category</b> is selected as <b>Tier Based Amount</b> or <b>Tier Based Mixed</b> .
Units	Specify the number of charge unit. This field is displayed only if <b>Pricing Category</b> is selected as <b>Tier Based Amount</b> and <b>Pricing Method</b> is selected as count-based.
Percent	Specify the charge percentage. This field is displayed only if <b>Pricing Category</b> is selected as <b>Tier Based Percent</b> or <b>Tier Based Mixed</b> .



- Click Add to add the charge rule details to the grid.
  - a. Select the record in the grid and then click **Options** icon in the **Action** column.
  - **b.** Click **Edit** to edit the selected row.
  - c. Click **Delete** to delete the selected row.
- 6. Click **Reset** to reset the fields, if required.
- 7. Click **Save** to save the record and send it for authorization.

### 2.6.2.2 View Charge Rule

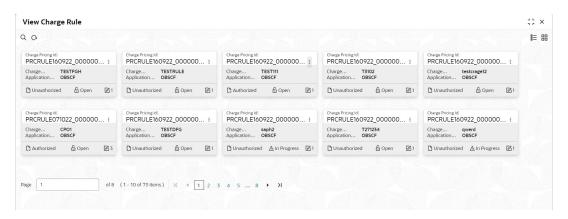
This topic describes the systematic instruction to view, modify, delete, or authorize program records that have been created.

A tile is present for each record that has been created. The bottom portion of each record-tile displays the following:

- The status, whether Authorized, Unauthorized, or Rejected
- Open or Closed
- The number of times the record has been submitted by the Maker added.
- On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Maintenance.
- 2. Under Maintenance, click Charges. Under Charges, click Charge Rule. Under Charge Rule, click View Charge Rule.

The View Charge Rule screen displays.

Figure 2-48 View Charge Rule



- Filter the records in the View screen:
  - a. Click **Search** icon to view the filters. The user can filter the records by Charge Pricing Id, Charge Description, Authorization Status, and Record Status.
  - b. Select the required filter criteria and click **Search** button to filter the records.
  - c. Click **Reset** to reset the filter criteria.
- Click Refresh icon to refresh the records.
- 5. Click **Options** icon and then, select any of the following options:
  - Unlock To modify the record details. Refer to the Create screen for the field level details.



- Click Audit to view the maker details, checker details of the record.
- Click Show History hyperlink to view the historical data of the record.
- Authorize To authorize or reject the record. Authorizing/Rejecting requires necessary access rights.
  - Optional: Click View to view the record details.
  - If there are more than one modification, Click **Compare** to view the comparison through the field values of old record and the current record.
  - Select the record and click **Approve** to approve the record.
  - Select the record and click Reject to reject the record. Specify the relevant comments in the pop-up window that appears, and click Confirm.
- c. Delete/Close To remove the record.
  - Optional: In the confirmation pop-up window, click View to view the record details.
  - Click Proceed to delete the record.
- d. Copy To copy the record parameters for creating a new record.
- e. View To view the record details.
- **f. Reopen** To reopen the closed record.

# 2.6.3 Charge Decisioning

This topic describes the information to map the charge rule template and charge code to a specific products, program, event etc. The party, calculation, and collection frequencies for the charge can be defined as well.

This topic consists the following sub-topics:

Create Charge Decisioning

This topic describes the systematic instruction to map the charge rule template and charge code to a specific products, program, event etc.

View Charge Decisioning

This topic describes the systematic instruction to view, modify, delete, or authorize charge decisioning records that have been created.

# 2.6.3.1 Create Charge Decisioning

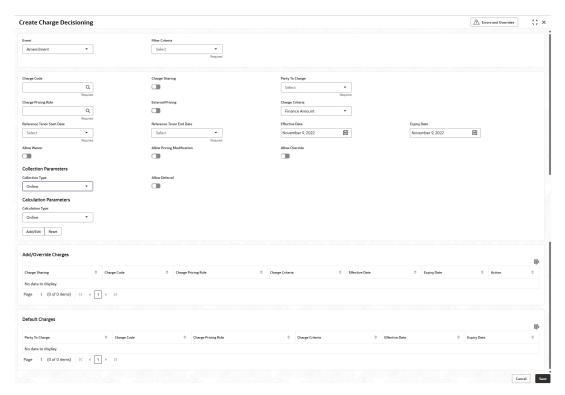
This topic describes the systematic instruction to map the charge rule template and charge code to a specific products, program, event etc.

- On Home screen, click Suppl Chain Finance. Under Suppl Chain Finance, click Maintenance.
- 2. Under Maintenance, click Charges. Under Charges, click Charge Decisioning.
- 3. Under Charge Decisioning, click Create Charge Decisioning.

The Create Charge Decisioning screen displays.



Figure 2-49 Create Charge Decisioning



4. Specify the fields on Create Charge Decisioning screen.

Note
 The fields marked as Required are mandatory.

Table 2-35 Create Charge Decisioning - Field Description

Field	Description
Event	Select the event on the occurrence of which, the charge should be applied.
	The available options are:  • Amendment
	Disbursement
	Disbursement Reversal
	• Settlement
	Settlement Reversal
Filter Criteria	Select the appropriate filter criteria on which the charge is required to be calculated and debited.
	The available options are:
	Program Instrument Type Status Based
	Instrument Type Status Based
	Program Based
	Product Based
	Default



Table 2-35 (Cont.) Create Charge Decisioning - Field Description

Field	Description
Program	Click the Search icon to select the program for which the charge is to be mapped.
	This field appears only if the <b>Filter Criteria</b> is selected as <b>Program Based</b> .
Instrument Type	Select the instrument type for which the charge is to be mapped.  The available options are: PO Invoice Cheque Debit Note This field appears only if the Filter Criteria is selected as
Instrument Status	Instrument Type.  Select the relevant status of the instrument based on which the charge would get levied. Different charges and pricing can be configured for combination of instruments and their status.
	This field appears only if the <b>Filter Criteria</b> is selected as <b>Instrument Type</b> .
Product	Select the product for which the charge is to be mapped.  This field appears only if the <b>Filter Criteria</b> is selected as <b>Product Based</b> .
Inherit Charges	Specify if default charges should be inherited as set up for default filter criteria or should be overridden as well.  The available options are:  Inherit Default Charges  Inherit Default Charges and Override
Charge Code	Click the Search icon to select the charge code for which the decisioning is to be configured.
Charge Sharing	Switch the toggle ON if charge sharing is applicable.
Sharing Percentage Allocation	Click the link to specify the sharing percentage for each party. Refer <a href="Sharing Percentage Allocation">Sharing Percentage Allocation</a> . This link is displayed only if the <b>Charge Sharing</b> toggle is enabled.
Party To Charge	Select the party to be charged.  The available options are:  Buyer  Export Factor  Import Factor  Insurance Party  Supplier  This field appears only if the Charge Sharing toggle is disabled.
Charge Pricing Rule	Click the Search icon to select the charge pricing rule to be applied.
External Pricing	Switch the toggle ON to allow the user to configure the external pricing.  By default, this toggle will be OFF.



Table 2-35 (Cont.) Create Charge Decisioning - Field Description

Field	Description
Charge Criteria	Select the criteria to be considered based on which the charge should be calculated.
	The available options are: Finance Amount
	Invoice Amount
	Parent Charge Code
External Pricing System	Select the external pricing system from the drop-down list for which the external charges needs to be configured.
	This field appears only if the <b>External Pricing</b> toggle is ON.
External Pricing Identifier	Specify the unique identifier for the external pricing system.  This field appears only if the <b>External Pricing</b> toggle is ON.
External Pricing Identifier	Specify the brief description about the external pricing identifier.
Description	This field appears only if the <b>External Pricing</b> toggle is ON.
Reference Tenor Start Date	Specify which date should be considered to calculate the start of charge tenor duration.
	The available options are:  Business Date
	Finance Maturity Date
Reference Tenor End Date	Specify which date should be considered to calculate the end of
Reference fellor Lift Date	charge tenor duration.
	The available options are:
	Business Date
	Finance Maturity Date
Effective Date	Click the Calendar icon to select the start date of the charge decisioning validity.
Expiry Date	Click the Calendar icon to select the end date of the charge decisioning validity.
Auto Waive	Switch the toggle ON to enable automatic charge waiving at the time of transaction processing.
Allow Waiver	Switch the toggle ON to enable manual charge waiving at the time of transaction processing. If the <b>Auto Waive</b> toggle is switched ON, then this toggle is switched OFF and disabled by default.
Allow Pricing Modification	Switch the toggle ON to allow pricing rule modification at the time of transaction processing. If the <b>Auto Waive</b> toggle is switched ON, then this toggle is switched OFF and disabled by default.
Allow Override	Switch the toggle ON to enable overriding of charge amount at the time of transaction processing. If the <b>Auto Waive</b> toggle is switched ON, then this toggle is switched OFF and disabled by default
Collection Parameters	Displays the fields related to Collection Parameters under this section.
Collection Type	User can determines how values related to the charge are collected or managed. Select how the charge should be collected.
	The available options are: Periodic
	• Deferred
	Online     Note: The Deferred entire is displayed only when Charge Criteria
	Note: The Deferred option is displayed only when Charge Criteria is selected as Finance Amount or Invoice Amount.



Table 2-35 (Cont.) Create Charge Decisioning - Field Description

Field	Description
Allow Defer	Switch the toggle On to postpone the chosen charge during the transaction.
Collection Event	Click the drop-down list and select the collection event. The options available are:  • Settlement This field is displayed only if the Collection Type is selected as Deferred or when Allow Defer toggle is switched ON.
Frequency	Select the frequency of charge collection.  The available options are:  Daily  Weekly  Monthly  Half Yearly  This field is displayed only if the Collection Type is selected as Periodic.
Reference Period	Select when the collection should take place for the selected frequency.  For monthly or half-yearly frequency, the collection can take place either at the beginning of the period (BOP) or end of the period (EOP).  For weekly frequency, the collection can happen on a specific day of the week.  This field is displayed only if the Collection Type is selected as Periodic.
Units	Specify whether the charge collection should take place as per units of specified frequency. If the monthly frequency is specified and the number of units is 2, then the charge would be collected once in two months.  This field is displayed only if the <b>Collection Type</b> is selected as <b>Periodic</b> .
Calculation Parameters	Displays the fields related to Calculation Parameters under this section.
Calculation Type	Specifies the method or approach for calculating the charge. Select how the charge should be calculated.  The available options are:  Periodic Online
Frequency	Select the frequency of charge calculation. The available options are:     Daily     Weekly     Monthly     Half Yearly This field is displayed only if the Calculation Type is selected as Periodic.



Table 2-35 (Cont.) Create Charge Decisioning - Field Description

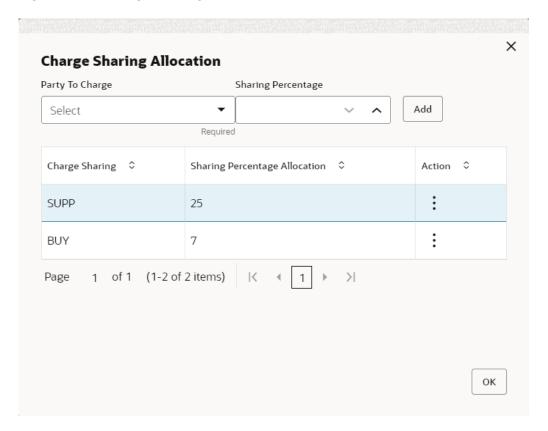
Field	Description
Reference Period	Select when the calculation should take place for the selected frequency.
	For monthly or half-yearly frequency, the calculation can take place either at the beginning of the period (BOP) or end of the period (EOP).
	For weekly frequency, the calculation can happen on a specific day of the week.
	This field is displayed only if the <b>Calculation Type</b> is selected as <b>Periodic</b> .
Units	Specify whether the charge calculation should take place as per units of specified frequency. If the monthly frequency is specified and the number of units is 2, then the charge would be calculated once in two months.
	This field is displayed only if the <b>Calculation Type</b> is selected as <b>Periodic</b> .
Add/Override Charges	Displays the details of new charges added in this grid. Further modifications made to default charges will not automatically apply if override charges is selected.
Default Charges	Displays the default charges configured for the selected event in this grid, if the <b>Inherit Charges</b> is selected as <b>Inherit Default Charges</b> . These charges cannot be modified.

**5.** Click **Sharing Percentage Allocation** link to specify the sharing percentage for each party.

The **Charge Sharing Allocation** pop-up screen displays.



Figure 2-50 Charge Sharing Allocation



- a. From the Party to Charge list, select the party to be charged.
- **b.** In the **Sharing Percentage**, specify the percentage to be allotted to the selected party.
- c. Click Add to add the details in the grid.
- d. Repeat these steps to add more parties to be charged.

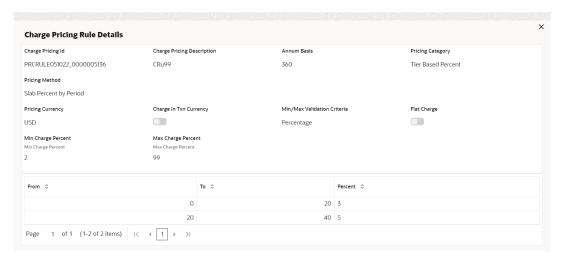


- e. If required, click **Options** icon under the **Action** column in the grid and then click **Edit** to modify details or click **Delete** to remove the record.
- f. Click **OK** to save the charge sharing details.
- 6. Click Add to add the details to the grid.
- 7. Click the hyperlink in the table grid to view the details of the pricing rule.

The Charge Pricing Rule Details screen displays.



Figure 2-51 Charge Pricing Rule Details



- 8. Perform the following steps to take action on the records in the grid:
  - a. Select the record in the grid and click **Options** icon in the **Action** column.
  - b. Click **Edit** to modify the details.
  - c. Click Delete to remove the record.
- 9. Click **Save** to save the data and send it for authorization.

## 2.6.3.2 View Charge Decisioning

This topic describes the systematic instruction to view, modify, delete, or authorize charge decisioning records that have been created.

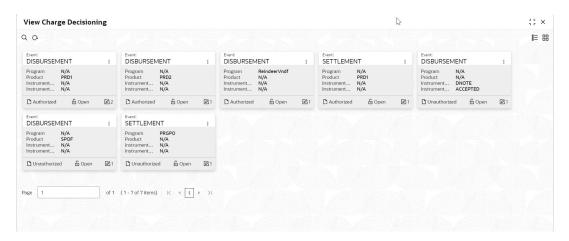
A tile is present for each record that has been created. The bottom portion of each record-tile displays the following:

- The status, whether Authorized, Unauthorized, or Rejected
- Open or Closed
- The number of times the record has been submitted by the Maker added.
- On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Maintenance.
- Under Maintenance, click Charges. Under Charges, click Charge Decisioning. Under Charge Decisioning, click View Charge Decisioning.

The View Charge Decisioning screen displays.



### Figure 2-52 View Charge Decisioning



- 3. Filter the records in the **View** screen:
  - a. Click **Search** icon to view the filters. The user can filter the records by Program, Product, Instrument Type, Instrument Status, Event, Authorization Status, and Record Status.
  - **b.** Select the required filter criteria and click **Search** button to filter the records.
  - c. Click **Reset** to reset the filter criteria.
- 4. Click **Refresh** icon to refresh the records.
- 5. Click **Options** icon and then, select any of the following options:
  - unlock To modify the record details. Refer to the Create screen for the field level details.
    - Click Audit to view the maker details, checker details of the record.
    - Click Show History hyperlink to view the historical data of the record.
  - **b. Authorize** To authorize or reject the record. Authorizing/Rejecting requires necessary access rights.
    - Optional: Click View to view the record details.
    - If there are more than one modification, Click **Compare** to view the comparison through the field values of old record and the current record.
    - Select the record and click Approve to approve the record.
    - Select the record and click **Reject** to reject the record. Specify the relevant comments in the pop-up window that appears, and click **Confirm**.
  - Delete/Close To remove the record.
    - Optional: In the confirmation pop-up window, click View to view the record details.
    - Click Proceed to delete the record.
  - **d. Copy** To copy the record parameters for creating a new record.
  - e. View To view the record details.
  - **f. Reopen** To reopen the closed record.



# 2.6.4 Charge Preferential Pricing

This topic describes the information to configure the special pricing or charge application for a specific corporate.

This topic consists the following sub-topics:

- Create Charge Preferential Pricing
  - This topic describes the systematic instruction to maintain the charges for specific products or parties.
- View Preferential Pricing

This topic describes the systematic instruction to view, modify, delete, or authorize preferential pricing records that have been created.

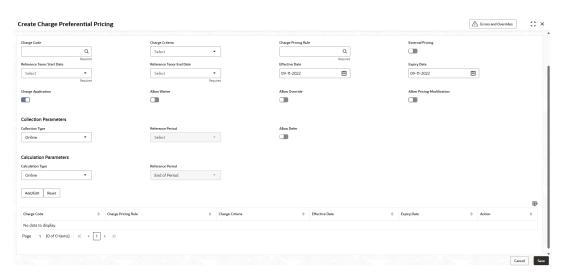
## 2.6.4.1 Create Charge Preferential Pricing

This topic describes the systematic instruction to maintain the charges for specific products or parties.

- On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Maintenance.
- 2. Under Maintenance, click Charges. Under Charges, click Charge Preferential Pricing.
- 3. Under Charge Preferential Pricing, click Create Preferential Pricing.

The Create Preferential Pricing screen displays.

Figure 2-53 Create Preferential Pricing



Specify the fields on Create Preferential Pricing screen.

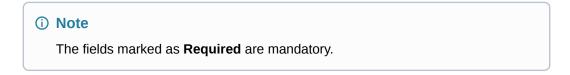




Table 2-36 Create Preferential Pricing - Field Description

Field	Description
Filter Criteria	Select the appropriate filter criteria for specific application of accounting entries.
	Based on the selected criteria, the Program, Party ID, and Customer Category fields are displayed.
Program	Click the Search icon to select the program to map the preferential pricing to.
	This field is displayed only if the <b>Filter Criteria</b> is selected as <b>Program</b> .
Party	Click the Search icon to select the party to map the preferential pricing to.
	This field is displayed only if the Filter Criteria is selected as Party.
Customer Category	Click the Search icon to select the customer category.
	This field is displayed only if the <b>Filter Criteria</b> is selected as <b>Customer Category</b> .
Charge Code	Click the Search icon to select the charge code for pricing configuration.
Charge Criteria	Select the criteria on which charge should be calculated.
	The available options are:  Finance Amount
	Invoice Amount
	Parent Charge Code
Parent Charge Code	Select the parent charge code.
	This field is displayed if the <b>Charge Criteria</b> is selected as <b>Parent Charge Code</b> .
Charge Pricing Rule	Click the Search icon to select the charge pricing rule to be applied.
External Pricing	Switch the toggle ON to allow the user to configure the external pricing.
Futamal Driaina Custom	By default, this toggle will be OFF.
External Pricing System	Select the external pricing system from the drop-down list for which the external charges needs to be configured.
	This field appears only if the <b>External Pricing</b> toggle is ON.
External Pricing Identifier	Specify the unique identifier for the external pricing system.  This field appears only if the <b>External Pricing</b> toggle is ON.
External Pricing Identifier	Specify the brief description about the external pricing identifier.
Description	This field appears only if the <b>External Pricing</b> toggle is ON.
Reference Tenor Start Date	Specify which date should be considered to calculate the start of tenor duration.
Reference Tenor End Date	Specify which date should be considered to calculate the end of tenor duration.
Effective Date	Click the Calendar icon to select the start date of the preferential charge validity.
Expiry Date	Click the Calendar icon to select the end date of the preferential charge validity.
Charge Application	Switch the toggle ON to enable charge application.
Allow Waiver	Switch the toggle ON to enable manual charge waiving at the time of transaction processing.



Table 2-36 (Cont.) Create Preferential Pricing - Field Description

Field	Description
Allow Override	Switch the toggle ON to enable overriding of the charge amount at the time of transaction processing.
Allow Pricing Modification	Switch the toggle ON to allow pricing rule modification at the time of transaction processing.
Collection Parameters	Displays the fields related to Collections Parameters.
Collection Type	User can determines how values related to the charge are collected or managed. Select how the pricing should be collected.  The available options are: Periodic Deferred Online
Reference Period	If the default Collection Type is set to Online, the reference period shows as End of Period.
Allow Defer	Switch the toggle ON to defer the selected charge during transaction.
Frequency	Select the frequency of charge collection.  The available options are:  • Daily
	<ul> <li>Weekly</li> <li>Monthly</li> <li>Half Yearly</li> <li>This field is displayed only if the Collection Type is selected as Periodic.</li> </ul>
Reference Period	Select when the collection should take place for the selected frequency.  For monthly or half-yearly frequency, the collection can take place either at the beginning of the period (BOP) or end of the period
	(EOP). For weekly frequency, the collection can happen on a specific day of the week. This field is displayed only if the <b>Collection Type</b> is selected as <b>Periodic</b> .
Units	Specify whether the charge collection should take place as per units of specified frequency.  This field is displayed only if the <b>Collection Type</b> is selected as <b>Periodic</b> .
Collection Event  Calculation Parameters	Select the collection event from the drop-down. The available options are:  • Accept  • Assignment  • Disbursement  • Paid/Recon  • Recon  • Settlement This field is displayed only if the Collection Type is selected as Deferred or when Allow Defer toggle is switched ON.  Displays the fields related to Calculation Parameters.



Table 2-36 (Cont.) Create Preferential Pricing - Field Description

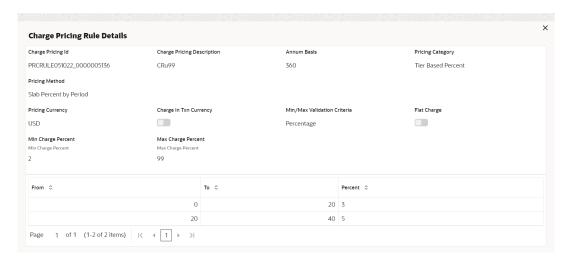
Field	Description
Calculation Type	Specifies the method or approach for calculating the charge. Select how the pricing should be calculated.
	The available options are:  Online
Reference Period	If the default <b>Collection Type</b> is set to <b>Online</b> , the reference period shows as <b>End of Period</b> .
Frequency	Select the frequency of charge calculation.
	The available options are:
	Daily     Weekly
	Monthly
	Half Yearly
	This field is displayed only if the <b>Calculation Type</b> is selected as <b>Periodic</b> .
Reference Period	Select when the calculation should take place for the selected frequency.
	For monthly or half-yearly frequency, the calculation can take place either at the beginning of the period (BOP) or end of the period (EOP).
	For weekly frequency, the calculation can happen on a specific day of the week.
	This field is displayed only if the <b>Calculation Type</b> is selected as <b>Periodic</b> .
Units	Specify whether the charge calculation should take place as per units of specified frequency.
	This field is displayed only if the <b>Calculation Type</b> is selected as <b>Periodic</b> .
Charges Grid	Displays the details of the preferential pricing added as an entry in this grid.

- 5. Click **Add** to add the details to the grid.
- 6. Click **Reset** to reset the rows in the grid.
- 7. Click the hyperlink in the table grid to view the details of the pricing rule.

The Charge Pricing Rule Details screen displays.



Figure 2-54 Charge Pricing Rule Details



- 8. Perform the following steps to take action on the records in the grid:
  - a. Select the record in the grid and click **Options** icon in the **Action** column.
  - b. Click Edit to modify the details.
  - c. Click Delete to remove the record.
- 9. Click **Save** to save the record and send it for authorization.

## 2.6.4.2 View Preferential Pricing

This topic describes the systematic instruction to view, modify, delete, or authorize preferential pricing records that have been created.

A tile is present for each record that has been created. The bottom portion of each record-tile displays the following:

- The status, whether Authorized, Unauthorized, or Rejected
- Open or Closed
- The number of times the record has been submitted by the Maker added.
- On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Maintenance.
- Under Maintenance, click Charges. Under Charges, click Charge Preferential Pricing.
   Under Charge Preferential Pricing, click View Preferential Pricing.

The View Preferential Pricing screen displays.

Figure 2-55 View Preferential Pricing





- Filter the records in the View screen:
  - Click Search icon to view the filters. The user can filter the records by Program, Party, Customer Category, Authorization Status, and Record Status.
  - b. Select the required filter criteria and click **Search** button to filter the records.
  - Click Reset to reset the filter criteria.
- 4. Click **Refresh** icon to refresh the records.
- 5. Click **Options** icon and then, select any of the following options:
  - unlock To modify the record details. Refer to the Create screen for the field level details.
    - Click Audit to view the maker details, checker details of the record.
    - · Click Show History hyperlink to view the historical data of the record.
  - Authorize To authorize or reject the record. Authorizing/Rejecting requires necessary access rights.
    - Optional: Click View to view the record details.
    - If there are more than one modification, Click Compare to view the comparison through the field values of old record and the current record.
    - Select the record and click **Approve** to approve the record.
    - Select the record and click Reject to reject the record. Specify the relevant comments in the pop-up window that appears, and click Confirm.
  - c. Delete/Close To remove the record.
    - Optional: In the confirmation pop-up window, click View to view the record details.
    - Click Proceed to delete the record.
  - d. **Copy** To copy the record parameters for creating a new record.
  - e. View To view the record details.
  - **f. Reopen** To reopen the closed record.

# 2.7 Insurance Maintenance

This topic describes the information to maintain details of the insurance company from where the banks intends to purchase insurance policies for covering the default risk of the debtor/borrower corporate.

Details of various insurance policies availed through that insurance agent can also be maintained. Individual policies can be linked to debtor/borrower party to track limit related exposure at policy level.

This topic consists the following sub-topics:

Create Insurance

This topic describes the systematic instruction to create insurance details.

View Insurance

This topic describes the systematic instruction to view, modify, delete, or authorize insurance records that have been created.

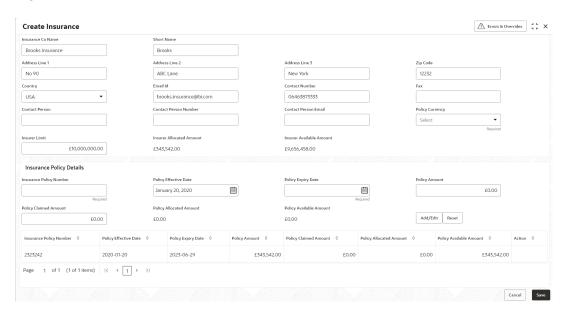


## 2.7.1 Create Insurance

This topic describes the systematic instruction to create insurance details.

- On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Maintenance.
- 2. Under Maintenance, click Insurance. Under Insurance, click Create Insurance.
  The Create Insurance screen displays.

Figure 2-56 Create Insurance



Specify the fields on Create Insurance screen.

Note
 The fields marked as Required are mandatory.

Table 2-37 Create Insurance - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Insurance Co Name	Specify the name of the insurance company.
Short Name	Specify the short name of the insurance company, if any.
Address Line 1	Specify the contact address of the insurance company.
Address Line 2	Continue specifying the contact address of the insurance company, if required.
Address Line 3	Continue specifying the contact address of the insurance company, if required.
Zip Code	Specify the valid postal code belonging to the mentioned address.
Country	Specify the country of the mentioned address.



Table 2-37 (Cont.) Create Insurance - Field Description

Field News	Bassintian
Field Name	Description
Email Id	Specify the communication e-mail address.
Contact Number	Specify the contact number of the insurance company.
Fax	Specify the fax number of the insurance company.
Contact Person	Specify the contact person's name from the insurance company.
Contact Person Number	Specify the phone number of the mentioned contact person.
Contact Person Email	Specify the e-mail address of the contact person.
Policy Currency	Select the currency in which the insurance is subscribed.
Insurer Limit	Specify the maximum insurance amount limit to be given to the insurer.
Insurer Allocated Amount	Displays the insurance amount already allocated to the insurer out of the Insurer limit.
Insurer Available Amount	Displays the available limit that can be claimed.
Insurance Policy Details	This section displays the following fields to specify the insurance policy details for creating an insurance record.
Insurance Policy Number	Specify the insurance policy number.
Policy Effective Date	Specify the policy start date as mentioned on the policy certificate.
Policy Expiry Date	Specify the policy end date as mentioned on the policy certificate.
Policy Amount	Specify the total insured amount mentioned in the policy.
Policy Claimed Amount	Specify the amount already claimed from the total policy amount, if any.
Policy Allocated Amount	Displays the amount allocated to the specific policy.
Policy Available Amount	Displays the available amount in the specific policy post the claims made.

- Click Add/Edit to add the details to the grid.
- 5. Click **Reset** to reset the rows in the grid.
- 6. Perform the following steps to take action on the records in the grid:
  - a. Click Edit to modify the details.
  - **b.** Click **Delete** to remove the record.
- 7. Click **Save** to save the record and send it for authorization.

# 2.7.2 View Insurance

This topic describes the systematic instruction to view, modify, delete, or authorize insurance records that have been created.

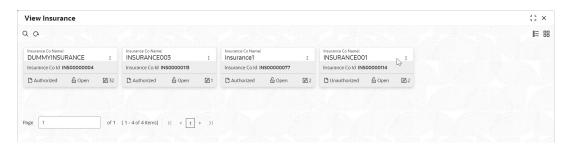
A tile is present for each record that has been created. The bottom portion of each record-tile displays the following:

- The status, whether Authorized, Unauthorized, or Rejected
- Open or Closed
- The number of times the record has been submitted by the Maker added.
- On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Maintenance.
- 2. Under Maintenance, click Insurance. Under Insurance, click View Insurance.



The View Insurance screen displays.

### Figure 2-57 View Insurance



- 3. Filter the records in the **View** screen:
  - a. Click **Search** icon to view the filters. The user can filter the records by Insurance Co Id, Insurance Co Name, Short Name, Zip Code, Authorization Status, and Record Status.
  - b. Select the required filter criteria and click **Search** button to filter the records.
  - c. Click **Reset** to reset the filter criteria.
- Click Refresh icon to refresh the records.
- 5. Click **Options** icon and then, select any of the following options:
  - unlock To modify the record details. Refer to the Create screen for the field level details.
    - Click Audit to view the maker details, checker details of the record.
    - Click Show History hyperlink to view the historical data of the record.
  - Authorize To authorize or reject the record. Authorizing/Rejecting requires necessary access rights.
    - Optional: Click View to view the record details.
    - If there are more than one modification, Click **Compare** to view the comparison through the field values of old record and the current record.
    - Select the record and click Approve to approve the record.
    - Select the record and click Reject to reject the record. Specify the relevant comments in the pop-up window that appears, and click Confirm.
  - Delete/Close To remove the record.
    - Optional: In the confirmation pop-up window, click View to view the record details.
    - Click **Proceed** to delete the record.
  - d. Copy To copy the record parameters for creating a new record.
  - e. View To view the record details.
  - **f. Reopen** To reopen the closed record.

# 2.8 Interest Maintenance

This topic describes the information to maintain the interest in Supply Chain Finance system.

Banks levies interest on the borrower party basis the parameters such as loan amount, tenor, etc. Interest pricing is determined by configuring various pricing methods such as fixed rate



type, floating rate type, interest basis, and so on. The interest payment schedule, and collection period can also be defined for the interest.

This topic consists the following sub-topics:

### Interest Pricing

This topic describes the information to configure the template for interest pricing. Once created the same can be linked to a product/program/party through Interest Decisioning.

### Interest Rate Decisioning

This topic describes the information to map the pricing rule or template to appropriate product/program/party.

# 2.8.1 Interest Pricing

This topic describes the information to configure the template for interest pricing. Once created the same can be linked to a product/program/party through Interest Decisioning.

This topic consists the following sub-topics:

#### Create Interest Pricing

This topic describes the systematic instruction to define rules for interest pricing based on the bank's requirements.

### View Interest Pricing

This topic describes the systematic instruction to view, modify, delete, or authorize interest pricing records that have been created.

## 2.8.1.1 Create Interest Pricing

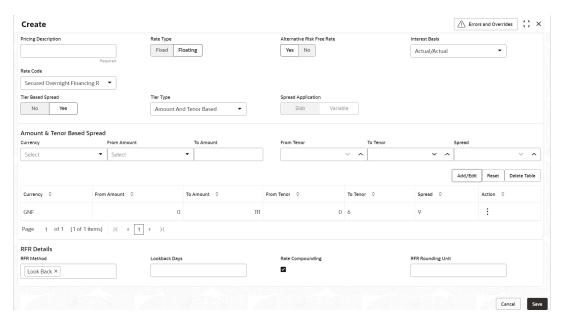
This topic describes the systematic instruction to define rules for interest pricing based on the bank's requirements.

- On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Maintenance.
- 2. Under Maintenance, click Interest. Under Interest, click Interest Pricing.
- 3. Under Interest Pricing, click Create Interest Pricing.

The Create Interest Pricing screen displays.



Figure 2-58 Create Interest Pricing



4. Specify the fields on **Create Interest Pricing** screen.

Note
 The fields marked as Required are mandatory.

Table 2-38 Create Interest Pricing - Field Description

Specify a description for the interest pricing.
Select whether the rate type is <b>Fixed</b> or <b>Floating</b> .
Select whether the fixed rate should be <b>Standard</b> or <b>User Input</b> .
This field is displayed only if the <b>Rate Type</b> is selected as <b>Fixed</b> .
Specify the interest pricing rate.
This field is displayed only if the <b>Fixed Rate Type</b> is selected as <b>User Input</b> .
Select <b>Yes</b> if the rate code needs to be risk free. Else select <b>No</b> .
This field is displayed only if the <b>Rate Type</b> is selected as <b>Floating</b> .
Select the basis for calculation of interest.
The available options are:  Actual/Actual  Actual/360  Actual/365
TUST



Table 2-38 (Cont.) Create Interest Pricing - Field Description

Field Name	Bassintian
Field Name	Description
Rate Code	Select the base rate code. Required base rates can be configured and are listed in this field.
	Some of the rate code options are:
	<ul><li>Secured Overnight Finance Rates</li><li>Swiss Average Rate Overnight</li></ul>
	Sterling Overnight Index Average
	EURO Short Term Rate
	This field is disabled if the <b>Fixed Rate Type</b> is selected as <b>User</b>
	Input.
Rate Calculation Type	Select the type of rate calculation.
	The available options are:
	• Down
	Interpolate     Round
	• Up
	This field is displayed only if the <b>Rate Type</b> is selected as <b>Floating</b> .
Rate Code Usage	Select whether the rate should be updated automatically whenever
	there is a base rate change or updated periodically.
	This field is displayed only if the <b>Rate Type</b> is selected as <b>Floating</b> .
Reset Tenor	Specify the tenor to reset the floating rate (in days).
	This field is displayed only if the <b>Rate Type</b> is selected as <b>Floating</b> .
Rate Revision Frequency	Select the frequency of updating the rate.
	The available options are:
	Daily     Weekly
	Monthly
	Half Yearly
	This field is displayed only if the <b>Rate Code Usage</b> is selected as
	Periodic.
Tier Based Spread	Select <b>Yes</b> if the spread is tier-based. Else select <b>No</b> .
Spread	Specify the spread value.
	This field is displayed only if the <b>Tier Based Spread</b> is selected as
	No.
Tier Type	Select the tier type for applying the spread.
	The available options are:  • Amount Based
	Amount and Tenor Based
	Tenor Based
	This field is displayed only if the <b>Tier Based Spread</b> is selected as
	Yes.
Spread Application	Select <b>Slab</b> to apply the spread slab-wise and <b>Variable</b> to apply it
	variable-wise.
	This field is enabled only if the <b>Tier Type</b> is selected as <b>Tenor Based</b> .
Amount/Tenor Based	This section displays the following fields to specify spread details for
Spread	the interest pricing.



Table 2-38 (Cont.) Create Interest Pricing - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Currency	Select the currency of spread.
	This field is displayed only if the <b>Tier Type</b> is selected as <b>Amount Based</b> or <b>Amount and Tenor Based</b> .
From Amount	Displays the lower limit for the amount based spread.
	This field is displayed only if the <b>Tier Type</b> is selected as <b>Amount Based</b> or <b>Amount and Tenor Based</b> .
To Amount	Specify the upper limit for the amount based spread.
	This field is displayed only if the <b>Tier Type</b> is selected as <b>Amount Based</b> or <b>Amount and Tenor Based</b> .
From Tenor	Displays the lower limit for the tenor based spread.
	This field is displayed only if the <b>Tier Type</b> is selected as <b>Amount</b> and <b>Tenor Based</b> or <b>Tenor Based</b> .
To Tenor	Specify the upper limit for the tenor based spread.
	This field is displayed only if the <b>Tier Type</b> is selected as <b>Amount</b> and <b>Tenor Based</b> or <b>Tenor Based</b> .
Spread	Specify the spread value for amount or tenor.
	This field is displayed only if the <b>Tier Based Spread</b> is selected as <b>Yes</b> .
RFR Details	This section appears only if <b>Alternative Risk Free Rate</b> is selected as <b>Yes</b> .
RFR Method	Select the applicable risk free rate method.
	Index Value
	Interest Rollover
	Last Recent     Last Reset
	Lockout
	Look Back
	• Plain
	You can select <b>Look Back</b> and <b>Lock Out</b> together. Remaining methods can be selected standalone only.
Lockout Days	Specify the applicable lockout days.
Look Back Days	Specify the applicable look back days.
Rate Compounding	Select the checkbox if the rate has to be compounded.
RFR Rounding Unit	Specify the risk free rate rounding unit as agreed with the borrower.
	This field is displayed only if <b>Rate Compounding</b> checkbox is selected.

- 5. If Alternative Risk Free Rate field is set to Yes, then RFR Details section gets displayed.
  - a. Click the RFR Method field to select the applicable risk free rate method.
  - **b.** If **Lockout** or **Look Back** methods are selected, specify the values accordingly in the respective fields.
  - **c.** Click the **Rate Compounding** checkbox to specify the risk free rate rounding value, if applicable.
- 6. If the Tier Based Spread field is set to Yes, then select the required Tier Type list.
  - a. Based on the **Tier Type** selected, specify the tier and spread details.



- Click Add/Edit to add the spread details to the grid.
- c. Repeat the steps to add more tiers, if required.
- d. Click **Reset** to clear the entered values.
- e. Select the record in the grid and then click **Options** icon in the **Action** column.
- Click Edit to edit the selected row.
- q. Click **Delete** to delete the selected row.
- 7. Click **Save** to save the record and send it for authorization.

## 2.8.1.2 View Interest Pricing

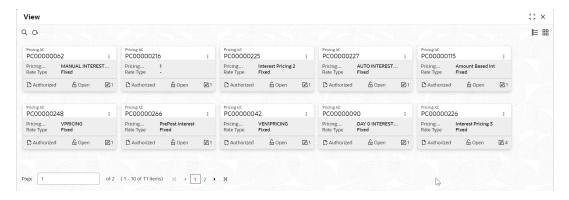
This topic describes the systematic instruction to view, modify, delete, or authorize interest pricing records that have been created.

A tile is present for each record that has been created. The bottom portion of each record-tile displays the following:

- The status, whether Authorized, Unauthorized, or Rejected
- Open or Closed
- The number of times the record has been submitted by the Maker added.
- On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Maintenance.
- Under Maintenance, click Interest. Under Interest, click Interest Pricing. Under Interest Pricing, click View Interest Pricing.

The View Interest Pricing screen displays.

Figure 2-59 View Interest Pricing



- 3. Filter the records in the View screen:
  - a. Click **Search** icon to view the filters. The user can filter the records by Pricing Id, Pricing Description, Rate Type, Authorization Status, and Record Status.
  - **b.** Select the required filter criteria and click **Search** button to filter the records.
  - c. Click **Reset** to reset the filter criteria.
- Click Refresh icon to refresh the records.
- 5. Click **Options** icon and then, select any of the following options:
  - Unlock To modify the record details. Refer to the Create screen for the field level details.



- Click Audit to view the maker details, checker details of the record.
- Click Show History hyperlink to view the historical data of the record.
- Authorize To authorize or reject the record. Authorizing/Rejecting requires necessary access rights.
  - Optional: Click View to view the record details.
  - If there are more than one modification, Click **Compare** to view the comparison through the field values of old record and the current record.
  - Select the record and click **Approve** to approve the record.
  - Select the record and click Reject to reject the record. Specify the relevant comments in the pop-up window that appears, and click Confirm.
- c. **Delete/Close** To remove the record.
  - Optional: In the confirmation pop-up window, click View to view the record details.
  - Click Proceed to delete the record.
- d. Copy To copy the record parameters for creating a new record.
- e. View To view the record details.
- **f. Reopen** To reopen the closed record.

# 2.8.2 Interest Rate Decisioning

This topic describes the information to map the pricing rule or template to appropriate product/program/party.

This topic consists the following sub-topics:

- Create Interest Rate Decisioning
  - This topic provides the systematic instructions to map the interest pricing rule or template to appropriate product/program/party.
- View Interest Rate Decisioning

This topic describes the systematic instruction to view, modify, delete, or authorize interest rate decisioning records that have been created.

# 2.8.2.1 Create Interest Rate Decisioning

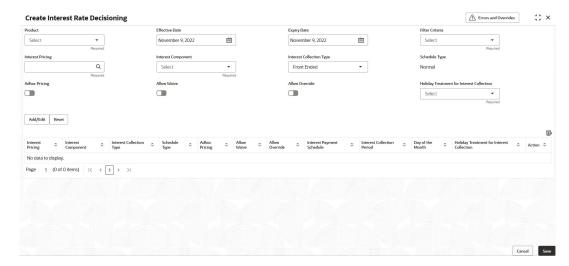
This topic provides the systematic instructions to map the interest pricing rule or template to appropriate product/program/party.

- On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Maintenance.
- 2. Under Maintenance, click Interest. Under Interest, click Interest Rate Decisioning.
- Under Interest Rate Decisioning, click Create Interest Rate Decisioning.

The **Create Interest Rate Decisioning** screen displays.



Figure 2-60 Create Interest Rate Decisioning



4. Specify the fields on **Create Interest Rate Decisioning** screen.



Table 2-39 Create Interest Rate Decisioning - Field Description

et dans	Provide to
Field Name	Description
Product	Select the product to create the rate decisioning for.
Effective Date	Click the Calendar icon to select the date from when the rate decisioning is effective.
Expiry Date	Click the Calendar icon to select the date when the rate decisioning expires.
Filter Criteria	Select the appropriate filter criteria for the rate decisioning.
	The available options are:  Program Party Based  Party Based  Program Based  Program Customer Category Based  Customer Category Based  Default
Program	Click the Search icon to select the program for which the interest rate is to be mapped.
	This field appears only if the <b>Filter Criteria</b> is selected as <b>Program Based</b> .
Party	Click the Search icon to select the party for which the interest rate is to be mapped.
	This field appears only if the <b>Filter Criteria</b> is selected as <b>Party Based</b> .



Table 2-39 (Cont.) Create Interest Rate Decisioning - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Customer Category	Click the Search icon to select the customer category for which the
	interest rate is to be mapped.
	This field appears only if the <b>Filter Criteria</b> is selected as <b>Customer Category Based</b> .
Interest Pricing	Click the Search icon to select the interest pricing to be applied for the rate decisioning.
Interest Component	Select the interest component.
	The available options are:  Interest
	Penalty on Principal
	Penalty on Interest
	This field is defaulted to <b>Interest</b> if the <b>Interest Pricing</b> selected is defined as a risk free rate, and the <b>RFR Method</b> is selected as <b>Lockout</b> or <b>Interest Rollover</b> .
Interest Collection Type	Select whether the interest collection type is <b>Front Ended</b> or <b>Rear Ended</b> .
	This field is defaulted to the Rear Ended if the Interest     Component is selected as Penalty on Principal or Penalty on Interest.
	This field is defaulted to Rear Ended if the Interest Pricing selected is defined as a risk free rate, and the RFR Method is selected as Look Back, Lockout, Interest Rollover or Plain.
Schedule Type	Select whether the interest rate scheduling type is <b>Compounding</b> or <b>Normal</b> .
	This field is defaulted to <b>Normal</b> if the <b>Interest Collection Type</b> is selected as <b>Front Ended</b> and the <b>Interest Component</b> is selected as <b>Interest</b> .
Spread/Margin Computation Method	Select whether the spread/margin computation method is Compounding or Normal.
	This field is displayed only if the <b>Interest Pricing</b> selected is defined as a risk free rate.
Spread Adjustment Computation Method	Select whether the spread adjustment computation method is Compounding or Normal.
	This field is displayed only if the <b>Interest Pricing</b> selected is defined as a risk free rate.
Rate Compounding	Select the rate compounding method.
Method	The available options are:  CCR (Cumulative Compounding Rate)  NCCR (Non Cumulative Compounding Rate)
	This field is displayed only if the <b>Interest Pricing</b> selected is defined as a risk free rate, and <b>Rate Compounding</b> checkbox is selected.
Adhoc Pricing	Switch the toggle ON to enable adhoc pricing if the adhoc limits are utilized during finance disbursement.
Allow Waive	Switch the toggle ON to enable to allow waiver of the component during finance settlement.
Allow Override	Switch the toggle ON to enable override of the component during finance settlement.



Table 2-39 (Cont.) Create Interest Rate Decisioning - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Interest Payment Schedule	Select whether the interest collection schedule is <b>Bullet</b> or <b>Monthly</b> .
	This field is displayed only if <b>Interest Collection Type</b> is selected as <b>Rear Ended</b> and <b>Interest Component</b> is selected as <b>Interest</b> .
Interest Collection Period	Select the time period of the month for interest collection. This is calculated from the disbursement date.
	<ul> <li>The available options are:</li> <li>End of Period - The interest will be collected on the last working day of the month.</li> <li>Beginning of Period - The interest will be collected on the 1<sup>st</sup> working day of the next month.</li> <li>Value Date - The interest will be collected on the same date as the disbursement for the subsequent months.</li> <li>This field is displayed only if Interest Payment Schedule is selected as Monthly.</li> </ul>
Holiday Treatment for Interest Collection	Select the day to consider if the interest date falls on a holiday.  The available options are:  Next Business Date  Previous Business Date

- 5. Click Add/Edit to add the details to the grid.
- **6.** Perform the following steps to take action on the records in the grid:
  - a. Select the record in the grid and then click **Options** icon in the **Action** column.
  - b. Click **Edit** to edit the selected row.
  - c. Click **Delete** to delete the selected row.
- 7. Click **Save** to save the record and send it for authorization.

# 2.8.2.2 View Interest Rate Decisioning

This topic describes the systematic instruction to view, modify, delete, or authorize interest rate decisioning records that have been created.

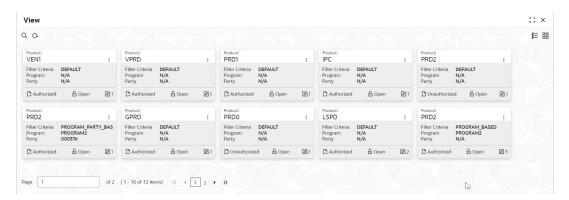
A tile is present for each record that has been created. The bottom portion of each record-tile displays the following:

- The status, whether Authorized, Unauthorized, or Rejected
- Open or Closed
- The number of times the record has been submitted by the Maker added.
- On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Maintenance.
- Under Maintenance, click Interest. Under Interest, click Interest Rate Decisioning.
   Under Interest Rate Decisioning, click View Interest Rate Decisioning.

The View Interest Rate Decisioning screen displays.



Figure 2-61 View Interest Rate Decisioning



- 3. Filter the records in the View screen:
  - a. Click Search icon to view the filters. The user can filter the records by Program, Party, Product, Customer Category, Effective Date, Expiry Date, Authorization Status, and Record Status.
  - b. Select the required filter criteria and click **Search** button to filter the records.
  - Click Reset to reset the filter criteria.
- Click Refresh icon to refresh the records.
- 5. Click **Options** icon and then, select any of the following options:
  - unlock To modify the record details. Refer to the Create screen for the field level details.
    - Click Audit to view the maker details, checker details of the record.
    - Click Show History hyperlink to view the historical data of the record.
  - Authorize To authorize or reject the record. Authorizing/Rejecting requires necessary access rights.
    - Optional: Click View to view the record details.
    - If there are more than one modification, Click Compare to view the comparison through the field values of old record and the current record.
    - Select the record and click **Approve** to approve the record.
    - Select the record and click Reject to reject the record. Specify the relevant comments in the pop-up window that appears, and click Confirm.
  - c. Delete/Close To remove the record.
    - Optional: In the confirmation pop-up window, click View to view the record details.
    - Click Proceed to delete the record.
  - **d. Copy** To copy the record parameters for creating a new record.
  - e. View To view the record details.
  - **f. Reopen** To reopen the closed record.

## 2.9 Limits Structure Maintenance

This topic describes the information to configure limit structures by mapping various limit types to appropriate entities.



Banks can configure hierarchical limit structures by mapping various limit types like finance, credit cover, recourse, and so on, to appropriate entities such as Buyer, Supplier, Import factor, and so on. Sub limits such as product, program and so on, for buyer/supplier parties can also be configured to enable bank to control the exposure at sub limit level. Each entity like buyer, supplier, product, and so on forms a node in the structure.

This topic consists the following sub-topics:

- Create Limits Structure
  - This topic describes the systematic instruction to create limit structures.
- View Limits

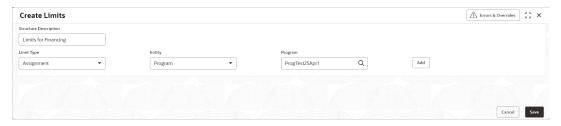
This topic describes the systematic instruction to view, modify, delete, or authorize limits records that have been created.

## 2.9.1 Create Limits Structure

This topic describes the systematic instruction to create limit structures.

- On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Maintenance.
- 2. Under Maintenance, click Limits Structure. Under Limits Structure, click Create Limits. The Create Limits screen displays.

Figure 2-62 Create Limits



3. Specify the fields on Create Limits screen.

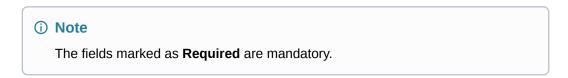


Table 2-40 Create Limits - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Structure Description	Specify the description for the limits structure being created.



Table 2-40 (Cont.) Create Limits - Field Description

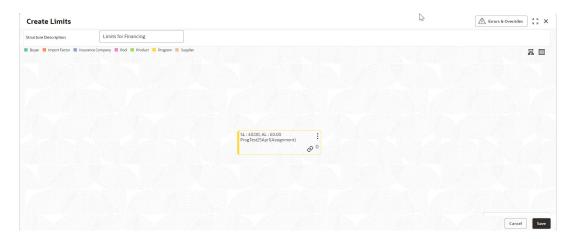
Field Name	Description
Limit Type	Select the type of limit to map with the entity. The available options are:  Advance Payment  Assignment  Concentrate  Tredit Cover  Invoice  Main  Recourse  Non-Recourse  Committed  Uncommitted
Entity	Select the entity for which limits should be set.  The available options are:  Buyer  Import Factor  Insurance Company  Pool  Product  Program  Supplier
Buyer	Click the Search icon to select the buyer for whom the limit needs to be defined.
Import Factor	Click the Search icon to select the import factor for whom the limit needs to be defined.
Insurance Company	Click the Search icon to select the insurance company for whom the limit needs to be defined.
Pool Id	Click the Search icon to select the pool id for whom the limit needs to be defined.
Pool Description	Specify the description for the pool id selected.
Product	Click the Search icon to select the product for whom the limit needs to be defined.
Program	Click the Search icon to select the program for whom the limit needs to be defined.
Supplier	Click the Search icon to select the supplier for whom the limit needs to be defined.

4. Click **Add** to add the selected entity to the structure pane.

A tile or a node for the entity is created in the structure pane.



Figure 2-63 Entity added to Structure Pane



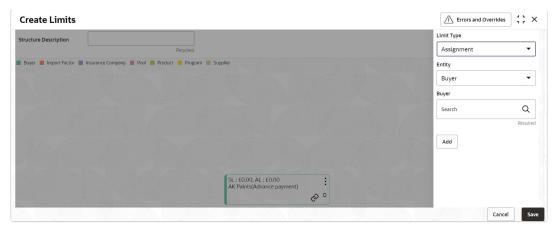
5. Click the



icon in the main node to create a child node.

An overlay window displays. Select the limit type, entity and the entity details to add a child node under the main node.

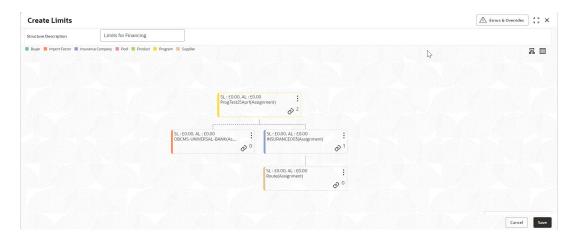
Figure 2-64 Create Limits - Child Node Overlay



6. Repeat the above step to create the entire limits structure. The number of immediate child nodes of a parent node appears in the tile of that parent node.

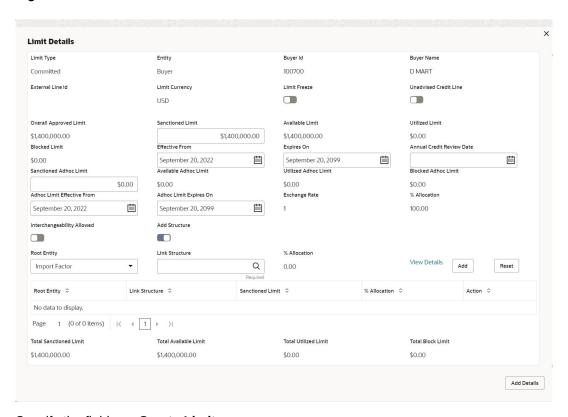


Figure 2-65 Child Node added to main entity in the Structure pane



- Click the Tree View icon to view the limits structure in a hierarchical format.
- Click the Table View icon to view the limits structure in a tabular format.
- Use the mini navigation window in the bottom right corner to pan across the limits structure.
- 7. To define the limit parameters for a particular node/entity, click Options and click Edit.
  The Limit Details screen for the selected entity node displays.

Figure 2-66 Create Limits - Limit Details



8. Specify the fields on Create Limits screen.





## (i) Note

The fields marked as **Required** are mandatory.

Table 2-41 Limit Details - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Limit Type	Displays the type of limit selected.
Entity	Displays the entity for which the limit is being defined.
Entity Id / Code	Displays the unique ID or code of the selected entity.
Entity Name	Displays the name of the selected entity.
External Line Id	Click the Search icon to select the limit line ID in case the limits are to be retrieved from an external system. The sanctioned limit is fetched from the external system and populated in <b>Sanctioned Limit</b> , which then cannot be edited.
Limit Currency	Select the currency in which the limits are to be defined.
Limit Freeze	Switch this toggle ON to stop all limit-booking transactions in which the entity is involved, with respect to the limit structure. The transactions can be finance disbursement for invoices, purchase orders, or debit notes.  Releasing of limits are however not affected by this toggle. Therefore, transactions such as settlements, continue to be processed even if
	this toggle is switched ON.
Add Policy	Switch this toggle ON to link an insurance policy to the entity.
	This toggle appears only for a <b>Buyer</b> or <b>Supplier</b> entity type, when the main node is <b>Insurance Company</b> .
Link Policy	Click the Search icon to select the required insurance policy to link.
	This field is displayed only if the <b>Add Policy</b> toggle is enabled.
Policy Allocation Amount	Specify the amount to be allocated from the policy. By default, the actual policy amount is displayed.
	This field is displayed only if the <b>Add Policy</b> toggle is enabled.
Add	Click this button to add the selected policy to the grid.
Reset	Click this button to clear the selected values in the fields.
Overall Approved Limit	Displays the overall approved limit for the selected entity.
Sanctioned Limit	Specify the limit amount to be allotted to the entity for the selected limit type.
	If an external limits system is linked, this field displays the limit value fetched from the system and the field becomes non-editable.
Available Limit	Displays the limit amount that is available to the entity.
Utilized Limit	Displays the limit amount that has been utilized.
Blocked Limit	Displays the limit amount that has been blocked or reserved for in progress transactions.
Effective From	Click the Calendar icon and select the date from when the limit is effective.
Expires On	Click the Calendar icon and select the date when the limit expires.



Table 2-41 (Cont.) Limit Details - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Adhoc Limit	Specify the adhoc amount to be allotted if the available limit falls short of the required amount for a specific transaction.
Available Adhoc Limit	Displays the adhoc limit that is available to the entity.
Utilized Adhoc Limit	Displays the adhoc limit amount that has been utilized.
Blocked Adhoc Limit	Displays the adhoc limit amount that has been blocked or reserved for in progress transactions.
Adhoc Limit Effective Date	Click the Calendar icon and select the date from when the adhoc limit is effective.
Adhoc Limit Expiry Date	Click the Calendar icon and select the date when the adhoc limit expires.
Exchange Rate	Displays the exchange rate between the parent entity's limit currency and the child entity's limit currency.
Interchangeability Allowed	Switch this toggle ON to set the sanctioned limit of each child entity to the same value as that of the parent entity.
	If this toggle is switched off, then the sum of sanctioned limits of all child entities cannot exceed (must be less than or equal) that of the parent entity.
Add Structure	Switch the toggle ON to link an existing limit structure to the entity. This linking can only be done for Buyer or Supplier entity types. This feature is used for linking the insurance or import factor limits to the buyer/supplier.
Root Entity	Select the root entity to be added.
	This field is displayed only if <b>Add Structure</b> toggle is enabled.
Link Structure	Click the Search icon to select the required structure to link.
	This field is displayed only if <b>Add Structure</b> toggle is enabled.
% Allocation	Displays the allocated limit percentage for the entity. This field displays the following value: (Sanctioned Limit + Adhoc Limit)/Total Sanctioned Limit.
	This field is displayed only if <b>Add Structure</b> toggle is enabled.
View Details	Click this hyperlink to view the details of the linked structure.
	This field is displayed only if <b>Add Structure</b> toggle is enabled.
Add	Click this button to add the limit structure to the grid.
	This field is displayed only if <b>Add Structure</b> toggle is enabled.
Reset	Click this button to clear the selected values.
	This field is displayed only if <b>Add Structure</b> toggle is enabled.
Total Sanctioned Limit	Displays the total sanctioned limit.
	This field is displayed only if <b>Add Structure</b> toggle is enabled.
Total Available Limit	Displays the total available limit.
	This field is displayed only if <b>Add Structure</b> toggle is enabled.



Table 2-41 (Cont.) Limit Details - Field Description

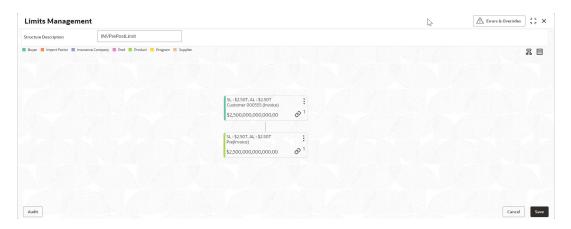
Field Name	Description
Total Utilized Limit	Displays the total utilized limit.
	This field is displayed only if <b>Add Structure</b> toggle is enabled.
Total Block Limit	Displays the total blocked limit.
	This field is displayed only if <b>Add Structure</b> toggle is enabled.
Add Earmark Limits	Switch this toggle ON to block the limits for the child node under the parent node's limit. By default, this switch is OFF.
	This toggle switch is displayed only in the <b>Create Limits</b> screen of the child nodes, if the following conditions are satisfied.  • <b>Entity</b> of the parent node is selected as <b>Supplier</b> , and the child node is selected as <b>Buyer</b> .  • <b>External Line Id</b> is selected for the parent node.
Earmark Limit	Specify the limit to be earmarked for the child node within the approved limit of the parent node.
	This field is displayed only if <b>Add Earmark Limits</b> toggle switch is enabled.
Earmark Available Limit	Displays the earmarked limit currently available.
	This field is displayed only if <b>Add Earmark Limits</b> toggle switch is enabled.
Earmark Effective From	Click the Calendar icon and select the date from when the earmarked limit is effective.
	This field is displayed only if <b>Add Earmark Limits</b> toggle switch is enabled.
Earmark Expires On	Click the Calendar icon and select the date when the earmarked limit expires.
	This field is displayed only if <b>Add Earmark Limits</b> toggle switch is enabled.
Earmark Reference No.	Displays the reference number of the earmarked limit fetched from the external system.
	This field is displayed only if <b>Add Earmark Limits</b> toggle switch is enabled.

9. Click **Add Details** to save the limit details for the entity.

The sum of the sanctioned and adhoc limits appears in the node tile.



Figure 2-67 Post Addition of Limit Details



### (i) Note

If the **Limits Freeze** toggle is enabled for a specific node, then it is displayed in the node tile.

- **10.** Perform the following steps to take action on the entity nodes.
  - Click Options in any node and click Edit to modify the limit details, if required.
  - Click Options in the main entity node and click Delete Hierarchy to delete all the nodes created.
  - Click Options in the child entity node and click Delete to delete the particular node.
- 11. Click **Save** to save the record and send it for authorization.

## 2.9.2 View Limits

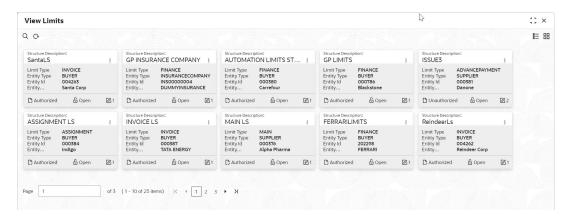
This topic describes the systematic instruction to view, modify, delete, or authorize limits records that have been created.

A tile is present for each record that has been created. The bottom portion of each record-tile displays the following:

- The status, whether Authorized, Unauthorized, or Rejected
- · Open or Closed
- The number of times the record has been submitted by the Maker added.
- On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Maintenance.
- Under Maintenance, click Limits Structure. Under Limits Structure, click View Limits.
   The View Limits screen displays.



### Figure 2-68 View Limits



- Filter the records in the View screen:
  - a. Click Search icon to view the filters. The user can filter the records by Structure Description, Limit Type, Entity Type, Entity Id, Entity Description, Record Status, and Authorization Status.
  - b. Select the required filter criteria and click **Search** button to filter the records.
  - c. Click **Reset** to reset the filter criteria.
- Click Refresh icon to refresh the records.
- 5. Click **Options** icon and then, select any of the following options:
  - Unlock To modify the record details. Refer to the Create screen for the field level details.
    - Click **Audit** to view the maker details, checker details of the record.
    - Click Show History hyperlink to view the historical data of the record.
  - Authorize To authorize or reject the record. Authorizing/Rejecting requires necessary access rights.
    - Optional: Click View to view the record details.
    - If there are more than one modification, Click Compare to view the comparison through the field values of old record and the current record.
    - Select the record and click Approve to approve the record.
    - Select the record and click Reject to reject the record. Specify the relevant comments in the pop-up window that appears, and click Confirm.
  - Delete/Close To remove the record.
    - Optional: In the confirmation pop-up window, click View to view the record details.
    - Click Proceed to delete the record.
  - d. **Copy** To copy the record parameters for creating a new record.
  - e. View To view the record details.
  - **f. Reopen** To reopen the closed record.

# **Finance Disbursement**

This topic describes the information on the disbursement initiation and processing of the disbursement task.

The Bank user can manually initiate a finance on behalf of a corporate customer, for funds required against financial instruments such as invoices, debit notes, and purchase orders. To initiate finances manually, refer to **Initiate Finance** section in **Receivables and Payables User Guide**.

This topic consists the following sub-topics:

<u>Disbursement Task</u>
 This topic describes the steps to process the disbursement record.

# 3.1 Disbursement Task

This topic describes the steps to process the disbursement record.

When a finance is manually initiated, a disbursement task is created in the system.

Manual disbursement tasks are also generated in the following cases:

- When automatic disbursement fails.
- When a borrower has overdue transactions (only if the configuration flag Allow Auto Processing for Overdue Borrowers has been disabled).
- When a borrower is delinquent (only if the configuration flag Allow Disbursements for NPA Borrowers has been enabled).
- When finance is initiated for overdue invoices and debit notes.
- When a negative or pending response is received from the invoice registry partner, if duplicate finance verification is required (if External Dedupe Verification flag is set to Yes).

## (i) Note

Only authorized users can process and authorize the disbursement tasks.

#### (i) Note

If the finance disbursements fails for invoices/purchase orders that are uploaded in bulk, then the failed transactions are in directed to a **Finance Initiation Exception** stage captured with the Reason for Failure. You can either retry or reject the transactions from Free Tasks.

The disbursement tasks are segregated into the following data segments:

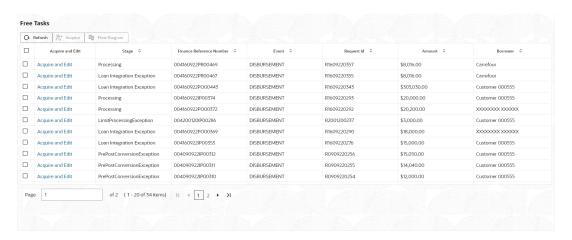
Basic Info



- Pre-Shipment Liquidation
- Party
- Limits
- Interest
- Charges
- Accounting
- Summary
- On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Tasks
- 2. Under Tasks, click Finance. Under Finance, click Free Tasks.

The **Finance - Free Tasks** screen displays.

Figure 3-1 Finance - Free Tasks



- 3. Perform any of the below action from the Free Tasks screen.
  - Click the Acquire and Edit link beside the required disbursement tasks to process.
  - Select the checkbox of the required tasks and click Acquire button above the grid to
    acquire multiple tasks. Once you acquire a task, it is moved to the My Tasks list. You
    can then navigate to My Tasks screen and click Edit link beside the required
    disbursement tasks to process.

### ① Note

The following information is displayed at the top of the disbursement tasks screen for each data segment.

- The reference number, the stage, and the operation name of the transaction acquired for processing.
- Click Remarks button to add any comments for the transaction.
- Click **Documents** button to upload any new documents or view the uploaded documents relevant to the transaction.

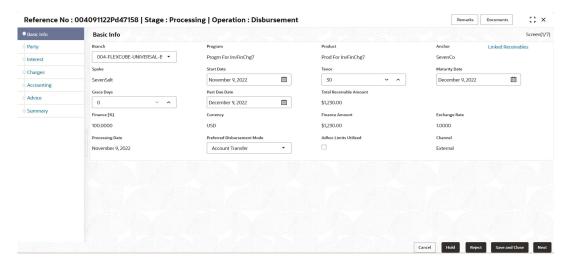
#### **Basic Info**



Click the Acquire and Edit link beside the required disbursement tasks.

The **Basic Info** screen displays.

Figure 3-2 Disbursement - Basic Info



5. Specify the fields on **Basic Info** screen.

Note
 The fields marked as Required are mandatory.

Table 3-1 Basic Info - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Branch	Select the branch where the disbursement is being processed. By default, the logged-in user's branch is displayed.
Program	Displays the name of the program that is linked to the receivables being financed.
Product	Displays the name of the product associated with the program.
Anchor	Displays the name of the anchor party in the program.
Linked Receivables/PO	Click the link to view a list of receivables (invoices/debit notes) / PO that is being financed.
Spoke	Displays the name of the counter party in the program.
Start Date	Specify the start date of the finance. By default, this field displays the current business date.
	For back-dated disbursements, the <b>Start Date</b> displays the <b>Funding Request Date</b> . The following warning appears for the back-dated disbursements, "You are initiating a Back-dated Disbursement request. Please confirm if you want to continue?". Click <b>Yes</b> to proceed.



Table 3-1 (Cont.) Basic Info - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Tenor	Specify the tenor of the finance. It should be lesser than the maximum tenor and greater than the minimum tenor as defined in product/program and spoke parameter.  The tenor of the finance gets defaulted basis start date and maturity date.
Maturity Date	Specify the maturity date of the finance. Maturity date gets calculated basis maturity date parameter selected at product level.
Grace Days	Specify the number of days, post maturity, within which the finance can be repaid without incurring penalty.
Past Due Date	Specify the new maturity date post the initial finance maturity date. By default, the date displayed is Maturity Date + Grace Days.
Total Receivable/PO Amount	Displays the total amount of the receivables/PO being financed.
Finance (%)	Applicable Finance % is displayed in this field. The Finance amount and consequently the finance percentage can be changed in the disbursement initiation stage.
Currency	Select the currency of the finance.
Finance Amount	Finance Amount finalized and captured during the initiation stage is displayed. The field displays the Finance (%) value of the Total Receivable Amount.
Exchange Rate	Displays the exchange rate between the receivable/PO amount currency and the finance currency.
Processing Date	Displays the date of processing of the disbursement.
Preferred Disbursement Mode	Select the preferred mode of finance disbursement.  The available options are:  Account Transfer  CBT - Cross Border Transfer  Cheque  EFT
Adhoc Limits Utilized	This checkbox is auto-selected if adhoc limits are being utilized in the transaction.
Skip Pre-Shipment Liquidation	Switch the toggle ON to skip the liquidation of Pre-Shipment finance from the proceeds of the post-shipment finance.  This field is displayed only if any outstanding pre-shipment finance is identified for the respective parties of the post-shipment finance.
Channel	Displays the source application from which the transaction is initiated.

- **6.** Perform any of the below actions from the **Basic Info** screen.
  - Click Next to go to the Pre-Shipment Liquidation screen.
  - Click Save and Close to save the details and complete the processing stage of the disbursement.

If the **Disbursement Auth Required** toggle is enabled for the program associated with the transaction, an approval task is created in the system.

Click Reject to purge the disbursement transaction.



- Click Hold to move the transaction to the Hold Tasks list.
- Click Cancel to cancel the transaction and return to the Free Tasks screen.

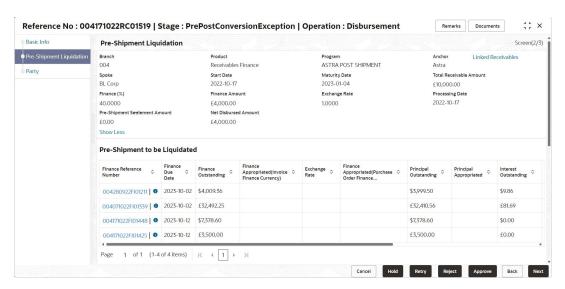
### **Pre-Shipment Liquidation**

Pre-Shipment Liquidation screen displays the details of the pre-shipment finances which will be liquidated on completion of the post-shipment disbursement. This tab is displayed only if the **Skip Pre-Shipment Liquidation** toggle is disabled and if there are any outstanding pre-shipment finances identified for the buyer-seller combination.

7. Click Next on the Basic Info tab.

The **Pre-Shipment Liquidation** screen displays.

Figure 3-3 Disbursement - Pre-Shipment Liquidation



Specify the fields on Pre-Shipment Liquidation screen.

Note
 The fields marked as Required are mandatory.

Table 3-2 Pre-Shipment Liquidation - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Branch	Displays the branch where the disbursement is being processed. By default, the logged-in user's branch is displayed.
Product	Displays the name of the product associated with the program.
Program	Displays the name of the program that is linked to the receivables being financed.
Anchor	Displays the name of the anchor party in the program.
Linked Receivables/PO	Click the link to view a list of receivables (invoices/debit notes) / PO that is being financed.
Spoke	Displays the name of the counter party in the program.



Table 3-2 (Cont.) Pre-Shipment Liquidation - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Start Date	Displays the start date of the finance. By default, it is the current business date.
Maturity Date	Displays the maturity date of the finance. Maturity date gets calculated basis maturity date parameter selected at product level.
Total Receivable/PO Amount	Displays the total amount of the receivables/PO being financed.
Finance (%)	Applicable Finance % is displayed in this field. The Finance amount and consequently the finance percentage can be changed in the disbursement initiation stage.
Finance Amount	Finance Amount finalized and captured during the initiation stage is displayed. The field displays the Finance (%) value of the Total Receivable Amount.
Exchange Rate	Displays the exchange rate between the receivable/PO amount currency and the finance currency.
Processing Date	Displays the date of processing of the disbursement.
Pre-Shipment Settlement Amount	Displays the total pre-shipment settlement amount appropriated against the relevant outstanding pre-shipment finances.
Net Disbursed Amount	Displays the disbursed amount from post-shipment finance, that is Net Disbursed Amount = Post-Shipment Finance Amount - Pre-Shipment Settlement Amount.
Pre-Shipment to be Liquidated	The list of pre-shipment finances to be liquidated are displayed in this section.
Finance Reference Number	Displays the reference number of the pre-shipment finance settled. Click the hyperlink data to view more details of the finance.
Finance Due Date	Displays the maturity date of the pre-shipment finance.
Finance Outstanding	Displays the total outstanding amount of the pre-shipment finance.
Finance Appropriated (Invoice Finance Currency)	Displays the amount appropriated against the total outstanding of the pre-shipment finance in invoice currency.
Exchange Rate	Displays the exchange rate between invoice finance currency and PO finance currency.
Finance Appropriated (Purchase Order Finance Currency)	Displays the amount appropriated against the total outstanding of the pre-shipment finance in purchase order currency.
Principal Outstanding	Displays the outstanding principal amount of the pre-shipment finance.
Principal Appropriated	Displays the amount appropriated against the outstanding principal of the pre-shipment finance.
Interest Outstanding	Displays the outstanding interest amount of the pre-shipment finance.
Interest Appropriated	Displays the amount appropriated against the outstanding interest of the pre-shipment finance.
Penalty On Interest Outstanding	Displays the outstanding penalty on interest amount of the pre- shipment finance.
Penalty On Interest Appropriated	Displays the amount appropriated against the outstanding penalty on interest of the pre-shipment finance.
Penalty On Principal Outstanding	Displays the outstanding penalty on principal amount of the preshipment finance.
Penalty On Principal Appropriated	Displays the amount appropriated against the outstanding penalty on principal of the pre-shipment finance.



- 9. Perform any of the below actions from the **Pre-Shipment Liquidation** screen.
  - Click Next to go to the Party screen.
  - Click Save and Close to save the details and complete the processing stage of the disbursement.

## Note

If the **Disbursement Auth Required** toggle is enabled for the program associated with the transaction, an approval task is created in the system.

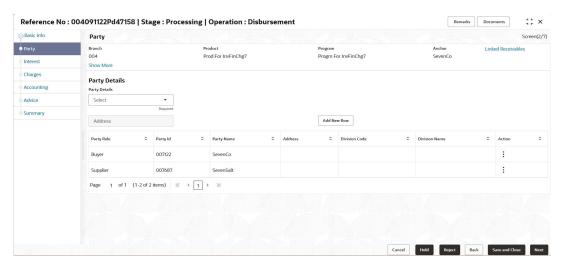
- Click Back to go to the Basic Info screen.
- Click Reject to purge the disbursement transaction.
- Click Hold to move the transaction to the Hold Tasks list.
- Click Cancel to cancel the transaction and return to the Free Tasks screen.
- The following options are displayed only if there are any errors in appropriating preshipment settlements and the transaction moves to PrePostConversionException stage.
  - Click Retry to reappropriate the pre-shipment settlement.
  - Click **Approve** to approve the transactions with the errors i.e., the transactions with errors that are skipped in the liquidation sequence.

### **Party**

10. Click Next on the Pre-Shipment Liquidation tab.

The Party screen displays.

Figure 3-4 Disbursement - Party



11. Specify the fields on Party screen.

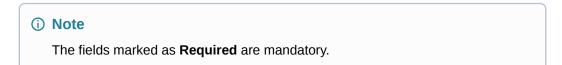




Table 3-3 Party - Field Description

default, the logged-in user's branch is displayed.  Product Displays the name of the product associated with the program.  Displays the name of the program that is linked to the receivables being financed.  Anchor Displays the name of the anchor party in the program.  Linked Receivables/PO Click the link to view a list of receivables (invoices/debit notes) / PO that is being financed.  Spoke Displays the name of the counter party in the program.  Start Date Displays the start date of the finance. By default, it is the current business date.  Maturity Date Displays the maturity date of the finance. Maturity date gets calculated basis maturity date parameter selected at product level.  Total Receivable/PO Amount Displays the total amount of the receivables/PO being financed.  Prinance (%) Applicable Finance % is displayed in this field. The Finance amount and consequently the finance percentage can be changed in the disbursement initiation stage.  Finance Amount Finance Amount finalized and captured during the initiation stage is displayed. The field displays the Finance (%) value of the Total Receivable Amount.  Exchange Rate Displays the exchange rate between the receivable/PO amount currency and the finance currency.  Processing Date Displays the date of processing of the disbursement.  Displays the date of processing of the disbursement.  Displays the total pre-shipment settlement amount appropriated against the relevant outstanding pre-shipment finance i.e., Net Disbursed Amount Displays the disbursed amount from post-shipment finance i.e., Net Disbursed Amount Post-Shipment Finance Amount Pre-Shipment Settlement Amount.  This field is displayed only if Pre-Shipment Liquidation is applicable.  Parties with specific roles in the program can be added in this section.  Party Details Select the party role to be added.  The available options are:  Buyer  Supplier  Import Factor  Export Factor  Insurance  Beneficiary/Counter Party  Division Click the Search icon to select the division code of the party.  Dick the		
default, the logged-in user's branch is displayed.  Product Displays the name of the product associated with the program.  Displays the name of the program that is linked to the receivables being financed.  Anchor Displays the name of the anchor party in the program.  Linked Receivables/PO Click the link to view a list of receivables (invoices/debit notes) / PO that is being financed.  Spoke Displays the name of the counter party in the program.  Start Date Displays the start date of the finance. By default, it is the current business date.  Maturity Date Displays the maturity date of the finance. Maturity date gets calculated basis maturity date parameter selected at product level.  Total Receivable/PO Amount Displays the total amount of the receivables/PO being financed.  Prinance (%) Applicable Finance % is displayed in this field. The Finance amount and consequently the finance percentage can be changed in the disbursement initiation stage.  Finance Amount Finance Amount finalized and captured during the initiation stage is displayed. The field displays the Finance (%) value of the Total Receivable Amount.  Exchange Rate Displays the exchange rate between the receivable/PO amount currency and the finance currency.  Processing Date Displays the date of processing of the disbursement.  Displays the date of processing of the disbursement.  Displays the total pre-shipment settlement amount appropriated against the relevant outstanding pre-shipment finance i.e., Net Disbursed Amount Displays the disbursed amount from post-shipment finance i.e., Net Disbursed Amount Post-Shipment Finance Amount Pre-Shipment Settlement Amount.  This field is displayed only if Pre-Shipment Liquidation is applicable.  Parties with specific roles in the program can be added in this section.  Party Details Select the party role to be added.  The available options are:  Buyer  Supplier  Import Factor  Export Factor  Insurance  Beneficiary/Counter Party  Division Click the Search icon to select the division code of the party.  Dick the	Field Name	Description
Displays the name of the program that is linked to the receivables being financed.   Displays the name of the anchor party in the program.   Click the link to view a list of receivables (invoices/debit notes) / PO that is being financed.   Spoke	Branch	Displays the branch where the disbursement is being processed. By default, the logged-in user's branch is displayed.
being financed.  Displays the name of the anchor party in the program.  Click the link to view a list of receivables (invoices/debit notes) / PO that is being financed.  Spoke Displays the name of the counter party in the program.  Start Date Displays the start date of the finance. By default, it is the current business date.  Maturity Date Displays the maturity date of the finance. Maturity date gets calculated basis maturity date parameter selected at product level.  Total Receivable/PO Amount Amount Finance (%) Applicable Finance % is displayed in this field. The Finance amount and consequently the finance percentage can be changed in the disbursement initiation stage.  Finance Amount Finance Amount finalized and captured during the initiation stage is displayed. The field displays the Finance (%) value of the Total Receivable Amount.  Exchange Rate Displays the exchange rate between the receivable/PO amount currency and the finance currency.  Processing Date Pre-Shipment Settlement Amount Displays the total pre-shipment settlement amount appropriated against the relevant outstanding pre-shipment Liquidation is applicable.  Net Disbursed Amount Displays the disbursed amount from post-shipment finance i.e., Net Disbursed Amount — Pre-Shipment Liquidation is applicable.  Party Details Parties with specific roles in the program can be added in this section.  Party Details Parties with specific roles in the program can be added in this section.  Party Details Parties with specific roles in the program can be added in this section.  Party Details Parties with specific roles in the program can be added in this section.  Party Details Parties with specific roles in the program can be added in this section.  Party Details Parties with specific roles in the program can be added in this section.  Party Details Parties with specific roles in the program can be added in this section.  Party Details Parties with specific roles in the program can be added in this section.  Party Details Party Details Party Click the Searc	Product	Displays the name of the product associated with the program.
Linked Receivables/PO Click the link to view a list of receivables (invoices/debit notes) / PO that is being financed.  Spoke Displays the name of the counter party in the program. Displays the start date of the finance. By default, it is the current business date.  Maturity Date Displays the maturity date of the finance. Maturity date gets calculated basis maturity date parameter selected at product level.  Total Receivable/PO Amount Finance (%) Applicable Finance % is displayed in this field. The Finance amount and consequently the finance percentage can be changed in the disbursement initiation stage.  Finance Amount Finance Amount finalized and captured during the initiation stage is displayed. The field displays the Finance (%) value of the Total Receivable Amount.  Exchange Rate Displays the exchange rate between the receivable/PO amount currency and the finance currency.  Processing Date Pre-Shipment Settlement Amount Displays the date of processing of the disbursement.  Displays the total pre-shipment settlement amount appropriated against the relevant outstanding pre-shipment Liquidation is applicable.  Net Disbursed Amount Displays the disbursed amount from post-shipment finance i.e., Net Disbursed Amount = Post-Shipment Finance Amount = Pre-Shipment Amount = Post-Shipment Liquidation is applicable.  Party Details Parties with specific roles in the program can be added in this section.  Party Details Select the party role to be added. The available options are: Buyer Supplier Import Factor Imp	Program	
Spoke Displays the name of the counter party in the program.  Start Date Displays the name of the finance. By default, it is the current business date.  Maturity Date Displays the maturity date of the finance. Maturity date gets calculated basis maturity date parameter selected at product level.  Total Receivable/PO Amount Displays the total amount of the receivables/PO being financed.  Applicable Finance % is displayed in this field. The Finance amount and consequently the finance percentage can be changed in the disbursement initiation stage.  Finance Amount Finance Amount finalized and captured during the initiation stage is displayed. The field displays the Finance (%) value of the Total Receivable Amount.  Exchange Rate Displays the exchange rate between the receivable/PO amount currency and the finance currency.  Processing Date Displays the date of processing of the disbursement.  Pre-Shipment Settlement Amount Displays the total pre-shipment settlement amount appropriated against the relevant outstanding pre-shipment finances. This field is displayed only if Pre-Shipment Liquidation is applicable.  Net Disbursed Amount Displays the disbursed amount from post-shipment finance i.e., Net Disbursed Amount.  This field is displayed only if Pre-Shipment Liquidation is applicable.  Party Details Parties with specific roles in the program can be added in this section.  Party Details Select the party role to be added.  The available options are:  Buyer  Supplier  Import Factor  Export Factor  Import Factor  Export Factor  Insurance  Beneficiary/Counter Party  Search Party Click the Search icon to select the party.  Division Click the Search icon to select the division code of the party.	Anchor	Displays the name of the anchor party in the program.
Displays the start date of the finance. By default, it is the current business date.	Linked Receivables/PO	` '
Displays the maturity date of the finance. Maturity date gets calculated basis maturity date parameter selected at product level.   Total Receivable/PO	Spoke	Displays the name of the counter party in the program.
calculated basis maturity date parameter selected at product level.  Total Receivable/PO Amount  Displays the total amount of the receivables/PO being financed.  Applicable Finance % is displayed in this field. The Finance amount and consequently the finance percentage can be changed in the disbursement initiation stage.  Finance Amount finalized and captured during the initiation stage is displayed. The field displays the Finance (%) value of the Total Receivable Amount.  Exchange Rate  Displays the exchange rate between the receivable/PO amount currency and the finance currency.  Processing Date  Displays the date of processing of the disbursement.  Displays the total pre-shipment settlement amount appropriated against the relevant outstanding pre-shipment finances.  This field is displayed only if Pre-Shipment Liquidation is applicable.  Net Disbursed Amount  Displays the disbursed amount from post-shipment finance i.e., Net Disbursed Amount = Post-Shipment Finance Amount - Pre-Shipmen Settlement Amount.  This field is displayed only if Pre-Shipment Liquidation is applicable.  Party Details  Parties with specific roles in the program can be added in this section.  Party Details  Parties with specific roles in the program can be added in this section.  Party Details  Parties with specific roles in the program can be added in this section.  Party Details  Parties with specific roles in the program can be added in this section.  Party Details  Parties with specific roles in the program can be added in this section.  Party Details  Parties with specific roles in the program can be added in this section.  Party Details  Parties with specific roles in the program can be added in this section.  Party Details  Parties with specific roles to be added.  The available options are:  Buyer  Supplier  Import Factor  Import Factor  Import Factor  Import Factor  Import Factor  Import Factor  Export Factor  Insurance  Beneficiary/Counter Party  Division  Click the Search icon to select the division code of the party.	Start Date	
Amount Finance (%) Applicable Finance % is displayed in this field. The Finance amount and consequently the finance percentage can be changed in the disbursement initiation stage. Finance Amount Finance Amount finalized and captured during the initiation stage is displayed. The field displays the Finance (%) value of the Total Receivable Amount.  Exchange Rate Displays the exchange rate between the receivable/PO amount currency and the finance currency.  Processing Date Displays the date of processing of the disbursement.  Pre-Shipment Settlement Amount Amount Displays the total pre-shipment settlement amount appropriated against the relevant outstanding pre-shipment finances. This field is displayed only if Pre-Shipment Liquidation is applicable.  Net Disbursed Amount Displays the disbursed amount from post-shipment finance i.e., Net Disbursed Amount = Post-Shipment Finance Amount – Pre-Shipment Settlement Amount. This field is displayed only if Pre-Shipment Liquidation is applicable.  Party Details Party Details Select the party role to be added. The available options are: Buyer Supplier Import Factor Import Factor Import Factor Insurance Beneficiary/Counter Party  Search Party Click the Search icon to select the party.  Click the Search icon to select the division code of the party.  Address Specify the address of the selected party.	Maturity Date	
and consequently the finance percentage can be changed in the disbursement initiation stage.  Finance Amount Finance Amount finalized and captured during the initiation stage is displayed. The field displays the Finance (%) value of the Total Receivable Amount.  Exchange Rate Displays the exchange rate between the receivable/PO amount currency and the finance currency.  Processing Date Displays the date of processing of the disbursement.  Displays the total pre-shipment settlement amount appropriated against the relevant outstanding pre-shipment finances. This field is displayed only if Pre-Shipment Liquidation is applicable.  Net Disbursed Amount Displays the disbursed amount from post-shipment finance i.e., Net Disbursed Amount = Post-Shipment Finance Amount - Pre-Shipment Amount. This field is displayed only if Pre-Shipment Liquidation is applicable.  Party Details Parties with specific roles in the program can be added in this section.  Party Details Select the party role to be added. The available options are: Buyer Supplier Supplier Inpurt Factor Export Factor Export Factor Insurance Beneficiary/Counter Party  Division Click the Search icon to select the party.  Address Specify the address of the selected party.		Displays the total amount of the receivables/PO being financed.
displayed. The field displays the Finance (%) value of the Total Receivable Amount.  Exchange Rate  Displays the exchange rate between the receivable/PO amount currency and the finance currency.  Processing Date  Displays the date of processing of the disbursement.  Pre-Shipment Settlement Amount  Displays the total pre-shipment settlement amount appropriated against the relevant outstanding pre-shipment finances.  This field is displayed only if Pre-Shipment Liquidation is applicable.  Net Disbursed Amount  Displays the disbursed amount from post-shipment finance i.e., Net Disbursed Amount = Post-Shipment Finance Amount - Pre-Shipment Settlement Amount.  This field is displayed only if Pre-Shipment Liquidation is applicable.  Party Details  Parties with specific roles in the program can be added in this section.  Party Details  Select the party role to be added.  The available options are:  Buyer  Supplier  Import Factor  Export Factor  Insurance  Beneficiary/Counter Party  Division  Click the Search icon to select the party.  Address  Specify the address of the selected party.	Finance (%)	and consequently the finance percentage can be changed in the
currency and the finance currency.  Processing Date  Displays the date of processing of the disbursement.  Pre-Shipment Settlement Amount  Displays the total pre-shipment settlement amount appropriated against the relevant outstanding pre-shipment finances. This field is displayed only if Pre-Shipment Liquidation is applicable.  Net Disbursed Amount  Displays the disbursed amount from post-shipment finance i.e., Net Disbursed Amount = Post-Shipment Finance Amount - Pre-Shipment Settlement Amount. This field is displayed only if Pre-Shipment Liquidation is applicable.  Party Details  Parties with specific roles in the program can be added in this section.  Party Details  Select the party role to be added. The available options are: Buyer Supplier Import Factor Insurance Beneficiary/Counter Party  Search Party  Click the Search icon to select the party.  Address  Specify the address of the selected party.	Finance Amount	displayed. The field displays the Finance (%) value of the Total
Pre-Shipment Settlement Amount  Displays the total pre-shipment settlement amount appropriated against the relevant outstanding pre-shipment finances. This field is displayed only if Pre-Shipment Liquidation is applicable.  Net Disbursed Amount  Displays the disbursed amount from post-shipment finance i.e., Net Disbursed Amount = Post-Shipment Finance Amount - Pre-Shipment Amount. This field is displayed only if Pre-Shipment Liquidation is applicable.  Party Details  Parties with specific roles in the program can be added in this section.  Party Details  Select the party role to be added. The available options are: Buyer Buyer Import Factor Import Factor Insurance Beneficiary/Counter Party  Search Party  Division  Click the Search icon to select the division code of the party.  Address  Specify the address of the selected party.	Exchange Rate	
against the relevant outstanding pre-shipment finances. This field is displayed only if Pre-Shipment Liquidation is applicable.  Net Disbursed Amount Displays the disbursed amount from post-shipment finance i.e., Net Disbursed Amount = Post-Shipment Finance Amount - Pre-Shipment Settlement Amount. This field is displayed only if Pre-Shipment Liquidation is applicable.  Party Details Parties with specific roles in the program can be added in this section.  Party Details Select the party role to be added. The available options are: Buyer Supplier Import Factor Export Factor Insurance Beneficiary/Counter Party  Search Party Division Click the Search icon to select the division code of the party.  Address Specify the address of the selected party.	Processing Date	Displays the date of processing of the disbursement.
applicable.  Net Disbursed Amount  Displays the disbursed amount from post-shipment finance i.e., Net Disbursed Amount = Post-Shipment Finance Amount - Pre-Shipment Settlement Amount. This field is displayed only if Pre-Shipment Liquidation is applicable.  Party Details  Parties with specific roles in the program can be added in this section.  Party Details  Select the party role to be added. The available options are: Buyer Supplier Import Factor Insurance Beneficiary/Counter Party  Search Party  Click the Search icon to select the party.  Address  Specify the address of the selected party.		against the relevant outstanding pre-shipment finances.
Disbursed Amount = Post-Shipment Finance Amount - Pre-Shipment Settlement Amount.  This field is displayed only if Pre-Shipment Liquidation is applicable.  Party Details  Parties with specific roles in the program can be added in this section.  Select the party role to be added.  The available options are:  Buyer  Supplier  Import Factor  Export Factor  Insurance  Beneficiary/Counter Party  Search Party  Click the Search icon to select the party.  Division  Click the Search icon to select the division code of the party.  Address  Specify the address of the selected party.		
applicable.  Party Details Parties with specific roles in the program can be added in this section.  Select the party role to be added. The available options are: Buyer Supplier Import Factor Export Factor Insurance Beneficiary/Counter Party  Search Party Click the Search icon to select the party.  Address Specify the address of the selected party.	Net Disbursed Amount	Disbursed Amount = Post-Shipment Finance Amount - Pre-Shipment
section.  Party Details  Select the party role to be added. The available options are: Buyer Supplier Import Factor Export Factor Insurance Beneficiary/Counter Party  Click the Search icon to select the party.  Division  Click the Search icon to select the division code of the party.  Address  Specify the address of the selected party.		
The available options are:  Buyer Supplier Import Factor Export Factor Insurance Beneficiary/Counter Party  Search Party Click the Search icon to select the party.  Click the Search icon to select the division code of the party.  Address Specify the address of the selected party.	Party Details	
Buyer Supplier Import Factor Export Factor Insurance Beneficiary/Counter Party  Search Party Click the Search icon to select the party.  Division Click the Search icon to select the division code of the party.  Address Specify the address of the selected party.	Party Details	Select the party role to be added.
Supplier     Import Factor     Export Factor     Insurance     Beneficiary/Counter Party      Click the Search icon to select the party.  Division  Click the Search icon to select the division code of the party.  Address  Specify the address of the selected party.		· ·
Import Factor     Export Factor     Insurance     Beneficiary/Counter Party  Click the Search icon to select the party.  Division  Click the Search icon to select the division code of the party.  Address  Specify the address of the selected party.		-
• Export Factor • Insurance • Beneficiary/Counter Party  Search Party  Click the Search icon to select the party.  Division  Click the Search icon to select the division code of the party.  Address  Specify the address of the selected party.		
• Insurance • Beneficiary/Counter Party  Search Party Click the Search icon to select the party.  Division Click the Search icon to select the division code of the party.  Address Specify the address of the selected party.		I =
Search Party  Click the Search icon to select the party.  Division  Click the Search icon to select the division code of the party.  Address  Specify the address of the selected party.		Insurance
Division         Click the Search icon to select the division code of the party.           Address         Specify the address of the selected party.		Beneficiary/Counter Party
Address Specify the address of the selected party.	Search Party	Click the Search icon to select the party.
	Division	Click the Search icon to select the division code of the party.
Add New Row Click this button to add the selected party to the grid.	Address	Specify the address of the selected party.
1	Add New Row	Click this button to add the selected party to the grid.



Table 3-3 (Cont.) Party - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Party Role	Displays the role of the party.
Party Id	Displays the unique ID of the party.
Party Name	Displays the name of the party
Address	Displays the address of the party.
Division Code	Displays the division code of the party.
Division Name	Displays the division name of the party.
Action	Click <b>Options</b> icon to view the actions that can be taken on the party record.

- **12.** Perform the following steps to take action on the parties in the grid:
  - Click Add New Row to add more parties.
  - Select the record in the grid and click **Options** icon under the **Actions** column and then click **Delete** to remove the party.
- 13. Perform any of the below actions from the Party screen.
  - Click Next to go to the Limits screen.
  - Click Save and Close to save the details and complete the processing stage of the disbursement.

If the **Disbursement Auth Required** toggle is enabled for the program associated with the transaction, an approval task is created in the system.

- Click Back to go to the Pre-Shipment Liquidation screen.
- Click Reject to purge the disbursement transaction.
- Click Hold to move the transaction to the Hold Tasks list.
- Click Cancel to cancel the transaction and return to the Free Tasks screen.

#### Limits

Limits are assigned to corporate parties and their associated entities (counter parties, products, programs, and so on) for the finances being requested. In some cases, apart from the sanctioned main limits, adhoc limits are also assigned to these entities. Adhoc limits will be booked once the main limits are exhausted. In other words, adhoc limits are utilized if a finance request exceeds the available main limits, but not the total available limits. In such cases, two separate disbursement transactions are created – one for the main limits utilized, and one for the adhoc limits utilized. The interest rates applicable may also differ for the finance availed under the main limit and the finance availed under the adhoc limit.

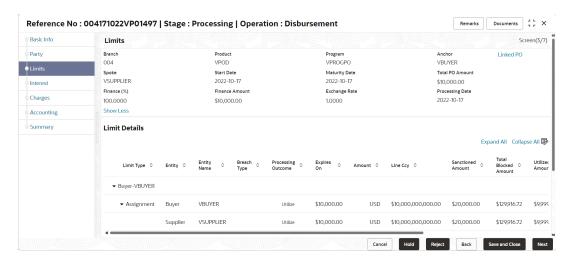
If there is a limit freeze on any of the entities involved, then the disbursement transaction cannot be processed. It can only be processed once the limit freeze is lifted.

14. Click Next on the Party tab.

The **Limits** screen displays.



Figure 3-5 Disbursement - Limits



When the main limits are being utilized, the Limit Details grid displays details related to the main limits. You can add columns related to the adhoc limits by clicking **Add/Remove Columns** icon, if required. If adhoc limits are being utilized, then the Limit Details grid displays the Sanctioned Adhoc Amount, Utilized Adhoc Amount, and Available Adhoc Amount columns. You can add the columns related to the Main Limits using **Add/Remove Columns** icon, if required.

**15.** Specify the fields on **Limits** screen.

#### Note

The fields marked as **Required** are mandatory.

Table 3-4 Limits - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Branch	Displays the branch where the disbursement is being processed. By default, the logged-in user's branch is displayed.
Product	Displays the name of the product associated with the program.
Program	Displays the name of the program that is linked to the receivables being financed.
Anchor	Displays the name of the anchor party in the program.
Linked Receivables/PO	Click the link to view a list of receivables (invoices/debit notes) / PO that is being financed.
Spoke	Displays the name of the counter party in the program.
Start Date	Displays the start date of the finance. By default, it is the current business date.



Table 3-4 (Cont.) Limits - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Maturity Date	Displays the maturity date of the finance. Maturity date gets calculated basis maturity date parameter selected at product level.
Total Receivable/PO Amount	Displays the total amount of the receivables/PO being financed.
Finance (%)	Applicable Finance % is displayed in this field. The Finance amount and consequently the finance percentage can be changed in the disbursement initiation stage.
Finance Amount	Finance Amount finalized and captured during the initiation stage is displayed. The field displays the Finance (%) value of the Total Receivable Amount.
Exchange Rate	Displays the exchange rate between the receivable/PO amount currency and the finance currency.
Processing Date	Displays the date of processing of the disbursement.
Pre-Shipment Settlement Amount	Displays the total pre-shipment settlement amount appropriated against the relevant outstanding pre-shipment finances.
	This field is displayed only if <b>Pre-Shipment Liquidation</b> is applicable.
Net Disbursed Amount	Displays the disbursed amount from post-shipment finance, that is  Net Disbursed Amount = Post-Shipment Finance Amount – Pre- Shipment Settlement Amount.  This field is displayed only if <b>Pre-Shipment Liquidation</b> is
	applicable.
Limit Details	Limit details of the entity that is being financed is displayed in this section.
Limit Type	Displays a label of the entity and the linked limit type.
Entity	Displays the entity – Anchor / Product / Program / Spoke and so on.
Entity Name	Displays the name of the entity.
Breach Type	Displays any limit breach exception that has occurred with respect to the entity. (Limits Frozen, Amount Breach, Limits Expired).
Processing Outcome	Displays the action that will be taken on the limit as a result of disbursement.  Utilize - If the limit is being booked.  Stop - If in case of an exception, the transaction should be blocked and not allowed to be processed further.  Skip - If in case of an exception, the transaction is to be processed without limit booking.  This behavior is driven by the credit limit mapping as configured in product parameters.
Amount	Displays the finance amount.
Line Ccy	Displays the currency of the limit line.
Exchange Rate	Displays the exchange rate between the finance amount currency and the line currency.
Amount (In line CCY)	Displays the finance amount in line currency.
Sanctioned Amount	Displays the limit amount assigned to the entity.
Total Blocked Amount	Displays the total amount that has been blocked for finances that are currently being processed, with respect to the entity.
Total Utilized Amount	Displays the limit amount that has already been utilized.
Available Amount	Displays the limit amount available for financing.
Line Id	Displays the unique ID of the limit line of the entity.



Table 3-4 (Cont.) Limits - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Action	Displays the action being taken on the finance amount earmarked for disbursement.
Actual Available Limits	Displays the actual limit available to the entity for financing.

- **16.** Perform any of the below actions from the **Limits** screen.
  - Click Next to go to the Interest screen.
  - Click Save and Close to save the details and complete the processing stage of the disbursement.

If the **Disbursement Auth Required** toggle is enabled for the program associated with the transaction, an approval task is created in the system.

- Click Back to go to the Party screen.
- Click Reject to purge the disbursement transaction.
- Click Hold to move the transaction to the Hold Tasks list.
- Click **Cancel** to cancel the transaction and return to the **Free Tasks** screen.

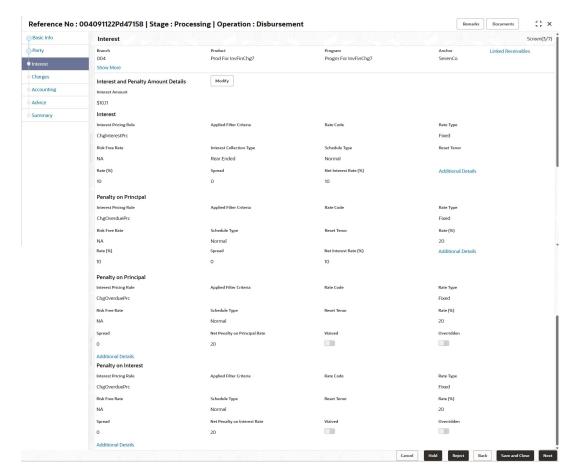
#### Interest

17. Click Next on the Limits tab.

The Interest screen displays.



Figure 3-6 Disbursement - Interest



18. Specify the fields on Interest screen.



The fields marked as **Required** are mandatory.

Table 3-5 Interest - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Branch	Displays the branch where the disbursement is being processed. By default, the logged-in user's branch is displayed.
Product	Displays the name of the product associated with the program.
Program	Displays the name of the program that is linked to the receivables being financed.
Anchor	Displays the name of the anchor party in the program.
Linked Receivables/PO	Click the link to view a list of receivables (invoices/debit notes) / PO that is being financed.
Spoke	Displays the name of the counter party in the program.
Start Date	Displays the start date of the finance. By default, it is the current business date.



Table 3-5 (Cont.) Interest - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Maturity Date	Displays the maturity date of the finance. Maturity date gets calculated basis maturity date parameter selected at product level.
Total Receivable/PO Amount	Displays the total amount of the receivables/PO being financed.
Finance (%)	Applicable Finance % is displayed in this field. The Finance amount and consequently the finance percentage can be changed in the disbursement initiation stage.
Finance Amount	Finance Amount finalized and captured during the initiation stage is displayed. The field displays the Finance (%) value of the Total Receivable Amount.
Exchange Rate	Displays the exchange rate between the receivable/PO amount currency and the finance currency.
Processing Date	Displays the date of processing of the disbursement.
Pre-Shipment Settlement Amount	Displays the total pre-shipment settlement amount appropriated against the relevant outstanding pre-shipment finances.
	This field is displayed only if <b>Pre-Shipment Liquidation</b> is applicable.
Net Disbursed Amount	Displays the disbursed amount from post-shipment finance, that is Net Disbursed Amount = Post-Shipment Finance Amount – Pre-Shipment Settlement Amount.
	This field is displayed only if <b>Pre-Shipment Liquidation</b> is applicable.
Interest and Penalty Amount Details	Interest, Penalty on Principal, and Penalty on Interest details of the finance is displayed in this section.  User can modify the interest for specific transactions and other penalty components during the disbursement process.
Interest Amount	Displays the interest amount that has been calculated.
Penalty on Principal	Displays the penalty on the outstanding principal that has been calculated, if any.
Penalty on Interest	Displays the penalty on the outstanding interest that has been calculated, if any.
Interest Details	Interest details of the finance is displayed in this section.
Rate Pricing Rule	Displays the pricing rule applied for the interest rate.
Applied Filter Criteria	Displays the filter criteria applied for the interest rate.
Rate Code	Displays the unique code associated with the interest rate.
Rate Type	Displays whether the rate is floating or fixed.
Risk Free Rate	Displays whether the interest rate applied is risk free.
Interest Collection Type	Displays the type of interest collection, whether rear-ended, or front-ended.
Schedule Type	Displays whether the interest collection schedule is normal or compounding.
Reset Tenor	Displays the tenor for applying the new interest rate, in case of floating rate type.
Rate (%)	Displays the base rate of interest.
Spread	Displays the spread or margin rate of interest.
Net Interest Rate (%)	Displays the total rate of interest. This is the sum of Rate (%) and Spread.



Table 3-5 (Cont.) Interest - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Additional Details	Click this link to view additional interest details.  Interest Additional Details - Displays additional information related to the interest.  Interest Payment Schedule - Displays the details of periodic interest dues for monthly rest transactions.
Penalty on Principal Details	Penalty on principal details of the finance is displayed in this section.
Rate Pricing Rule	Displays the pricing rule applied for the interest rate.
Applied Filter Criteria	Displays the filter criteria applied for the interest rate.
Rate Code	Displays the code of the penalty on principal.
Rate Type	Displays whether the rate is floating or fixed.
Risk Free Rate	Displays whether the interest rate applied is risk free.
Schedule Type	Displays whether the interest collection schedule is normal or compounding.
Reset Tenor	Displays the tenor for applying the new interest rate, in case of floating rate type.
Rate (%)	Displays the base rate of interest.
Spread	Displays the spread or margin rate of interest.
Net Penalty on Principal Rate (%)	Displays the total rate of interest. This is the sum of Rate (%) and Spread.
Waived	Switch the toggle ON to sets value of the component to zero.
Overridden	Switch the toggle ON to override the value of the component to a lower amount.
Additional Details	Click this link to view additional details related to penalty on principal.
Penalty on Interest Details	Penalty on interest details of the finance is displayed in this section.
Rate Pricing Rule	Displays the pricing rule applied for the interest rate.
Applied Filter Criteria	Displays the filter criteria applied for the interest rate.
Rate Code	Displays the code of the penalty on the penalty on interest.
Rate Type	Displays whether the rate is floating or fixed.
Risk Free Rate	Displays whether the interest rate applied is risk free.
Schedule Type	Displays whether the interest collection schedule is normal or compounding.
Reset Tenor	Displays the tenor for applying the new interest rate, in case of floating rate type.
Rate (%)	Displays the base rate of interest.
Spread	Displays the spread or margin rate of interest.
Net Penalty on Principal Rate (%)	Displays the total rate of interest. This is the sum of Rate (%) and Spread.
Waived	Switch the toggle ON to sets value of the component to zero.
Overridden	Switch the toggle ON to override the value of the component to a lower amount.
Additional Details	Click this link to view additional details related to penalty on interest.

**19**. Click **Modify** to modify the created disbursement-interest.

The **Interest** pop-up screen displays.



Figure 3-7 Interest-Fixed Rate Type

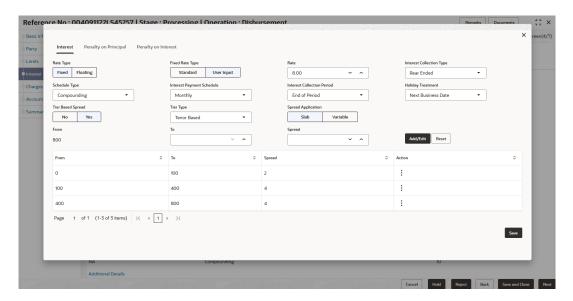


Table 3-6 Interest-Fixed Rate Type

Field Name	Description
Rate Type	Select the rate type from the available options:  Fixed  Floating
Fixed Rate Type	Select the fixed rate type from the available options:  Standard  User Input
Rate Code	Select a rate code from the drop-down list.
Interest Collection Type	Select a interest collection type from the drop-down list. The available options are: Rear Ended Front Ended Note: When Component is Interest, and Interest Collection Type
	is <b>Rear Ended</b> , then <b>Interest Payment Schedule</b> field should be available for maintenance. <b>Interest Payment Schedule</b> is hidden if the component is anything other than <b>Interest</b> or if the <b>Interest Collection Type</b> is <b>Front Ended</b> .
Scheduled Type	Select a schedule type from the drop-down list. The available options are:  Compounding  Normal
	Note: Schedule Type cannot be Compounding for Interest Collection Type Front Ended Interest.
Interest Payment Schedule	Select a interest payment schedule from the drop-down list. The available options are: Bullet Monthly



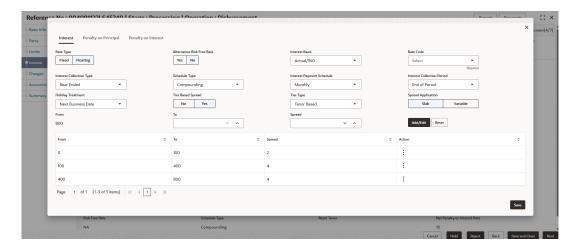
Table 3-6 (Cont.) Interest-Fixed Rate Type

Field Name	Description
Interest Collection Period	Select a interest collection period from the drop-down list. The available options are: Beginning of Period End of Period Value Date Note: When Interest Payment Schedule is selected as Monthly
	wherever applicable, another field to classify <b>Interest Collection Period</b> is enabled.
Holiday Treatment	Select a holiday treatment from the drop-down list. The available options are: Next Business Date Previous Business Date
Tier Based Spread	Select the tier based spread from the available options:  No Yes
Tier Type	Select a tier type from the drop-down list. The available options are:

20. If user select Floating option in Rate Type.

The Interest Floating-Rate Type screen displays.

Figure 3-8 Interest Floating-Rate Type





**Table 3-7 Floating- Rate Type** 

Field Name	Description
Rate Type	Select the rate type from the available options:  • Fixed  • Floating
Alternative Risk Free Rate	Select the alternative risk free rate from the available options:  Yes  No
Interest Basis	Select a interest collection type from the drop-down list. The available options are:  • Actual/Actual  • Actual/360  • Actual/365
Rate Code	Select a rate code from the drop-down list.
Interest Collection Type	Select a interest collection type from the drop-down list. The available options are: Rear Ended Front Ended
Scheduled Type	Select a schedule type from the drop-down list. The available options are: Compounding Normal
Interest Payment Schedule	Select a interest payment schedule from the drop-down list. The available options are: Bullet Monthly
Interest Collection Period	Select a interest collection period from the drop-down list. The available options are: Beginning of Period End of Period Value Date
Holiday Treatment	Select a holiday treatment from the drop-down list. The available options are:  Next Business Date  Previous Business Date
Tier Based Spread	Select the tier based spread from the available options:  No Yes
Tier Type	Select a tier type from the drop-down list. The available options are:

21. Click Penalty on Principal to modify the created disbursement-interest.

The **Penalty on Principal** pop-up screen displays.



Figure 3-9 Penalty on Principal- Fixed

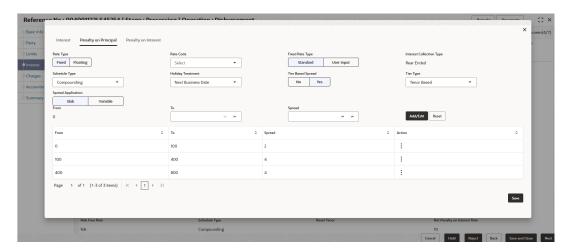


Table 3-8 Penalty on Principal- Fixed

Field Name	Description
Rate Type	Select the rate type from the available options:
Fixed Rate Type	Select the fixed rate type from the available options:  Standard  User Input
Rate Code	Select a rate code from the drop-down list.
Interest Collection Type	Displays the Rear Ended of interest collection type.
Scheduled Type	Select a schedule type from the drop-down list. The available options are:
Holiday Treatment	Select a holiday treatment from the drop-down list. The available options are:  Next Business Date  Previous Business Date
Tier Based Spread	Select the tier based spread from the available options:  No Yes
Tier Type	Select a tier type from the drop-down list. The available options are:



Figure 3-10 Penalty on Principal- Floating

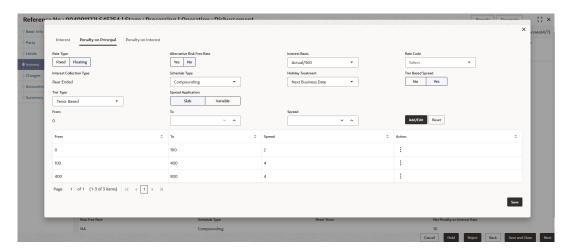


Table 3-9 Penalty on Principal- Floating

Field Name	Description
Rate Type	Select the rate type from the available options:  Fixed  Floating
Alternative Risk Free Rate	Select the alternative risk free rate from the available options:  Yes  No
Interest Basis	Select a interest collection type from the drop-down list. The available options are:
Rate Code	Select a rate code from the drop-down list.
Interest Collection Type	Displays the Rear Ended of interest collection type.
Scheduled Type	Select a schedule type from the drop-down list. The available options are: Compounding Normal
	Note: Schedule Type cannot be Compounding for Interest Collection Type Front Ended Interest.
Holiday Treatment	Select a holiday treatment from the drop-down list. The available options are:  Next Business Date  Previous Business Date
Tier Based Spread	Select the tier based spread from the available options:  No Yes



Table 3-9 (Cont.) Penalty on Principal- Floating

	<u>.                                      </u>
Field Name	Description
Tier Type	Select a tier type from the drop-down list. The available options are:
Spread Application	Select the spread application from the available options:  • Slab  • Variable

22. Click **Penalty on Interest** to modify the created disbursement-interest.

The **Penalty on Interest** pop-up screen displays.

Figure 3-11 Penalty on Interest- Fixed

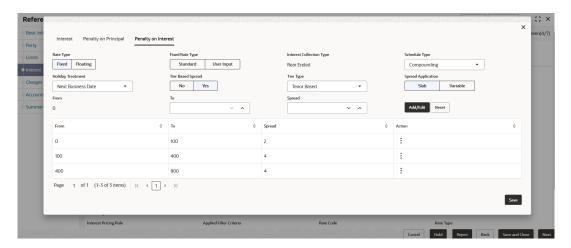


Table 3-10 Penalty on Interest- Fixed

Field Name	Description
Rate Type	Select the rate type from the available options:
Fixed Rate Type	Select the fixed rate type from the available options:  Standard  User Input
Rate Code	Select a rate code from the drop-down list.
Interest Collection Type	Displays the Rear Ended of interest collection type.



Table 3-10 (Cont.) Penalty on Interest- Fixed

Field Name	Description
Scheduled Type	Select a schedule type from the drop-down list. The available options are:
Holiday Treatment	Select a holiday treatment from the drop-down list. The available options are:  Next Business Date  Previous Business Date
Tier Based Spread	Select the tier based spread from the available options:  No Yes
Tier Type	Select a tier type from the drop-down list. The available options are:  • Amount Based  • Amount and Tenor Based  • Tenor Based
Spread Application	Select the spread application from the available options:  Slab Variable

Figure 3-12 Penalty on Interest- Floating

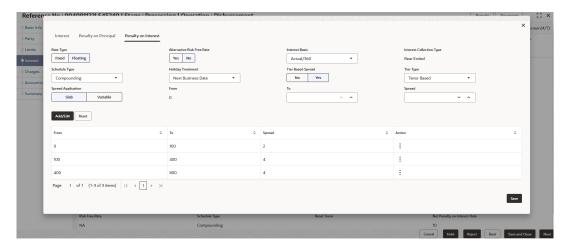


Table 3-11 Penalty on Interest- Floating

Field Name	Description
Rate Type	Select the rate type from the available options:  • Fixed  • Floating



Table 3-11 (Cont.) Penalty on Interest- Floating

Field Name	Description
Alternative Risk Free Rate	Select the alternative risk free rate from the available options:  • Yes • No
Interest Basis	Select a interest collection type from the drop-down list. The available options are:  Actual/Actual  Actual/360  Actual/365
Rate Code	Select a rate code from the drop-down list.
Interest Collection Type	Displays the Rear Ended of interest collection type.
Scheduled Type	Select a schedule type from the drop-down list. The available options are:
Holiday Treatment	Select a holiday treatment from the drop-down list. The available options are:  Next Business Date  Previous Business Date
Tier Based Spread	Select the tier based spread from the available options:  No Yes
Tier Type	Select a tier type from the drop-down list. The available options are:  • Amount Based  • Amount and Tenor Based  • Tenor Based
Spread Application	Select the spread application from the available options:  Slab Variable

- **23.** Perform any of the below actions from the **Interest** screen.
  - Click Next to go to the Charges screen.
  - Click Save and Close to save the details and complete the processing stage of the disbursement.

## ① Note

If the **Disbursement Auth Required** toggle is enabled for the program associated with the transaction, an approval task is created in the system.

- Click Back to go to the Limits screen.
- Click Reject to purge the disbursement transaction.
- Click Hold to move the transaction to the Hold Tasks list.
- Click Cancel to cancel the transaction and return to the Free Tasks screen.

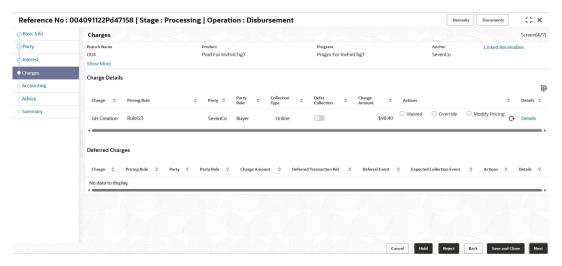
#### Charges



#### 24. Click Next on the Interest tab.

The Charges screen displays.

Figure 3-13 Disbursement - Charges



25. Specify the fields on Charges screen.



The fields marked as **Required** are mandatory.

**Table 3-12 Charges - Field Description** 

Field Name	Description
Branch	Displays the branch where the disbursement is being processed. By default, the logged-in user's branch is displayed.
Product	Displays the name of the product associated with the program.
Program	Displays the name of the program that is linked to the receivables being financed.
Anchor	Displays the name of the anchor party in the program.
Linked Receivables/PO	Click the link to view a list of receivables (invoices/debit notes) / PO that is being financed.
Spoke	Displays the name of the counter party in the program.
Start Date	Displays the start date of the finance. By default, it is the current business date.
Maturity Date	Displays the maturity date of the finance. Maturity date gets calculated basis maturity date parameter selected at product level.
Total Receivable/PO Amount	Displays the total amount of the receivables/PO being financed.
Finance (%)	Applicable Finance % is displayed in this field. The Finance amount and consequently the finance percentage can be changed in the disbursement initiation stage.



Table 3-12 (Cont.) Charges - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Finance Amount	Finance Amount finalized and captured during the initiation stage is displayed. The field displays the Finance (%) value of the Total Receivable Amount.
Exchange Rate	Displays the exchange rate between the receivable/PO amount currency and the finance currency.
Processing Date	Displays the date of processing of the disbursement.
Pre-Shipment Settlement Amount	Displays the total pre-shipment settlement amount appropriated against the relevant outstanding pre-shipment finances.
	This field is displayed only if <b>Pre-Shipment Liquidation</b> is applicable.
Net Disbursed Amount	Displays the disbursed amount from post-shipment finance, that is Net Disbursed Amount = Post-Shipment Finance Amount - Pre- Shipment Settlement Amount.
	This field is displayed only if <b>Pre-Shipment Liquidation</b> is applicable.
Charge Details	Charge details of the finance is displayed in this section.
Charge	Displays the charge code.
Pricing Rule	Displays the charge pricing rule applicable to the transaction.
	This field becomes editable if <b>Modify Pricing</b> radio button is selected in the <b>Actions</b> column.
	Click the search icon in the Charge Pricing Rule column. The Charge Pricing Rule pop-up screen displays.
	a. Enter complete or partial value in the Charge Pricing Id or Charge Pricing Description fields .
	b. Click <b>Fetch</b> . The relevant pricing rule(s) displays.
	c. Select the pricing rule to be applied.
Party	Displays the ID of the party that has been charged.
Party Role	Displays the role of the party that has been charged.
Collection Type	Displays the type of charge collection applicable to the transaction.
Defer Collection	Field will be set to No if periodic collection is selected or deferral is not applicable, thereby preventing the user from making changes.
Charge Amount	Displays the amount charged along with the currency. If the charge is <b>Auto Waived</b> , then the charge amount field defaults to zero.



Table 3-12 (Cont.) Charges - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Field Name	Description
Actions	Displays the below radio buttons.  Waive – Click the button to waive the charge amount. If selected, the charge amount field defaults to zero.  Override – Click the button to modify the existing charge amount. For Charge Collection Type selected as Periodic, the override charge amount entered will be proportionately adjusted across the schedule.  Modify Pricing – Click the button to modify the charge pricing rule. Charge Pricing Rule field becomes editable to select a different pricing rule.  Reset – Click the button to reset to the original calculation of
	charges and charge pricing rule.
	These fields are enabled or disabled as per the charge maintenance parameters set in the <b>Charge Decisioning</b> and the <b>Charge Preferential Pricing</b> screens.
Status	Displays the status of the charge and View Original Charges hyperlink is enabled. Click the link to view the system calculated charges.
	This field is displayed only if <b>Auto Waive</b> is selected in the <b>Charge Decisioning</b> screen or if the disbursement transaction is viewed from checker login.
Details	Click the link to view the charge details.
	External Pricing Details tab is displayed only if External Pricing switch is enabled in the Charge Decisioning and Charge Preferential Pricing screens.
	Schedule of Periodic Charges tab is displayed only if the Charge Collection Type or Charge Calculation Type is selected as Periodic.
Deferred Charges	This section will lists the charges that have been deferred for the given transaction, as well as any charges deferred in prior transactions within the applicable invoice or finance lifecycle
Charge	Displays the charge code of the deferred charge.
Pricing Rule	Displays the charge pricing rule applicable to the deferred charge.
Party	Displays the charge party name.
Party Role	Displays the role of the party.
Charge Amount	Displays the charge amount.
Deferred Transaction Ref	Displays the transaction reference number of the parent transaction from which the deferred charge originated.
Deferral Event	Displays the event of the parent transaction from which the deferred charge originated.
Expected Collection Event	Displays the expected collection event for the deferred charge.

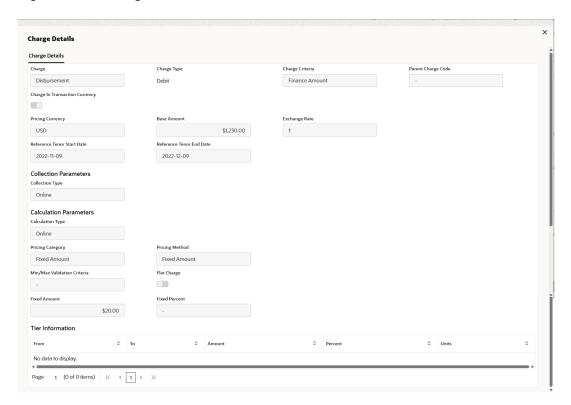


Table 3-12 (Cont.) Charges - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Actions	Displays the below radio buttons.  Waive – Click the button to waive the charge amount. If selected, the charge amount field defaults to zero.  Override – Click the button to modify the existing charge amount . For Charge Collection Type selected as Periodic, the override charge amount entered will be proportionately adjusted across the schedule.
	<ul> <li>Modify Pricing – Click the button to modify the charge pricing rule. Charge Pricing Rule field becomes editable to select a different pricing rule.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Reset – Click the button to reset to the original calculation of charges and charge pricing rule.</li> </ul>
	These fields are enabled or disabled as per the charge maintenance parameters set in the <b>Charge Decisioning</b> and the <b>Charge Preferential Pricing</b> screens.

26. Click the link in the **Details** column to view the charge details.

Figure 3-14 Charge Details



- 27. Perform any of the below actions from the Charges screen.
  - Click Next to go to the Accounting screen.
  - Click Save and Close to save the details and complete the processing stage of the disbursement.





If the **Disbursement Auth Required** toggle is enabled for the program associated with the transaction, an approval task is created in the system.

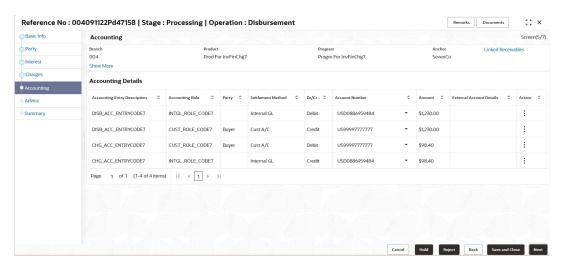
- Click Back to go to the Interest screen.
- Click Reject to purge the disbursement transaction.
- Click Hold to move the transaction to the Hold Tasks list.
- Click Cancel to cancel the transaction and return to the Free Tasks screen.

#### **Accounting**

28. Click Next on the Charges tab.

The **Accounting** screen displays.

Figure 3-15 Disbursement - Accounting



29. Specify the fields on Accounting screen.



The fields marked as **Required** are mandatory.

Table 3-13 Accounting - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Branch	Displays the branch where the disbursement is being processed. By default, the logged-in user's branch is displayed.
Product	Displays the name of the product associated with the program.
Program	Displays the name of the program that is linked to the receivables being financed.
Anchor	Displays the name of the anchor party in the program.



Table 3-13 (Cont.) Accounting - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Linked Receivables/PO	Click the link to view a list of receivables (invoices/debit notes) / PO that is being financed.
Spoke	Displays the name of the counter party in the program.
Start Date	Displays the start date of the finance. By default, it is the current business date.
Maturity Date	Displays the maturity date of the finance. Maturity date gets calculated basis maturity date parameter selected at product level.
Total Receivable/PO Amount	Displays the total amount of the receivables/PO being financed.
Finance (%)	Applicable Finance % is displayed in this field. The Finance amount and consequently the finance percentage can be changed in the disbursement initiation stage.
Finance Amount	Finance Amount finalized and captured during the initiation stage is displayed. The field displays the Finance (%) value of the Total Receivable Amount.
Exchange Rate	Displays the exchange rate between the receivable/PO amount currency and the finance currency.
Processing Date	Displays the date of processing of the disbursement.
Pre-Shipment Settlement Amount	Displays the total pre-shipment settlement amount appropriated against the relevant outstanding pre-shipment finances.
	This field is displayed only if <b>Pre-Shipment Liquidation</b> is applicable.
Net Disbursed Amount	Displays the disbursed amount from post-shipment finance, that is Net Disbursed Amount = Post-Shipment Finance Amount – Pre-Shipment Settlement Amount.
	This field is displayed only if <b>Pre-Shipment Liquidation</b> is applicable.
Accounting Details	Accounting details of the finance is displayed in this section.
Accounting Entry Description	Displays the description of the accounting entry.
Accounting Role	Displays the accounting role code associated with the accounting entry.
Party	Displays the name of the party associated with the accounting entry.
Settlement Method	Displays the settlement mode of the transaction.
Dr/Cr	Displays whether the amount is debited or credited for the accounting entry.
Account Number	Displays the account number involved in the transaction.
Amount	Displays the amount of the transaction.
External Account Details	Displays account details for external accounts. Kindly note that these accounts can be changed or added during processing.
Action	Click <b>Options</b> icon to view the actions that can be taken on the party record.

- **30.** Perform any of the below actions from the **Accounting** screen.
  - Click Next to go to the Advice screen.
  - Click Save and Close to save the details and complete the processing stage of the disbursement.





If the **Disbursement Auth Required** toggle is enabled for the program associated with the transaction, an approval task is created in the system.

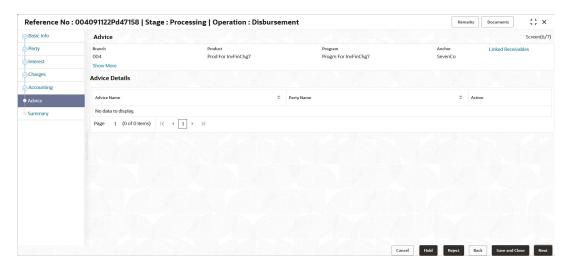
- Click Back to go to the Charges screen.
- Click Reject to purge the disbursement transaction.
- Click Hold to move the transaction to the Hold Tasks list.
- Click **Cancel** to cancel the transaction and return to the **Free Tasks** screen.

#### **Advice**

31. Click Next on the Accounting tab.

The **Advice** screen displays.

Figure 3-16 Advice



32. Specify the fields on Advice screen.



The fields marked as **Required** are mandatory.

For more information on fields, refer to the field description table.

Table 3-14 Advice - Field Description

Field	Description
Advice Name	Displays the name of the advice.
Party Name	Displays the name of the party to whom advice will be sent.
Action	Click <b>Options</b> icon to view the actions that can be taken on the party record.

33. Perform any of the below actions from the **Advice** screen.



- Click Next to go to the Summary screen.
- Click Save and Close to save the details and complete the processing stage of the disbursement.

If the **Disbursement Auth Required** toggle is enabled for the program associated with the transaction, an approval task is created in the system.

- Click Back to go to the Accounting screen.
- Click Reject to purge the disbursement transaction.
- Click Hold to move the transaction to the Hold Tasks list.
- Click Cancel to cancel the transaction and return to the Free Tasks screen.

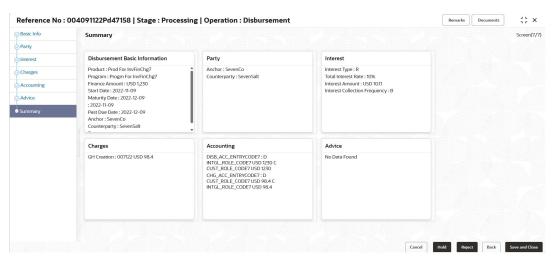
#### **Summary**

The Disbursement Summary screen shows a snapshot of the complete disbursement transaction along with finance amount, interest applicable, terms, and so on. A tile is displayed for each data segment.

34. Click Next on the Advice tab.

The **Summary** screen displays.

Figure 3-17 Disbursement - Summary



- **35.** Review the details of the disbursement transaction and perform any of the following action from the **Summary** screen.
  - Click each tile to view the detailed information of the data segments.
  - Click Save and Close to save the details and complete the processing stage of the disbursement.

## Note

If the **Disbursement Auth Required** toggle is enabled for the program associated with the transaction, an approval task is created in the system.



- Click Back to go to the Advice screen.
- Click Reject to purge the disbursement transaction.
- Click Hold to move the transaction to the Hold Tasks list.
- Click Cancel to cancel the transaction and return to the Free Tasks screen.

# Finance Settlement

This topic describes the information to initiate settlement and processing the settlement task.

Finance Settlement functionality enables the banks to settle outstanding finances/loans for corporate customers in the supply chain finance system. Based on the party's role, you can initiate the settlement of a loan on behalf of the corporate customer. The settlement request can either be initiated from the **Finance Settlement** screen or through file upload (payment file).

The Finance Settlement process involves the below steps:

- Initiate Finance Settlement
  - This topic describes the systematic instruction to initiate finance settlement to settle the outstanding finances/loans for corporate customers.
- <u>Settlement Task</u>
   This topic describes the steps to process the settlement record.

# 4.1 Initiate Finance Settlement

This topic describes the systematic instruction to initiate finance settlement to settle the outstanding finances/loans for corporate customers.

A settlement transaction is initiated automatically based on finance-payment reconciliation, in which case a settlement task record is created in the **Free Tasks**.

The user can manually initiate a settlement transaction in the **Finance Settlement** screen. You can search and select the finances to settle, and initiate the settlement process. Multiple finances can be selected for settlement. For each finance reference number you select, a settlement transaction is created under **Free Tasks**.

 On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Finance Settlement.

The Finance Settlement screen displays.

Figure 4-1 Finance Settlement - Settlement Details



Specify the fields on Settlement Details section to search for the finances against which settlement needs to be initiated.





The fields marked as **Required** are mandatory.

Table 4-1 Settlement Details - Field Description

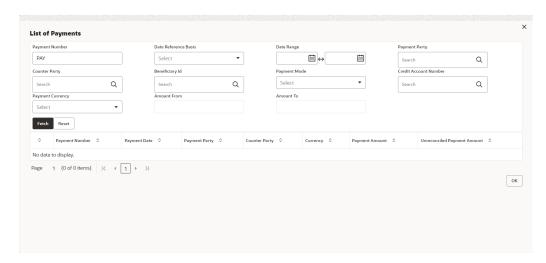
Field Name	Description
Settlement Ref No	Specify the reference number for the settlement to be initiated.
Payment Ref No	Click the Search icon to select the payment against which settlement needs to be initiated. For more information to select the payments, refer to <u>List of Payments</u> .
Payment Party Role	Select the role of the party that is making the payment.
Payment Party	Click the Search icon to select the name of the party that is making the payment.
Loan Account Credited	Switch the toggle ON, if the loan account is credited with the settlement amount.
Payment Mode	Select the mode of payment for the settlement.
	This field is disabled if <b>Loan Account Credited</b> toggle is enabled.
Debit Account	Click the Search icon to select the account to be debited during finance settlement. The accounts mapped to the payment party for Settlement event, in the Internal Account Mapping maintenance, are available for selection. The selected account is used for finance settlement. For more information to select the accounts, refer to Debit Account/Credit Account.
	This field is displayed only if <b>Loan Account Credited</b> toggle is disabled.
	This field is mandatory if <b>Payment Mode</b> is selected as <b>Account Transfer</b> .
Credit Account	Click the Search icon to select the loan account already credited for the finance settlement. The accounts mapped to the payment party in the Internal Account Mapping maintenance, are available for selection. The selected account is used for finance settlement. For more information to select the accounts, refer to <a href="Debit Account/Credit Account">Debit Account/Credit Account</a> .
	This field is displayed only if <b>Loan Account Credited</b> toggle is enabled.
Currency	Select the currency for the settlement amount.
Settlement Amount	Specify the amount being paid by the payment party to settle the finances.
Settlement Date	Click the Calendar to select the date of settlement. By default, the current date is displayed.
Manual Allocation	Switch the toggle ON to enable manual allocation of the amount to settle the finances.
Settlement Amount Allocation	Select how the settlement amount must be allocated amongst the selected finances.  The available options are:  By Highest Outstanding  By Lowest Outstanding
	By Latest Due date



- Perform the below steps to select the payment against which settlement needs to be initiated.
  - a. Click the search icon in the **Payment Ref No** field to select the payment.

The List of Payments pop-up screen displays.

Figure 4-2 List of Payments



For more information on fields, refer to the field description table.

Table 4-2 List of Payments - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Payment Number	Specify the reference number of the payment to search for.
Date Reference Basis	Select the value to specify the reference for date criteria.
From Date	Click the Calendar icon and specify the start range for the selected data reference basis.
To Date	Click the Calendar icon and specify the end date of range for the selected data reference basis.
Payment Party	Click the Search icon to select the payment party to search for.
Counter Party	Click the Search icon to select the counter-party of the payment to search for.
Beneficiary Id	Click the Search icon to select the beneficiary of the payment to search for.
Payment Mode	Select the mode of payment.
Credit Account Number	Click the Search icon to select the account of the beneficiary.
Payment Currency	Select the currency of the payment.
Amount From	Specify the start of the amount-range within which the payment needs to be searched.
Amount To	Specify the end of the amount-range within which the payment needs to be searched.

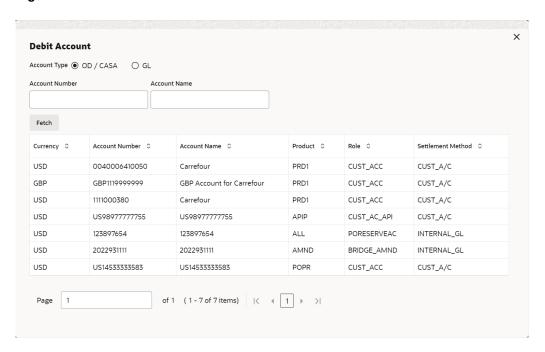
b. On the List of Payments screen, specify the required search criteria and click Fetch. The relevant payment records are displayed.



- c. Select the records and click **OK** to select the payments to initiate the settlement.
- 4. Perform the below steps to select the debit/credit account from which the settlement .
  - a. Click the Search icon in the **Debit Account/Credit Account** field to select the account mapped in the internal account mapping of the selected payment party. The **Credit Account** field is displayed only if the **Loan Account Credited** toggle is switched ON.

The Debit Account/Credit Account pop-up screen displays.

Figure 4-3 Debit Account/Credit Account



For more information on fields, refer to the field description table.

Table 4-3 Debit Account/Credit Account - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Account Type	Select the type of the account from the list of accounts maintained in the Internal Account Mapping.  The available options are:  OD / CASA  GL
Currency	Displays the currency of the debit/credit account to be selected.
Account Number	Displays the account number of the debit/credit account.
Account Name	Displays the account name of the debit/credit account.
Product	Displays the product mapped to the debit/credit account in the Internal Account Mapping.
Role	Displays the account role mapped to the debit/credit account in the Internal Account Mapping.
Settlement Method	Displays the settlement method mapped to the debit/credit account in the Internal Account Mapping.

b. On the Debit Account/Credit Account screen, specify the Account Number or Account Name and click Fetch.

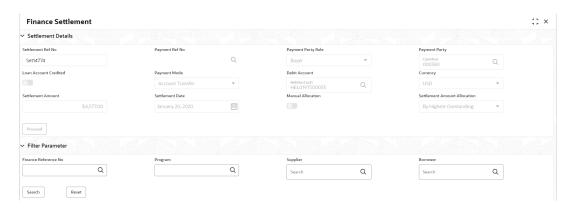


The relevant account details are displayed.

- Select the records and click **OK** to select the account to initiate the settlement.
- 5. Click Proceed after you specify the required details in the Settlement Details section.

The **Filter Parameters** section displays, if there are any relevant outstanding finances for the details specified.

Figure 4-4 Filter Parameter



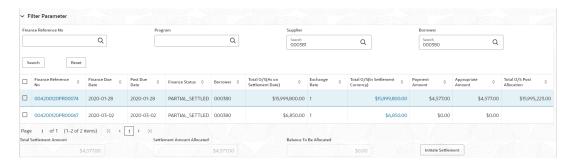
For more information on fields, refer to the field description table.

Table 4-4 Filter Parameter - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Finance Reference No	Click the Search icon to select the outstanding finances using the finance reference number.
Program	Click the Search icon to select the outstanding finances based on the associated program.
Buyer / Supplier	Click the Search icon to select the outstanding finances based on the supplier/buyer.
	This field displays the role based on the <b>Payment Party Role</b> selected in the <b>Settlement Details</b> section.
Borrower	Click the Search icon to select the outstanding finances based on the borrower.

6. Click **Search** to search for the outstanding finances.

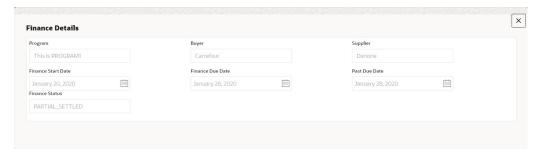
The list the finance records displays in the grid.





- Select the checkbox of the required finances against which the settlement needs to be initiated.
  - Review the details of the selected finances in the following fields.
    - Total Settlement Amount
    - Settlement Amount Allocated
    - Balance To Be Allocated
- 8. Perform any of the following action in the Filter Parameter section.
  - Click Reset to reset the details.
  - Click the hyperlink in the Finance Reference Number column to view more details on the finance. The Finance Details pop-up screen displays.

Figure 4-5 Finance Details



9. Click Initiate Settlement to initiate settlement against the selected finances.

A settlement task is created in the system based on the associated program/product parameters.

# 4.2 Settlement Task

This topic describes the steps to process the settlement record.

When a finance settlement is initiated, a settlement task is created in the system based on the associated program/product parameters.

Settlement Tasks are also initiated automatically basis configuration in the following cases:

- · When a payment is made against an invoice and an underlying finance is outstanding.
- When invoice disbursement proceeds are used to liquidate outstanding pre-shipment finances.

(i) Note

Only authorized users can process and authorize the settlement tasks.

The settlement tasks are segregated into the following data segments:

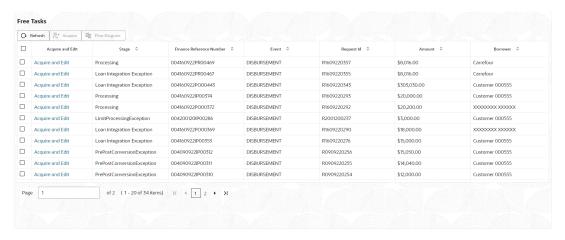
- Basic Info
- Party
- Limits



- Interest
- Charges
- Accounting
- Summary
- On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Tasks.
- 2. Under Tasks, click Finance. Under Finance, click Free Tasks.

The **Finance - Free Tasks** screen displays.

Figure 4-6 Finance - Free Tasks



- 3. Perform any of the below action from the **Free Tasks** screen.
  - Click the Acquire and Edit link beside the required settlement tasks to process.
  - Select the checkbox of the required tasks and click Acquire button above the grid to
    acquire multiple tasks. Once you acquire a task, it is moved to the My Tasks list. You
    can then navigate to My Tasks screen and click Edit link beside the required
    settlement tasks to process.

#### (i) Note

The following information is displayed at the top of the settlement tasks screen for each data segment.

- The reference number, the stage, and the operation name of the transaction acquired for processing.
- Click Remarks button to add any comments about the transaction.
- Click **Documents** button to upload any new documents or view the uploaded documents relevant to the transaction.

## **Basic Info**

4. Click the Acquire and Edit link beside the required settlement tasks.

The **Basic Info** screen displays.



Figure 4-7 Settlement - Basic Info

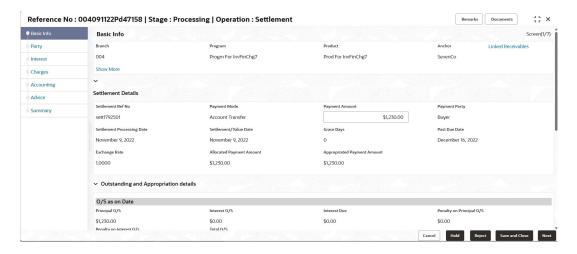
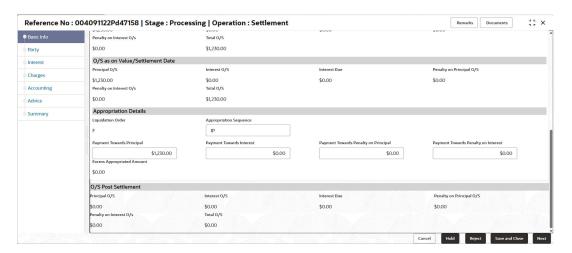


Figure 4-8 Settlement - Basic Info (continued)



5. Specify the fields on Basic Info screen.



Table 4-5 Basic Info - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Basic Info	Basic information of the finance being settled is displayed in this section.
Branch	Displays the branch where the settlement is being processed. By default, the logged-in user's branch is displayed.
Program	Displays the name of the program that is linked to the receivables that have been financed.



Table 4-5 (Cont.) Basic Info - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Product	Displays the name of the product associated with the program.
Anchor	Displays the name of the anchor party in the program.
Linked Receivables/PO	Click the link to view a list of receivables (invoices/debit notes) / PO that have been financed.
Spoke	Displays the name of the counter party in the program.
Start Date	Displays the start date of the finance. By default, it is the current business date.
Tenor	Displays the tenor of the finance. The tenor of the finance gets defaulted basis start date and maturity date.
Maturity Date	Displays the maturity date of the finance. Maturity date gets calculated basis maturity date parameter selected at product level.
Total Receivable/PO Amount	Displays the total amount of the receivables/PO that have been financed.
Finance (%)	Displays the percentage of the total receivable/PO amount that have been financed.
Currency	Displays the currency of the finance amount.
Finance Amount	Displays the amount that has been financed. By default, this field displays the Finance (%) value of the Total Receivable Amount.
Exchange Rate	Displays the exchange rate between the receivable/PO amount currency and the finance currency.
Channel	Displays the source application from which the transaction is initiated.
Settlement Details	Settlement details of the finance is displayed in this section.
Settlement Ref No	Displays the reference number of the settlement.
Payment Mode	Displays the mode of payment of the settlement amount.
Payment Amount	Enter the total amount being paid by the payment party.
Payment Party	Displays the name of the party making the payment.
Settlement Processing Date	Displays the date of processing the settlement.
Settlement / Value Date	Displays the date on which the settlement process was initiated.
Exchange Rate	Displays the exchange rate between the finance currency and the settlement currency.
Appropriated Payment Amount	Displays the amount that is appropriated for the settlement of the selected finances.
Grace Days	Displays the number of days past the finance due date, within which the finance can be settled without penalty.
Past Due Date	Displays the new due date post the initial finance maturity date.
Post-Shipment Disbursement Details	This section is displayed only when post-shipment disbursement proceeds are used to liquidate a pre-shipment finance.
Finance Reference Number	Displays the reference number of the post-shipment finance. Click the hyperlink in the <b>Finance Reference Number</b> field to view more details on the finance
Settlement Processing Date	Displays the date of processing of the settlement.
Finance Start Date	Displays the start date of the finance.
Finance Maturity Date	Displays the maturity date of the finance.
Finance Amount	Displays the amount financed.



Table 4-5 (Cont.) Basic Info - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Pre-Shipment Settlement Amount	Displays the total pre-shipment settlement amount appropriated against the relevant outstanding pre-shipment finances.
Net Disbursed Amount	Displays the disbursed amount from post-shipment finance i.e., Net Disbursed Amount = Post-Shipment Finance Amount – Pre-Shipment Settlement Amount.
Outstanding and Appropriation details	Outstanding and Appropriation details of the finance being settled is displayed in this section.
O/S as on Date	Outstanding details of the finance on the current date is displayed in this section.
Principal O/S	Displays the outstanding principal amount as on the current date.
Interest O/S	Displays the outstanding interest as on the current date.
Interest Due	Displays the monthly interest due as on the current date.
	A hyperlink for the <b>Interest Due</b> field is enabled only if any interest is due. Click the hyperlink to open the pop-up screen to view the datewise calculation details for interest due.
Penalty on Principal O/S	Displays any penalty on the outstanding principal as on the current date.  A hyperlink for the <b>Penalty on Principal O/S</b> field is enabled only if any penalty on principal O/S is applicable. Click the hyperlink to open
	the pop-up screen to view the breakup.
Penalty on Interest O/S	Displays any penalty on the outstanding interest as on the current date.
	A hyperlink for the <b>Penalty on Interest O/S</b> field is enabled only if any penalty on interest O/S is applicable. Click the hyperlink to open the pop-up screen to view the breakup.
Total O/S	Displays the total outstanding amount as on current date.
O/S as on Value/ Settlement Date	Outstanding details of the finance on the settlement date is displayed in this section.
Principal O/S	Displays the outstanding principal as on the settlement date.
Interest O/S	Displays the outstanding interest as on the settlement date.
Interest Due	Displays the monthly interest due as on the settlement date.
	A hyperlink for the <b>Interest Due</b> field is enabled only if any interest is due. Click the hyperlink to open the pop-up screen to view the datewise calculation details for interest due.
Penalty on Principal O/S	Displays any penalty on the outstanding principal as on the settlement date.
	A hyperlink for the <b>Penalty on Principal O/S</b> field is enabled only if any penalty on principal O/S is applicable. Click the hyperlink to open the pop-up screen to view the breakup.
Penalty on Interest O/S	Displays any penalty on the outstanding interest as on the settlement date.
	A hyperlink for the <b>Penalty on Interest O/S</b> field is enabled only if any penalty on interest O/S is applicable. Click the hyperlink to open the pop-up window to view the breakup.
Total O/S	Displays the total outstanding amount as on the settlement date.
Appropriation Details	Appropriation details of the payment towards the finance is displayed in this section.



Table 4-5 (Cont.) Basic Info - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Liquidation Order	Displays the actual order in which the components are liquidated.  I - Interest due Date  E - Penalty on Interest Start Date  O - Penalty on Principal Start Date  F - Finances (Outstanding Finances)  D - Overdue Finance (Delinquent)
Appropriation Sequence Payment Towards	Specify the appropriation sequence of settlement amount.  P - Principal Amount  I - Interest amount  O - Penalty on Principal  E - Penalty on Interest  Specify the amount to be settled against the principal of the finance.
Principal	By default, the value entered as the payment amount in the <b>Settlement Details</b> section is auto-populated.
Payment Towards Interest	Specify the amount to be settled against the interest of the finance.
Payment Towards Penalty on Principal	Specify the amount to be settled against the penalty on principal of the finance.
Payment Towards Penalty on Interest	Specify the amount to be settled against the penalty on interest of the finance.
Interest Refund	Displays any interest amount to be refunded.
O/S Post Settlement	Outstanding details of the finance post settlement is displayed in this section.
Principal O/S	Displays the principal amount that will be outstanding, post settlement.
Interest O/S	Displays the interest amount that will be outstanding, post settlement.
Interest Due	Displays the monthly interest due amount that will be outstanding, post settlement.  A hyperlink for the <b>Interest Due</b> field is enabled only if any interest is due. Click the hyperlink to open the pop-up screen to view the datewise calculation details for interest due.
Penalty on Principal O/S	Displays the penalty on principal amount that will be outstanding, post settlement.  A hyperlink for the <b>Penalty on Principal O/S</b> field is enabled only if any penalty on principal O/S is applicable. Click the hyperlink to open the pop-up window to view the breakup.
Penalty on Interest O/S	Displays the penalty on interest that will be outstanding, post settlement.  A hyperlink for the <b>Penalty on Interest O/S</b> field is enabled only if any penalty on interest O/S is applicable. Click the hyperlink to open the pop-up window to view the breakup.
Total O/S	Displays the total amount that will be outstanding, post settlement.

- **6.** Perform any of the below actions from the **Basic Info** screen.
  - Click **Next** to go to the **Party** screen.
  - Click **Save and Close** to save the details and complete the processing stage of the settlement.





If the **Settlement Auth Required** toggle is enabled for the program associated with the transaction, an approval task is created in the system.

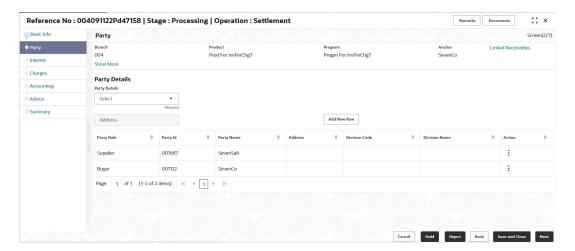
- Click Reject to purge the settlement transaction.
- Click Hold to move the transaction to the Hold Tasks list.
- Click **Cancel** to cancel the transaction and return to the **Free Tasks** screen.

#### **Party**

7. Click Next on the Basic Info tab.

The Party screen displays.

Figure 4-9 Settlement - Party



8. Specify the fields on Party screen.



The fields marked as **Required** are mandatory.

Table 4-6 Party - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Branch	Displays the branch code where the settlement is being processed. By default, the logged-in user's branch code is displayed.
Product	Displays the name of the product associated with the program.
Program	Displays the name of the program that is linked to the receivables that have been financed.
Anchor	Displays the name of the anchor party in the program.
Linked Receivables/PO	Click the link to view a list of receivables (invoices/debit notes) / PO that have been financed.



Table 4-6 (Cont.) Party - Field Description

Field News	Bassinking
Field Name	Description
Spoke	Displays the name of the counter party in the program.
Settlement Processing Date	Displays the date of processing the settlement.
Settlement Date/ Value Date	Displays the actual date of settlement.
Settlement Amount	Displays the amount being settled.
Party Details	Parties with specific roles in the program can be added in this section.
Party Details	Select the party role to be added.
	The available options are:
	• Buyer
	• Supplier
	• Import Factor
	Export Factor     Insurance
	Beneficiary/Counter Party
Course Douby	
Search Party	Click the Search icon to select the party.
Division	Click the Search icon to select the division code of the party.
Address	Specify the address of the selected party.
Add New Row	Click this button to add the selected party to the grid.
Party Role	Displays the role of the party.
Party Id	Displays the unique ID of the party.
Party Name	Displays the name of the party
Address	Displays the address of the party.
Division Code	Displays the division code of the party.
Division Name	Displays the division name of the party.
Action	Click <b>Options</b> icon to view the actions that can be taken on the party record.

- 9. Perform the following steps to take action on the parties in the grid:
  - Click Add New Row to add more parties.
  - Select the record in the grid and click **Options** icon under the **Actions** column and then click **Delete** to remove the party.
- 10. Perform any of the below actions from the **Party** screen.
  - Click Next to go to the Limits screen.
  - Click Save and Close to save the details and complete the processing stage of the settlement.



If the **Settlement Auth Required** toggle is enabled for the program associated with the transaction, an approval task is created in the system.

- Click Back to go to the Basic Info screen.
- Click Reject to purge the settlement transaction.



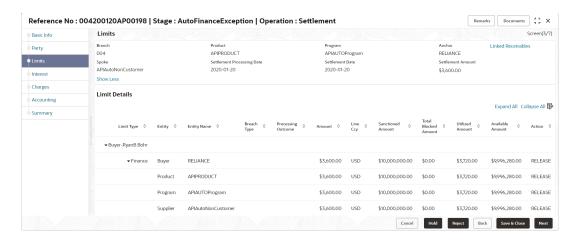
- Click **Hold** to move the transaction to the **Hold Tasks** list.
- Click Cancel to cancel the transaction and return to the Free Tasks screen.

#### Limits

11. Click **Next** on the **Party** tab.

The Limits screen displays.

Figure 4-10 Settlement - Limits



# (i) Note

When the main limits are being utilized, the Limit Details grid displays details related to the main limits. You can add columns related to the adhoc limits by clicking **Add/Remove Columns** icon, if required. If adhoc limits are being utilized, then the Limit Details grid displays the Sanctioned Adhoc Amount, Utilized Adhoc Amount, and Available Adhoc Amount columns. You can add the columns related to the Main Limits using **Add/Remove Columns** icon, if required.

12. Specify the fields on Limits screen.



The fields marked as **Required** are mandatory.

Table 4-7 Limits - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Branch	Displays the branch code where the settlement is being processed. By default, the logged-in user's branch code is displayed.
Product	Displays the name of the product associated with the program.
Program	Displays the name of the program that is linked to the receivables that have been financed.



Table 4-7 (Cont.) Limits - Field Description

Field Nome	Becaulation
Field Name	Description
Anchor	Displays the name of the anchor party in the program.
Linked Receivables/PO	Click the link to view a list of receivables (invoices/debit notes) / PO that have been financed.
Spoke	Displays the name of the counter party in the program.
Settlement Processing Date	Displays the date of processing the settlement.
Settlement / Value Date	Displays the actual date of settlement.
Settlement Amount	Displays the amount being settled.
Limit Details	Limit details of the entity that is being settled is displayed in this section.
Limit Type	Displays a label of the entity and the linked limit type.
Entity	Displays the entity – Anchor / Product / Program / Spoke and so on.
Entity Name	Displays the name of the entity.
Breach Type	Displays any limit breach exception that has occurred with respect to the entity. (Limits Frozen, Amount Breach, Limits Expired).
Processing Outcome	Displays the action that will be taken on the limit as a result of settlement.  Utilize - If the limit is being booked.  Stop - If in case of an exception, the transaction should be blocked and not allowed to be processed further.  Skip - If in case of an exception, the transaction is to be processed without limit booking.  This behavior is driven by the credit limit mapping as configured in product parameters.
Amount	Displays the settlement amount with respect to the entity.
Line Ccy	Displays the currency of the limit line.
Exchange Rate	Displays the exchange rate between the settlement amount currency and the line currency.
Amount (In line CCY)	Displays the settlement amount in line currency.
Sanctioned Amount	Displays the limit amount assigned to the entity, in line currency.
Total Blocked Amount	Displays the total amount that has been blocked for finances that are currently being processed, with respect to the entity.
Total Utilized Amount	Displays the limit amount that has already been utilized.
Available Amount	Displays the limit amount available to the entity for financing.
Line Id	Displays the unique ID of the limit line of the entity.
Action	Displays the action being taken on the amount being settled.
Actual Available Limits	Displays the actual limit available to the entity for financing.

- **13**. Perform any of the below actions from the **Limits** screen.
  - Click Next to go to the Interest screen.
  - Click Save and Close to save the details and complete the processing stage of the settlement.

# (i) Note

If the **Settlement Auth Required** toggle is enabled for the program associated with the transaction, an approval task is created in the system.



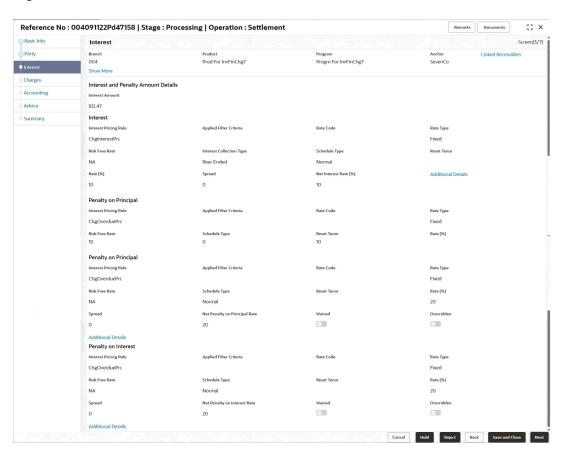
- Click Back to go to the Party screen.
- Click Reject to purge the settlement transaction.
- Click Hold to move the transaction to the Hold Tasks list.
- Click Cancel to cancel the transaction and return to the Free Tasks screen.

#### Interest

14. Click Next on the Limits tab.

The Interest screen displays.

Figure 4-11 Settlement - Interest



15. Specify the fields on Interest screen.



The fields marked as **Required** are mandatory.



**Table 4-8 Interest - Field Description** 

Field Name	Description
Branch	Displays the branch code where the settlement is being processed. By default, the logged-in user's branch code is displayed.
Product	Displays the name of the product associated with the program.
Program	Displays the name of the program that is linked to the receivables that have been financed.
Anchor	Displays the name of the anchor party in the program.
Linked Receivables/PO	Click the link to view a list of receivables (invoices/debit notes) / PO that have been financed.
Spoke	Displays the name of the counter party in the program.
Settlement Processing Date	Displays the date of processing the settlement.
Settlement / Value Date	Displays the actual date of settlement.
Settlement Amount	Displays the amount being settled.
Interest and Penalty Amount Details	Interest, Penalty on Principal, and Penalty on Interest details of the finance is displayed in this section.
Interest Amount	Displays the interest amount that has been calculated.
Penalty on Principal	Displays the penalty on the outstanding principal that has been calculated, if any.
Penalty on Interest	Displays the penalty on the outstanding interest that has been calculated, if any.
Interest Details	Interest details of the finance is displayed in this section.
Rate Pricing Rule	Displays the pricing rule applied for the interest rate.
Applied Filter Criteria	Displays the filter criteria applied for the interest rate.
Rate Code	Displays the unique code associated with the interest rate.
Rate Type	Displays whether the rate is floating or fixed.
Risk Free Rate	Displays whether the interest rate applied is risk free.
Interest Collection Type	Displays the type of interest collection, whether rear-ended, or front-ended.
Schedule Type	Displays whether the interest collection schedule is normal or compounding.
Reset Tenor	Displays the tenor for applying the new interest rate, in case of floating rate type.
Rate (%)	Displays the base rate of interest.
Spread	Displays the spread or margin rate of interest.
Net Interest Rate (%)	Displays the total rate of interest. This is the sum of Rate (%) and Spread.
Additional Details	Click this link to view additional interest details. Interest Additional Details - Displays additional information related to the interest. Interest Payment Schedule - Displays the details of periodic interest dues for monthly rest transactions.
Penalty on Principal Details	Penalty on principal details of the finance is displayed in this section.
Rate Pricing Rule	Displays the pricing rule applied for the interest rate.
Applied Filter Criteria	Displays the filter criteria applied for the interest rate.
Rate Code	Displays the code of the penalty on principal.
Rate Type	Displays whether the rate is floating or fixed.



Table 4-8 (Cont.) Interest - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Risk Free Rate	Displays whether the interest rate applied is risk free.
Schedule Type	Displays whether the interest collection schedule is normal or compounding.
Reset Tenor	Displays the tenor for applying the new interest rate, in case of floating rate type.
Rate (%)	Displays the base rate of interest.
Spread	Displays the spread or margin rate of interest.
Net Penalty on Principal Rate (%)	Displays the total rate of interest. This is the sum of Rate (%) and Spread.
Waived	Switch the toggle ON to sets value of the component to zero.
Overridden	Switch the toggle ON to override the value of the component to a lower amount.
Additional Details	Click this link to view additional details related to penalty on principal.
Penalty on Interest Details	Penalty on interest details of the finance is displayed in this section.
Rate Pricing Rule	Displays the pricing rule applied for the interest rate.
Applied Filter Criteria	Displays the filter criteria applied for the interest rate.
Rate Code	Displays the code of the penalty on the penalty on interest.
Rate Type	Displays whether the rate is floating or fixed.
Risk Free Rate	Displays whether the interest rate applied is risk free.
Schedule Type	Displays whether the interest collection schedule is normal or compounding.
Reset Tenor	Displays the tenor for applying the new interest rate, in case of floating rate type.
Rate (%)	Displays the base rate of interest.
Spread	Displays the spread or margin rate of interest.
Net Penalty on Principal Rate (%)	Displays the total rate of interest. This is the sum of Rate (%) and Spread.
Waived	Switch the toggle ON to sets value of the component to zero.
Overridden	Switch the toggle ON to override the value of the component to a lower amount.
Additional Details	Click this link to view additional details related to penalty on interest.

- **16.** Perform any of the below actions from the **Interest** screen.
  - Click Next to go to the Charges screen.
  - Click **Save and Close** to save the details and complete the processing stage of the settlement.

### Note

If the **Settlement Auth Required** toggle is enabled for the program associated with the transaction, an approval task is created in the system.

- Click Back to go to the Limits screen.
- Click **Reject** to purge the settlement transaction.
- Click Hold to move the transaction to the Hold Tasks list.
- Click Cancel to cancel the transaction and return to the Free Tasks screen.

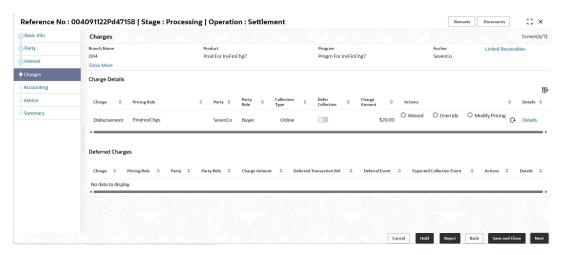


# Charges

17. Click Next on the Interest tab.

The Charges screen displays.

Figure 4-12 Settlement - Charges



18. Specify the fields on Charges screen.



The fields marked as **Required** are mandatory.

**Table 4-9 Charges - Field Description** 

Field Name	Description
Branch	Displays the branch code where the settlement is being processed. By default, the logged-in user's branch code is displayed.
Product	Displays the name of the product associated with the program.
Program	Displays the name of the program that is linked to the receivables that have been financed.
Anchor	Displays the name of the anchor party in the program.
Linked Receivables/PO	Click the link to view a list of receivables (invoices/debit notes) / PO that have been financed.
Spoke	Displays the name of the counter party in the program.
Settlement Processing Date	Displays the date of processing the settlement.
Settlement / Value Date	Displays the actual date of settlement.
Settlement Amount	Displays the amount being settled.
Charge Details	Charge details of the finance is displayed in this section.
Charge	Displays the charge code.



Table 4-9 (Cont.) Charges - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Pricing Rule	Displays the charge pricing rule applicable to the transaction.  This field becomes editable if <b>Modify Pricing</b> radio button is selected in the <b>Actions</b> column.  Click the search icon in the Charge Pricing Rule column. The <b>Charge Pricing Rule</b> pop-up screen displays.  a. Enter complete or partial value in the <b>Charge Pricing Id</b> or
	Charge Pricing Description fields .  b. Click Fetch. The relevant pricing rule(s) displays.
	c. Select the pricing rule to be applied.
Collection Type	Displays the type of charge collection applicable to the transaction.
Party	Displays the ID of the party that has been charged.
Party Role	Displays the role of the party that has been charged.
Defer Collection	Field will be set to No if periodic collection is selected or deferral is not applicable, thereby preventing the user from making changes.
Charge Amount	Displays the amount charged along with the currency. If the charge is <b>Auto Waived</b> , then the charge amount field defaults to zero.
Actions	Displays the below radio buttons.  Waive – Click the button to waive the charge amount. If selected, the charge amount field defaults to zero.  Override – Click the button to modify the existing charge amount. For Charge Collection Type selected as Periodic, the override charge amount entered will be proportionately adjusted across the schedule.  Modify Pricing – Click the button to modify the charge pricing rule. Charge Pricing Rule field becomes editable to select a different pricing rule.  Reset – Click the button to reset to the original calculation of charges and charge pricing rule.  These fields are enabled or disabled as per the charge maintenance parameters set in the Charge Decisioning and the Charge Preferential Pricing screens.
Status	Displays the status of the charge and View Original Charges hyperlink is enabled. Click the link to view the system calculated charges.  This field is displayed only if Auto Waive is selected in the Charge Decisioning screen or if the settlement transaction is viewed from checker login.
Details	Click the link to view the charge details, external pricing details, and schedule of periodic charges.  External Pricing Details tab is displayed only if External Pricing switch is enabled in the Charge Decisioning and Charge Preferential Pricing screens.  Schedule of Periodic Charges tab is displayed only if the Charge Collection Type or Charge Calculation Type is selected as Periodic.
Deferred Charges	This section will lists the charges that have been deferred for the given transaction, as well as any charges deferred in prior transactions within the applicable invoice or finance lifecycle.



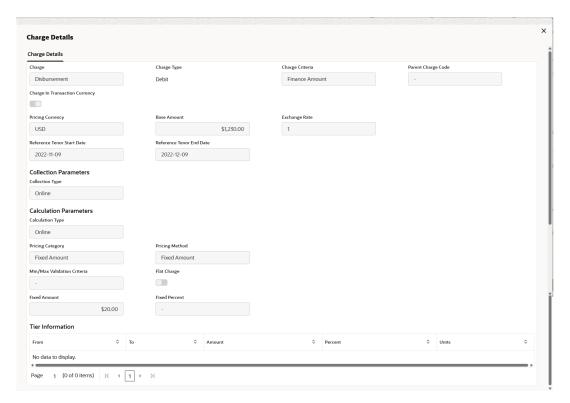
Table 4-9 (Cont.) Charges - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Charge	Displays the charge code of the deferred charge.
Pricing Rule	Displays the charge pricing rule applicable to the deferred charge.
Party	Displays the charge party name.
Party Role	Displays the role of the party.
Charge Amount	Displays the charge amount.
Deferred Transaction Ref	Displays the transaction reference number of the parent transaction from which the deferred charge originated.
Deferral Event	Displays the event of the parent transaction from which the deferred charge originated.
<b>Expected Collection Event</b>	Displays the expected collection event for the deferred charge.
Actions	Displays the below radio buttons.  Waive – Click the button to waive the charge amount. If selected, the charge amount field defaults to zero.  Override – Click the button to modify the existing charge amount. For Charge Collection Type selected as Periodic, the override charge amount entered will be proportionately adjusted across the schedule.  Modify Pricing – Click the button to modify the charge pricing rule. Charge Pricing Rule field becomes editable to select a different pricing rule.  Reset – Click the button to reset to the original calculation of charges and charge pricing rule.  These fields are enabled or disabled as per the charge maintenance parameters set in the Charge Decisioning and the Charge Preferential Pricing screens.

19. Click the link in the **Details** column to view the charge details.



Figure 4-13 Charge Details



- 20. Perform any of the below actions from the Charges screen.
  - Click Next to go to the Accounting screen.
  - Click Save and Close to save the details and complete the processing stage of the settlement.



If the **Settlement Auth Required** toggle is enabled for the program associated with the transaction, an approval task is created in the system.

- Click Back to go to the Interest screen.
- Click Reject to purge the settlement transaction.
- Click Hold to move the transaction to the Hold Tasks list.
- Click **Cancel** to cancel the transaction and return to the **Free Tasks** screen.

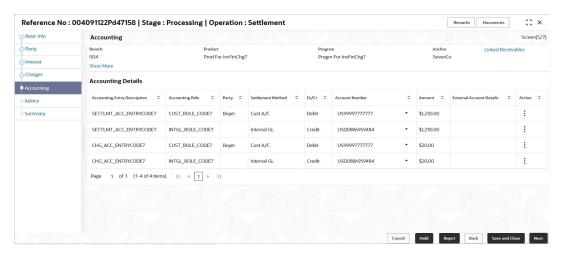
# **Accounting**

21. Click Next on the Charges tab.

The **Accounting** screen displays.



Figure 4-14 Settlement - Accounting



22. Specify the fields on Accounting screen.



The fields marked as **Required** are mandatory.

Table 4-10 Accounting - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Branch	Displays the branch code where the settlement is being processed. By default, the logged-in user's branch code is displayed.
Product	Displays the name of the product associated with the program.
Program	Displays the name of the program that is linked to the receivables that have been financed.
Anchor	Displays the name of the anchor party in the program.
Linked Receivables/PO	Click the link to view a list of receivables (invoices/debit notes) / PO that have been financed.
Spoke	Displays the name of the counter party in the program.
Settlement Processing Date	Displays the date of processing the settlement.
Settlement / Value Date	Displays the actual date of settlement.
Settlement Amount	Displays the amount being settled.
Accounting Details	Accounting details of the finance is displayed in this section.
Accounting Entry Description	Displays the description of the accounting entry.
Accounting Role	Displays the accounting role code associated with the accounting entry.
Party	Displays the name of the party associated with the accounting entry.
Settlement Method	Displays the settlement mode of the transaction.
Dr/Cr	Displays whether the amount is debited or credited for the accounting entry.



Table 4-10 (Cont.) Accounting - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Account Number	Displays the account number involved in the transaction.  Additionally, you can modify the account to be debited/credited during the settlement transaction. The accounts mapped to the
	payment party in the Internal Account Mapping is available for selection.
Amount	Displays the amount of the transaction.
External Account Details	Displays the details of the account if it is an external account. Please note that external account can be modified or input during the processing stage.
Action	Click <b>Options</b> icon to view the actions that can be taken on the party record.

- **23.** Perform any of the below actions from the **Accounting** screen.
  - Click Next to go to the Advice screen.
  - Click Save and Close to save the details and complete the processing stage of the settlement.



If the **Settlement Auth Required** toggle is enabled for the program associated with the transaction, an approval task is created in the system.

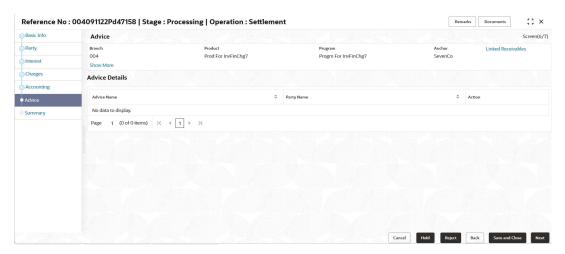
- Click Back to go to the Charges screen.
- Click **Reject** to purge the settlement transaction.
- Click Hold to move the transaction to the Hold Tasks list.
- Click Cancel to cancel the transaction and return to the Free Tasks screen.

### **Advice**

24. Click Next on the Accounting tab.

The Advice screen displays.

Figure 4-15 Advice





25. Specify the fields on Advice screen.

# (i) Note

The fields marked as **Required** are mandatory.

For more information on fields, refer to the field description table.

Table 4-11 Advice - Field Description

Field	Description
Advice Name	Displays the name of the advice.
Party Name	Displays the name of the party to whom advice will be sent.
Action	Click <b>Options</b> icon to view the actions that can be taken on the party record.

- 26. Perform any of the below actions from the Advice screen.
  - Click **Next** to go to the **Summary** screen.
  - Click Save and Close to save the details and complete the processing stage of the settlement.



#### (i) Note

If the **Settlement Auth Required** toggle is enabled for the program associated with the transaction, an approval task is created in the system.

- Click Back to go to the Accounting screen.
- Click **Reject** to purge the settlement transaction.
- Click Hold to move the transaction to the Hold Tasks list.
- Click **Cancel** to cancel the transaction and return to the **Free Tasks** screen.

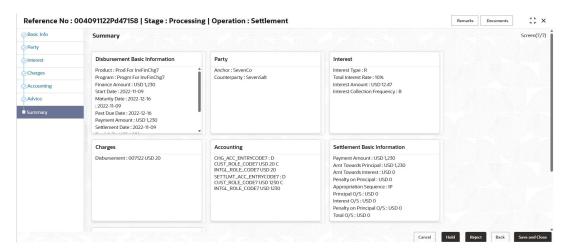
The Settlement Summary tab shows a snapshot of the complete settlement transaction along with finance amount, interest applicable, terms, and so on. A tile is displayed for each data segment.

27. Click Next on the Accounting tab.

The **Summary** screen displays.



Figure 4-16 Settlement - Summary



- 28. Review the details of the settlement transaction and perform any of the following action from the **Summary** screen.
  - Click each tile to view the detailed information of the data segments.
  - Click Save and Close to save the details and complete the processing stage of the settlement.

### (i) Note

If the **Settlement Auth Required** toggle is enabled for the program associated with the transaction, an approval task is created in the system. Once approved, the finance gets settled in the core lending system, which inturn will return the settlement status to Supply Chain Finance system.

- Click Back to go to the Advice screen.
- Click Reject to purge the settlement transaction.
- Click Hold to move the transaction to the Hold Tasks list.
- Click Cancel to cancel the transaction and return to the Free Tasks screen.

# Finance Amendment

This topic describes the steps to initiate amendment and processing the amendment task.

Finance Amendment functionality enables the banks to modify the tenor, and reprice the interest of the outstanding finances/loans for corporate customers in the supply chain finance system. Based on your role, you can initiate the amendment of a loan on behalf of the corporate customer. The amendment request can be initiated from the **Finance Amendment** screen.

The Finance Amendment process involves the below steps:

- Initiate Finance Amendment
  - This topic describes the systematic instruction to initiate finance amendment to modify the outstanding finances/loans for corporate customers.
- Amendment Task
   This topic describes the steps to process the amendment record.

# **5.1 Initiate Finance Amendment**

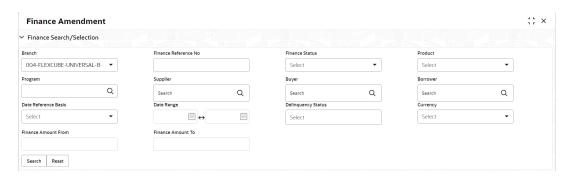
This topic describes the systematic instruction to initiate finance amendment to modify the outstanding finances/loans for corporate customers.

The user can manually initiate an amendment transaction in the **Finance Amendment** screen. You can search and select the finances to amend, and initiate the amendment process. Multiple finances can be selected for amendment. For each finance reference number you select, an amendment transaction is created under **Free Tasks**.

 On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Finance Amendment.

The Finance Amendment screen displays.

Figure 5-1 Finance Amendment - Finance Search/Selection



2. Specify the fields on **Finance Search/Selection** section to search for the finances against which amendment needs to be initiated.





# (i) Note

The fields marked as **Required** are mandatory.

For more information on fields, refer to the field description table.

Table 5-1 Finance Search/Selection - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Branch	Select the account branch.
Finance Reference No	Specify the reference number to search for the finance.
Finance Status	Select the current status of the finance.
	The available options are:  Disbursed  Disbursement Reversed  Partial Settled
Product	Select the product for which the finance is processed.
Program	Click the Search icon to select the program for which the finance is processed.
Supplier	Click the Search icon to select the supplier party of the finance.
Buyer	Click the Search icon to select the buyer party of the finance.
Borrower	Click the Search icon to select the borrower.
Date Reference Basis	Select the value to specify the reference for date criteria. The available options are: Finance Date Finance Maturity Date Processing Date
Date Range	Click the Calendar icons and select the required starting and ending ranges for the date to search for the finance.  This field is enabled only if any value is selected in the <b>Date Reference Basis</b> field.
Delinquency Status	Select the current delinquency status of the finance.  The available options are:  Normal  Doubtful  Past Due Obligation  Watch Status  Non-Accrual Basis  Pending Closure Commitments  Loss  Write Off
Currency	Select the currency of the finance to search for.
Finance Amount From	Specify the start of the amount-range within which the finance needs to be searched.
Finance Amount To	Specify the end of the amount-range within which the finance needs to be searched.

Click Search after you specify the required details in the Finance Search/Selection section.



The **List of Finances** section displays with the list of finances in the grid.

# Figure 5-2 List of Finances

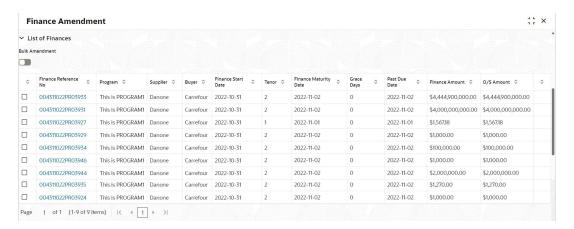


Table 5-2 List of Finances - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Bulk Amendment	Switch the toggle ON to initiate amendment for multiple finances together.
Finance Reference No	Displays the reference number of the finance.
Program	Displays the name of the program that is linked to the receivables that have been financed.
Supplier	Displays the name of the supplier for the finance.
Buyer	Displays the name of the buyer for the finance.
Finance Start Date	Displays the start date of the finance.
Tenor	Displays the tenor of the finance.
Finance Maturity Date	Displays the maturity date of the finance.
Grace Days	Displays the number of days past the finance due date, within which the finance can be settled without penalty.
Past Due Date	Displays the new due date post the initial finance maturity date.
Finance Amount	Displays the amount that has been financed.
O/S Amount	Displays the total outstanding amount of the finance.
View Amendments	Click the hyperlink to view the modified details of the finance amendment transaction.
	This field column appears only if any finance(s) is modified for amendment.
Amendment section	This field displays the following fields to modify the finance details to initiate amendment.
Maturity Date	Enter the new maturity date of the finance. This date has to be greater than the current business date.
Grace Days	Displays the number of days past the finance due date, within which the finance can be settled without penalty.
	This field is displayed only if a single finance is selected.
Past Due Date	Displays the new due date post the initial finance maturity date.
	This field is displayed only if a single finance is selected.



Table 5-2 (Cont.) List of Finances - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Total Finances	Displays the total number of the finance(s) amended.
Total Finance Amount	Displays the total finance amount of the finance(s) amended.

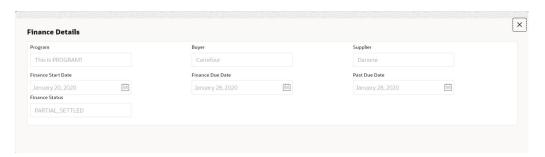
 Click the checkbox to select the required finance(s) for which amendment needs to be initiated. Switch the **Bulk Amendment** toggle ON to amend the maturity date for multiple finances.



Bulk Amendment can be initiated only to modify the tenor of the finances. Interest tab will not get displayed if the **Bulk Amendment** toggle is enabled.

 Click the hyperlink in the Finance Reference Number column to view more details on the finance. The Finance Details pop-up screen displays.

Figure 5-3 Finance Details



5. The details of the selected finance gets auto-populated in the **Basic Information** tab to modify the tenor of the finance and/or modify the value date for the interest repricing.

Figure 5-4 Finance Amendment - Basic Information



**Table 5-3** Basic Information - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Maturity Date	Specify the new maturity date of the finance. This date has to be greater than the current business date.



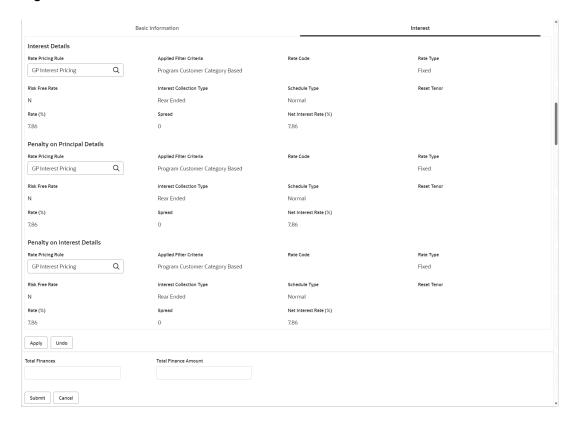
Table 5-3 (Cont.) Basic Information - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Value Date	Specify the new value date for the interest rate to be applied. By default, this field displays the current business date. The value date should be lesser than or equal to the current business date. This field is displayed only if a single finance is selected.
	<b>Note:</b> This date can be updated only till the value date of the immediate previous transaction.
	<b>Note:</b> Value dated amendment is not allowed for <b>Rate Type Change</b> of compound interest loans.
Grace Days	Displays the number of days past the finance due date, within which the finance can be settled without penalty.
	This field is displayed only if a single finance is selected.
Past Due Date	Displays the new due date post the initial finance maturity date.
	This field is displayed only if a single finance is selected.
Total Finances	Displays the total number of the finance(s) amended.
Total Finance Amount	Displays the total finance amount of the finance(s) amended.

6. Click the **Interest** tab to modify the pricing rate of the interest or penalty components.

The details of the selected finance gets auto-populated in the **Interest** tab.

Figure 5-5 Finance Amendment - Interest





**Table 5-4** Interest - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Interest Details	Interest details of the selected finance is displayed in this section.
Rate Pricing Rule	Click the Search icon and select the pricing rule to be applied for the interest rate.
Applied Filter Criteria	Displays the filter criteria applied for the interest rate.
	If the Rate Pricing Rule is changed, then this fields displays NA.
Rate Code	Displays the unique code associated with the interest rate.
Rate Type	Displays whether the rate is floating or fixed.
Risk Free Rate	Displays whether the interest rate applied is risk free.
Interest Collection Type	Displays the type of interest collection, whether rear-ended, or front-ended.
Schedule Type	Displays whether the interest collection schedule is normal or compounding.
Reset Tenor	Displays the tenor for applying the new interest rate, in case of floating rate type.
Rate (%)	Displays the base rate of interest.
Spread	Displays the spread or margin rate of interest.
Net Interest Rate (%)	Displays the total rate of interest. This is the sum of Rate (%) and Spread.
Penalty on Principal Details	Penalty on principal details of the selected finance is displayed in this section.
Rate Pricing Rule	Click the search icon and select the pricing rule to be applied for the interest rate.
Applied Filter Criteria	Displays the filter criteria applied for the interest rate.
	If the Rate Pricing Rule is changed, then this fields displays NA.
Rate Code	Displays the code of the penalty on principal.
Rate Type	Displays whether the rate is floating or fixed.
Risk Free Rate	Displays whether the interest rate applied is risk free.
Schedule Type	Displays whether the interest collection schedule is normal or compounding.
Reset Tenor	Displays the tenor for applying the new interest rate, in case of floating rate type.
Rate (%)	Displays the base rate of interest.
Spread	Displays the spread or margin rate of interest.
Net Interest Rate (%)	Displays the total rate of interest. This is the sum of Rate (%) and Spread.
Penalty on Interest Details	Penalty on interest details of the selected finance is displayed in this section.
Rate Pricing Rule	Click the Search icon and select the pricing rule to be applied for the interest rate.
Applied Filter Criteria	Displays the filter criteria applied for the interest rate.
	If the Rate Pricing Rule is changed, then this fields displays NA.
Rate Code	Displays the code of the penalty on the penalty on interest.
Rate Type	Displays whether the rate is floating or fixed.
Risk Free Rate	Displays whether the interest rate applied is risk free.
Schedule Type	Displays whether the interest collection schedule is normal or compounding.



Table 5-4 (Cont.) Interest - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Reset Tenor	Displays the tenor for applying the new interest rate, in case of floating rate type.
Rate (%)	Displays the base rate of interest.
Spread	Displays the spread or margin rate of interest.
Net Interest Rate (%)	Displays the total rate of interest. This is the sum of Rate (%) and Spread.

- 7. Modify the Maturity Date, Value Date, and Rate Pricing Rule for the selected finance(s).
- 8. Click **Apply** to modify the finances.
  - Click Undo to revert the changes.
  - Click View Amendment Details hyperlink next to the finance(s) to review the previous and new values of the finances that are modified.

The View Amendments Details screen displays.

Figure 5-6 View Amendment Details - Basic Information

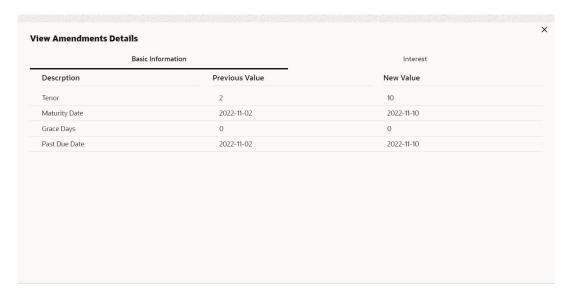
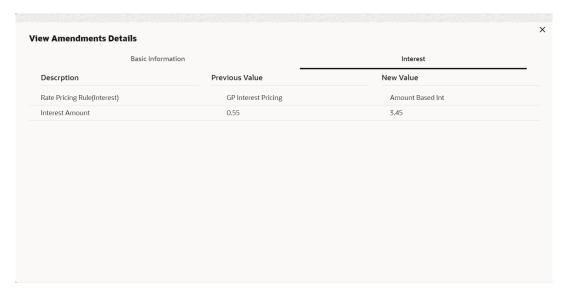




Figure 5-7 View Amendment Details - Interest



- 9. Click **Submit** to initiate amendment against the selected finances.
  - Click Cancel to cancel the amendment initiation process.

An amendment task is created in the system based on the associated program/product parameters.

# 5.2 Amendment Task

This topic describes the steps to process the amendment record.

When a finance amendment is initiated, an amendment task is created in the system based on the associated program/product parameters.



Only authorized users can process and authorize the amendment tasks.

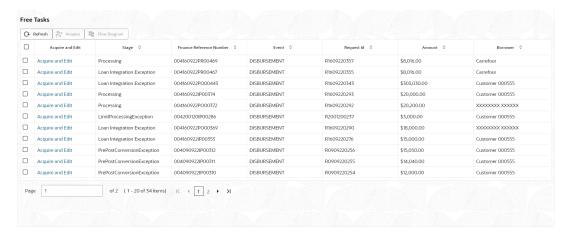
The amendment tasks are segregated into the following data segments:

- Basic Info
- Party
- Interest
- Charges
- Accounting
- Amendment
- Limits
- Summary
- On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Tasks.
- 2. Under Tasks, click Finance. Under Finance, click Free Tasks.



The Finance - Free Tasks screen displays.

Figure 5-8 Finance - Free Tasks



- 3. Perform any of the below action from the Free Tasks screen.
  - Click the Acquire and Edit link beside the required amendment tasks to process.
  - Select the checkbox of the required tasks and click Acquire button above the grid to
    acquire multiple tasks. Once you acquire a task, it is moved to the My Tasks list. You
    can then navigate to My Tasks screen and click Edit link beside the required
    amendment tasks to process.

# Note

The following information is displayed at the top of the amendment tasks screen for each data segment.

- The reference number, the stage, and the operation name of the transaction acquired for processing.
- Click Remarks button to add any comments about the transaction.
- Click **Documents** button to upload any new documents or view the uploaded documents relevant to the transaction.

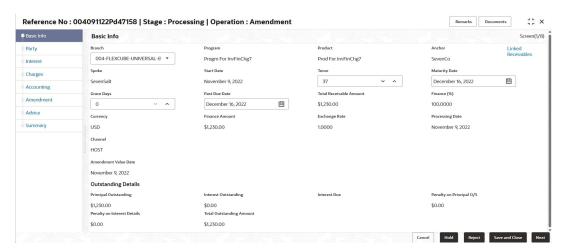
#### **Basic Info**

4. Click the **Acquire and Edit** link beside the required amendment tasks.

The **Basic Info** screen displays.



Figure 5-9 Amendment - Basic Info



Specify the fields on Basic Info screen.

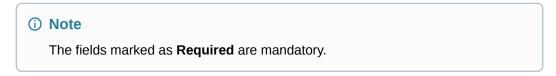


Table 5-5 Basic Info - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Branch	Displays the branch where the amendment is being processed. By default, the logged-in user's branch is displayed.
Program	Displays the name of the program that is linked to the receivables that have been financed.
Product	Displays the name of the product associated with the program.
Anchor	Displays the name of the anchor party in the program.
Linked Receivables/PO	Click the link to view the list of receivables (invoices/debit notes) / PO that have been financed.
Spoke	Displays the name of the counter party in the program.
Start Date	Displays the start date of the finance. By default, it is the current business date.
Tenor	Displays the tenor of the finance. The tenor of the finance gets defaulted basis start date and maturity date.
Maturity Date	Displays the maturity date of the finance. Maturity date gets calculated basis maturity date parameter selected at product level.
View Disbursement Limits	Click the link to view the details of the disbursement limits.
	This field will not be displayed if there is a limit processing exception.
Grace Days	Displays the number of days past the finance due date, within which the finance can be settled without penalty.
Past Due Date	Displays the new due date post the initial finance maturity date.
Total Receivable/PO Amount	Displays the total amount of the receivables/PO that have been financed.



Table 5-5 (Cont.) Basic Info - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Finance (%)	Displays the percentage of the total receivable/PO amount that have been financed.
Currency	Displays the currency of the finance.
Finance Amount	Displays the amount that has been financed. By default, this field displays the Finance (%) value of the Total Receivable Amount.
Exchange Rate	Displays the exchange rate between the receivable/PO amount currency and the finance currency.
Processing Date	Displays the date of processing of the amendment.
Channel	Displays the source application from which the transaction is initiated.
Amendment Value Date	Displays the new value date by when the updated interest rate gets applied.
Outstanding Details	Outstanding details of the finance is displayed in this section.
Principal Outstanding	Displays the outstanding principal amount as on the current date.
Interest Outstanding	Displays the outstanding interest as on the current date.
Interest Due	Displays the monthly interest due as on the current date.
Penalty on Principal O/s	Displays any penalty on the outstanding principal as on the current date.
Penalty on Interest Outstanding	Displays any penalty on the outstanding interest as on the current date.
Total O/S	Displays the total outstanding amount as on current date.

- Perform any of the below actions from the **Basic Info** screen.
  - Click Next to go to the Party screen.
  - Click Save and Close to save the details and complete the processing stage of the amendment.



#### (i) Note

If the Amendment Auth Required toggle is enabled for the program associated with the transaction, an approval task is created in the system.

- Click **Reject** to purge the amendment transaction.
- Click Hold to move the transaction to the Hold Tasks list.
- Click **Cancel** to cancel the transaction and return to the **Free Tasks** screen.

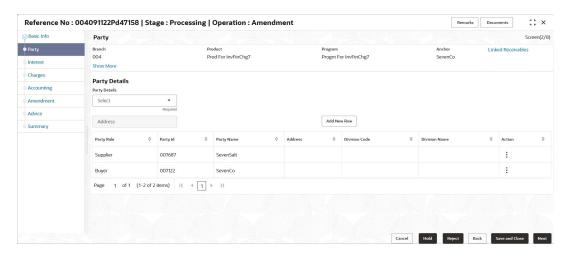
# **Party**

7. Click Next on the Basic Info tab.

The Party screen displays.



Figure 5-10 Amendment - Party



8. Specify the fields on **Party** screen.



**Table 5-6 Party - Field Description** 

Field Name	Description
Branch	Displays the branch where the amendment is being processed. By default, the logged-in user's branch is displayed.
Program	Displays the name of the program that is linked to the receivables that have been financed.
Product	Displays the name of the product associated with the program.
Anchor	Displays the name of the anchor party in the program.
Linked Receivables/PO	Click the link to view the list of receivables (invoices/debit notes) / PO that have been financed.
Spoke	Displays the name of the counter party in the program.
Start Date	Displays the start date of the finance. By default, it is the current business date.
Tenor	Displays the tenor of the finance. The tenor of the finance gets defaulted basis start date and maturity date.
Maturity Date	Displays the maturity date of the finance. Maturity date gets calculated basis maturity date parameter selected at product level.
Grace Days	Displays the number of days past the finance due date, within which the finance can be settled without penalty.
Past Due Date	Displays the new due date post the initial finance maturity date.
Total Receivable/PO Amount	Displays the total amount of the receivables/PO that have been financed.
Finance (%)	Displays the percentage of the total receivable/PO amount that have been financed.
Currency	Displays the currency of the finance.



Table 5-6 (Cont.) Party - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Finance Amount	Displays the amount that has been financed. By default, this field displays the Finance (%) value of the Total Receivable Amount.
Exchange Rate	Displays the exchange rate between the receivable/PO amount currency and the finance currency.
Processing Date	Displays the date of processing of the amendment.
Party Details	Parties with specific roles in the program can be added in this section.
Party Details	Select the party role to be added.  The available options are:  Buyer  Supplier  Import Factor  Export Factor  Insurance  Beneficiary/Counter Party
Search Party	Click the Search icon to select the party.
Division	Click the Search icon to select the division code of the party.
Address	Specify the address of the selected party.
Add New Row	Click this button to add the selected party to the grid.
Party Role	Displays the role of the party.
Party Id	Displays the unique ID of the party.
Party Name	Displays the name of the party
Address	Displays the address of the party.
Division Code	Displays the division code of the party.
Division Name	Displays the division name of the party.
Action	Click <b>Options</b> icon to view the actions that can be taken on the party record.

- 9. Perform the following steps to take action on the parties in the grid:
  - Click Add New Row to add more parties.
  - Select the record in the grid and click **Options** icon under the **Actions** column and then click **Delete** to remove the party.
- **10.** Perform any of the below actions from the **Party** screen.
  - Click Next to go to the Interest screen.
  - Click Save and Close to save the details and complete the processing stage of the amendment.

#### Note

If the **Amendment Auth Required** toggle is enabled for the program associated with the transaction, an approval task is created in the system.

- Click Back to go to the Basic Info screen.
- Click Reject to purge the amendment transaction.
- Click Hold to move the transaction to the Hold Tasks list.



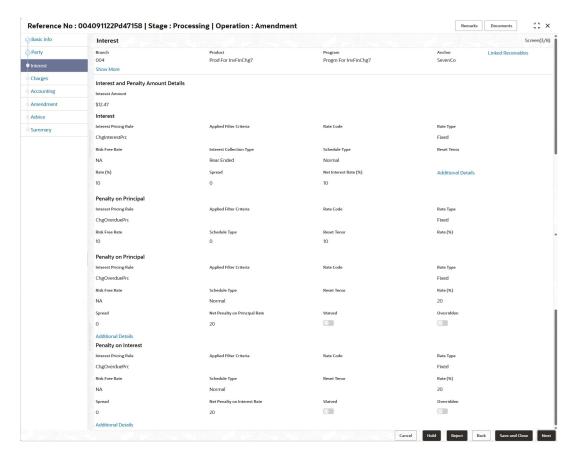
Click **Cancel** to cancel the transaction and return to the **Free Tasks** screen.

#### **Interest**

11. Click Next on the Party tab.

The Interest screen displays.

Figure 5-11 Amendment - Interest



12. Specify the fields on Interest screen.



The fields marked as **Required** are mandatory.

Table 5-7 Interest - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Branch	Displays the branch where the amendment is being processed. By default, the logged-in user's branch is displayed.
Program	Displays the name of the program that is linked to the receivables that have been financed.
Product	Displays the name of the product associated with the program.



Table 5-7 (Cont.) Interest - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Anchor	Displays the name of the anchor party in the program.
Linked Receivables/PO	Click the link to view the list of receivables (invoices/debit notes) / PO that have been financed.
Spoke	Displays the name of the counter party in the program.
Start Date	Displays the start date of the finance. By default, it is the current business date.
Tenor	Displays the tenor of the finance. The tenor of the finance gets defaulted basis start date and maturity date.
Maturity Date	Displays the maturity date of the finance. Maturity date gets calculated basis maturity date parameter selected at product level.
Grace Days	Displays the number of days past the finance due date, within which the finance can be settled without penalty.
Past Due Date	Displays the new due date post the initial finance maturity date.
Total Receivable/PO Amount	Displays the total amount of the receivables/PO that have been financed.
Finance (%)	Displays the percentage of the total receivable/PO amount that have been financed.
Currency	Displays the currency of the finance.
Finance Amount	Displays the amount that has been financed. By default, this field displays the Finance (%) value of the Total Receivable Amount.
Exchange Rate	Displays the exchange rate between the receivable/PO amount currency and the finance currency.
Processing Date	Displays the date of processing of the amendment.
Interest and Penalty Amount Details	Interest, Penalty on Principal, and Penalty on Interest details of the finance is displayed in this section.
Interest Amount	Displays the interest amount that has been calculated.
Penalty on Principal	Displays the penalty on the outstanding principal that has been calculated, if any.
Penalty on Interest	Displays the penalty on the outstanding interest that has been calculated, if any.
Interest Details	Interest details of the finance is displayed in this section.
Rate Pricing Rule	Displays the pricing rule applied for the interest rate.
Applied Filter Criteria	Displays the filter criteria applied for the interest rate.
Rate Code	Displays the unique code associated with the interest rate.
Rate Type	Displays whether the rate is floating or fixed.
Risk Free Rate	Displays whether the interest rate applied is risk free.
Interest Collection Type	Displays the type of interest collection, whether rear-ended, or front-ended.
Schedule Type	Displays whether the interest collection schedule is normal or compounding.
Reset Tenor	Displays the tenor for applying the new interest rate, in case of floating rate type.
Rate (%)	Displays the base rate of interest.
Spread	Displays the spread or margin rate of interest.
Net Interest Rate (%)	Displays the total rate of interest. This is the sum of Rate (%) and Spread.



Table 5-7 (Cont.) Interest - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Additional Details	Click this link to view additional interest details.
	The Interest Additional Details pop-up screen displays the additional information related to the interest.
Penalty on Principal Details	Penalty on principal details of the finance is displayed in this section.
Rate Pricing Rule	Displays the pricing rule applied for the interest rate.
Applied Filter Criteria	Displays the filter criteria applied for the interest rate.
Rate Code	Displays the code of the penalty on principal.
Rate Type	Displays whether the rate is floating or fixed.
Risk Free Rate	Displays whether the interest rate applied is risk free.
Schedule Type	Displays whether the interest collection schedule is normal or compounding.
Reset Tenor	Displays the tenor for applying the new interest rate, in case of floating rate type.
Rate (%)	Displays the base rate of interest.
Spread	Displays the spread or margin rate of interest.
Net Penalty on Principal Rate (%)	Displays the total rate of interest. This is the sum of Rate (%) and Spread.
Waived	Switch the toggle ON to sets value of the component to zero.
Overridden	Switch the toggle ON to override the value of the component to a lower amount.
Additional Details	Click this link to view additional details related to penalty on principal.
Penalty on Interest Details	Penalty on interest details of the finance is displayed in this section.
Rate Pricing Rule	Displays the pricing rule applied for the interest rate.
Applied Filter Criteria	Displays the filter criteria applied for the interest rate.
Rate Code	Displays the code of the penalty on the penalty on interest.
Rate Type	Displays whether the rate is floating or fixed.
Risk Free Rate	Displays whether the interest rate applied is risk free.
Schedule Type	Displays whether the interest collection schedule is normal or compounding.
Reset Tenor	Displays the tenor for applying the new interest rate, in case of floating rate type.
Rate (%)	Displays the base rate of interest.
Spread	Displays the spread or margin rate of interest.
Net Penalty on Principal Rate (%)	Displays the total rate of interest. This is the sum of Rate (%) and Spread.
Waived	Switch the toggle ON to sets value of the component to zero.
Overridden	Switch the toggle ON to override the value of the component to a lower amount.
Additional Details	Click this link to view additional details related to penalty on interest.

- **13**. Perform any of the below actions from the **Interest** screen.
  - Click Next to go to the Charges screen.
  - Click Save and Close to save the details and complete the processing stage of the amendment.





If the **Amendment Auth Required** toggle is enabled for the program associated with the transaction, an approval task is created in the system.

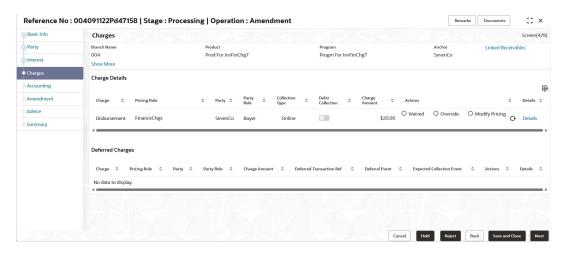
- Click Back to go to the Party screen.
- Click Reject to purge the amendment transaction.
- Click Hold to move the transaction to the Hold Tasks list.
- Click **Cancel** to cancel the transaction and return to the **Free Tasks** screen.

### Charges

14. Click Next on the Interest tab.

The Charges screen displays.

Figure 5-12 Amendment - Charges



15. Specify the fields on Charges screen.

(i) Note

The fields marked as **Required** are mandatory.

Table 5-8 Charges - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Branch	Displays the branch where the amendment is being processed. By default, the logged-in user's branch is displayed.
Program	Displays the name of the program that is linked to the receivables that have been financed.
Product	Displays the name of the product associated with the program.
Anchor	Displays the name of the anchor party in the program.



Table 5-8 (Cont.) Charges - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Linked Receivables/PO	Click the link to view the list of receivables (invoices/debit notes) / PO that have been financed.
Spoke	Displays the name of the counter party in the program.
Start Date	Displays the start date of the finance. By default, it is the current business date.
Tenor	Displays the tenor of the finance. The tenor of the finance gets defaulted basis start date and maturity date.
Maturity Date	Displays the maturity date of the finance. Maturity date gets calculated basis maturity date parameter selected at product level.
Grace Days	Displays the number of days past the finance due date, within which the finance can be settled without penalty.
Past Due Date	Displays the new due date post the initial finance maturity date.
Total Receivable/PO Amount	Displays the total amount of the receivables/PO that have been financed.
Finance (%)	Displays the percentage of the total receivable/PO amount that have been financed.
Currency	Displays the currency of the finance.
Finance Amount	Displays the amount that has been financed. By default, this field displays the Finance (%) value of the Total Receivable Amount.
Exchange Rate	Displays the exchange rate between the receivable/PO amount currency and the finance currency.
Processing Date	Displays the date of processing of the amendment.
Charge Details	Charge details of the finance is displayed in this section.
Charge	Displays the charge code.
Pricing Rule	Displays the charge pricing rule applicable to the transaction.
	This field becomes editable if <b>Modify Pricing</b> radio button is selected in the <b>Actions</b> column.
	Click the search icon in the Charge Pricing Rule column. The Charge Pricing Rule pop-up screen displays.
	a. Enter complete or partial value in the Charge Pricing Id or Charge Pricing Description fields .
	b. Click <b>Fetch</b> . The relevant pricing rule(s) displays.
	c. Select the pricing rule to be applied.
Collection Type	Displays the type of charge collection applicable to the transaction.
Defer Collection	Field will be set to No if periodic collection is selected or deferral is not applicable, thereby preventing the user from making changes.
Party	Displays the ID of the party that has been charged.
Party Role	Displays the role of the party that has been charged.
Charge Amount	Displays the amount charged along with the currency. If the charge is <b>Auto Waived</b> , then the charge amount field defaults to zero.



Table 5-8 (Cont.) Charges - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Field Name	Description
Actions	Displays the below radio buttons.  Waive – Click the button to waive the charge amount. If selected, the charge amount field defaults to zero.  Override – Click the button to modify the existing charge amount . For Charge Collection Type selected as Periodic, the override charge amount entered will be proportionately adjusted across the schedule.  Modify Pricing – Click the button to modify the charge pricing rule. Charge Pricing Rule field becomes editable to select a different pricing rule.  Reset – Click the button to reset to the original calculation of
	charges and charge pricing rule.  These fields are enabled or disabled as per the charge maintenance parameters set in the Charge Decisioning and the Charge Preferential Pricing screens.
Status	Displays the status of the charge and View Original Charges hyperlink is enabled. Click the link to view the system calculated charges.  This field is displayed only if Auto Waive is selected in the Charge Decisioning screen or if the amendment transaction is viewed from checker login.
Details	Click the link to view the charge details, external pricing details, and schedule of periodic charges.  External Pricing Details tab is displayed only if External Pricing switch is enabled in the Charge Decisioning and Charge
	Preferential Pricing screens.  Schedule of Periodic Charges tab is displayed only if the Charge Collection Type or Charge Calculation Type is selected as Periodic.
Deferred Charges	This section will lists the charges that have been deferred for the given transaction, as well as any charges deferred in prior transactions within the applicable invoice or finance lifecycle
Charge	Displays the charge code of the deferred charge.
Pricing Rule	Displays the charge pricing rule applicable to the deferred charge.
Party	Displays the charge party name.
Party Role	Displays the role of the party.
Charge Amount	Displays the charge amount.
Deferred Transaction Ref	Displays the transaction reference number of the parent transaction from which the deferred charge originated.
Deferral Event	Displays the event of the parent transaction from which the deferred charge originated.
Expected Collection Event	Displays the expected collection event for the deferred charge.

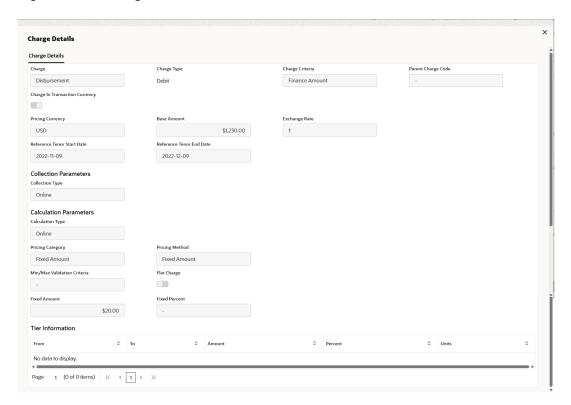


Table 5-8 (Cont.) Charges - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Actions	Displays the below radio buttons.  Waive – Click the button to waive the charge amount. If selected, the charge amount field defaults to zero.  Override – Click the button to modify the existing charge amount. For Charge Collection Type selected as Periodic, the override charge amount entered will be proportionately adjusted across the schedule.
	Modify Pricing – Click the button to modify the charge pricing rule. Charge Pricing Rule field becomes editable to select a different pricing rule.
	Reset – Click the button to reset to the original calculation of charges and charge pricing rule.
	These fields are enabled or disabled as per the charge maintenance parameters set in the <b>Charge Decisioning</b> and the <b>Charge Preferential Pricing</b> screens.

16. Click the link in the **Details** column to view the charge details.

Figure 5-13 Charge Details



- 17. Perform any of the below actions from the Charges screen.
  - Click **Next** to go to the **Accounting** screen.
  - Click Save and Close to save the details and complete the processing stage of the amendment.





If the **Amendment Auth Required** toggle is enabled for the program associated with the transaction, an approval task is created in the system.

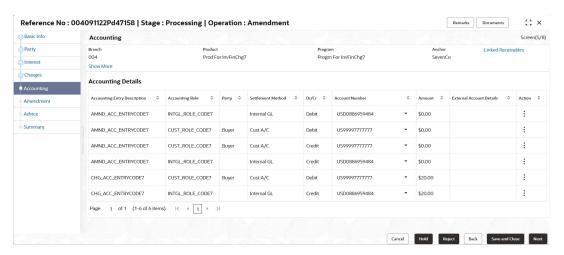
- Click Back to go to the Interest screen.
- Click Reject to purge the amendment transaction.
- Click Hold to move the transaction to the Hold Tasks list.
- Click Cancel to cancel the transaction and return to the Free Tasks screen.

### **Accounting**

18. Click Next on the Charges tab.

The **Accounting** screen displays.

Figure 5-14 Amendment - Accounting



19. Specify the fields on **Accounting** screen.

① Note

The fields marked as **Required** are mandatory.

Table 5-9 Accounting - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Branch	Displays the branch where the amendment is being processed. By default, the logged-in user's branch is displayed.
Program	Displays the name of the program that is linked to the receivables that have been financed.
Product	Displays the name of the product associated with the program.
Anchor	Displays the name of the anchor party in the program.



Table 5-9 (Cont.) Accounting - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Linked Receivables/PO	Click the link to view the list of receivables (invoices/debit notes) / PO that have been financed.
Spoke	Displays the name of the counter party in the program.
Start Date	Displays the start date of the finance. By default, it is the current business date.
Tenor	Displays the tenor of the finance. The tenor of the finance gets defaulted basis start date and maturity date.
Maturity Date	Displays the maturity date of the finance. Maturity date gets calculated basis maturity date parameter selected at product level.
Grace Days	Displays the number of days past the finance due date, within which the finance can be settled without penalty.
Past Due Date	Displays the new due date post the initial finance maturity date.
Total Receivable/PO Amount	Displays the total amount of the receivables/PO that have been financed.
Finance (%)	Displays the percentage of the total receivable/PO amount that have been financed.
Currency	Displays the currency of the finance.
Finance Amount	Displays the amount that has been financed. By default, this field displays the Finance (%) value of the Total Receivable Amount.
Exchange Rate	Displays the exchange rate between the receivable/PO amount currency and the finance currency.
Processing Date	Displays the date of processing of the amendment.
Accounting Details	Accounting details of the finance is displayed in this section.
Accounting Entry Description	Displays the description of the accounting entry.
Accounting Role	Displays the accounting role code associated with the accounting entry.
Party	Displays the name of the party associated with the accounting entry.
Settlement Method	Displays the amendment mode of the transaction.
Dr/Cr	Displays whether the amount is debited or credited for the accounting entry.
Account Number	Displays the account number involved in the transaction.
Amount	Displays the amount of the transaction.
External Account Details	Displays the details of the account if it is an external account.
Action	Click <b>Options</b> icon to view the actions that can be taken on the party record.

- **20.** Perform any of the below actions from the **Accounting** screen.
  - Click Next to go to the Amendment screen.
  - Click **Save and Close** to save the details and complete the processing stage of the amendment.

## (i) Note

If the **Amendment Auth Required** toggle is enabled for the program associated with the transaction, an approval task is created in the system.

Click Back to go to the Charges screen.



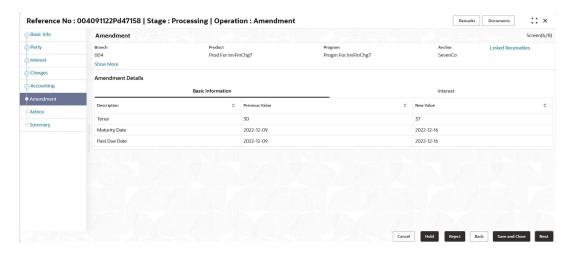
- Click Reject to purge the amendment transaction.
- Click Hold to move the transaction to the Hold Tasks list.
- Click **Cancel** to cancel the transaction and return to the **Free Tasks** screen.

### **Amendment**

21. Click Next on the Accounting tab.

The **Amendment** screen displays.

Figure 5-15 Amendment - Amendment



22. Specify the fields on Amendment screen.

(i) Note

The fields marked as **Required** are mandatory.

Table 5-10 Amendment - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Branch	Displays the branch where the amendment is being processed. By default, the logged-in user's branch is displayed.
Program	Displays the name of the program that is linked to the receivables that have been financed.
Product	Displays the name of the product associated with the program.
Anchor	Displays the name of the anchor party in the program.
Linked Receivables/PO	Click the link to view the list of receivables (invoices/debit notes) / PO that have been financed.
Spoke	Displays the name of the counter party in the program.
Start Date	Displays the start date of the finance. By default, it is the current business date.
Tenor	Displays the tenor of the finance. The tenor of the finance gets defaulted basis start date and maturity date.



Table 5-10 (Cont.) Amendment - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Maturity Date	Displays the maturity date of the finance. Maturity date gets calculated basis maturity date parameter selected at product level.
Grace Days	Displays the number of days past the finance due date, within which the finance can be settled without penalty.
Past Due Date	Displays the new due date post the initial finance maturity date.
Total Receivable/PO Amount	Displays the total amount of the receivables/PO that have been financed.
Finance (%)	Displays the percentage of the total receivable/PO amount that have been financed.
Currency	Displays the currency of the finance.
Finance Amount	Displays the amount that has been financed. By default, this field displays the Finance (%) value of the Total Receivable Amount.
Exchange Rate	Displays the exchange rate between the receivable/PO amount currency and the finance currency.
Processing Date	Displays the date of processing of the amendment.
Amendment Details	Existing and the updated values after an amendment transaction are displayed in this section.
Basic Info	The following fields displays the basic information tab of the modified finance.
Tenor	Displays the tenor of the finance.
Maturity Date	Displays the maturity date of the finance.
Past Due Date	Displays the new due date post the initial finance maturity date.
Interest	The following fields displays the interest details of the modified finance.
Rate Pricing Rule (Interest)	Displays the old and new pricing rule applied for the interest rate.
Interest Amount	Displays the old interest amount and the new interest amount calculated based on the pricing rule applied.
Rate Pricing Rule (Penalty on Principal)	Displays the old and new pricing rule applied for the interest rate on penalty on principal.
Penalty on Principal Amount	Displays the old penalty on principal amount and the new penalty on principal amount calculated based on the pricing rule applied.
Rate Pricing Rule (Penalty on Interest)	Displays the old and new pricing rule applied for the interest rate on penalty on interest.
Penalty on Interest Amount	Displays the old penalty on interest amount and the new penalty on interest amount calculated based on the pricing rule applied.

- **23.** Perform any of the below actions from the **Amendment** screen.
  - Click Next to go to the Limits screen.
  - Click Save and Close to save the details and complete the processing stage of the amendment.



If the **Amendment Auth Required** toggle is enabled for the program associated with the transaction, an approval task is created in the system.

Click Back to go to the Accounting screen.



- Click Reject to purge the amendment transaction.
- Click Hold to move the transaction to the Hold Tasks list.
- Click Cancel to cancel the transaction and return to the Free Tasks screen.

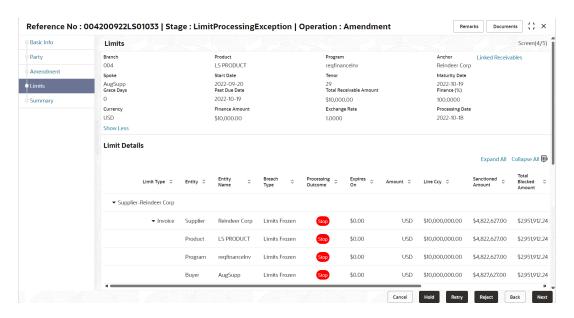
#### Limits

This tab is displayed only if there is a limit freeze or if the limit is expired.

24. Click Next on the Amendment tab.

The Limits screen displays.

Figure 5-16 Amendment - Limits



# (i) Note

When the main limits are being utilized, the Limit Details grid displays details related to the main limits. You can add columns related to the adhoc limits by clicking **Add/Remove Columns** icon, if required. If adhoc limits are being utilized, then the Limit Details grid displays the Sanctioned Adhoc Amount, Utilized Adhoc Amount, and Available Adhoc Amount columns. You can add the columns related to the Main Limits using **Add/Remove Columns** icon, if required.

25. Specify the fields on Limits screen.

## (i) Note

The fields marked as **Required** are mandatory.



Table 5-11 Limits - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Branch	Displays the branch where the amendment is being processed. By default, the logged-in user's branch is displayed.
Program	Displays the name of the program that is linked to the receivables that have been financed.
Product	Displays the name of the product associated with the program.
Anchor	Displays the name of the anchor party in the program.
Linked Receivables/PO	Click the link to view the list of receivables (invoices/debit notes) / PO that have been financed.
Spoke	Displays the name of the counter party in the program.
Start Date	Displays the start date of the finance. By default, it is the current business date.
Tenor	Displays the tenor of the finance. The tenor of the finance gets defaulted basis start date and maturity date.
Maturity Date	Displays the maturity date of the finance. Maturity date gets calculated basis maturity date parameter selected at product level.
Grace Days	Displays the number of days past the finance due date, within which the finance can be settled without penalty.
Past Due Date	Displays the new due date post the initial finance maturity date.
Total Receivable/PO Amount	Displays the total amount of the receivables/PO that have been financed.
Finance (%)	Displays the percentage of the total receivable/PO amount that have been financed.
Currency	Displays the currency of the finance.
Finance Amount	Displays the amount that has been financed. By default, this field displays the Finance (%) value of the Total Receivable Amount.
Exchange Rate	Displays the exchange rate between the receivable/PO amount currency and the finance currency.
Processing Date	Displays the date of processing of the amendment.
Limit Details	Limit details of the entity is displayed in this section.
Limit Type	Displays a label of the entity and the linked limit type.
Entity	Displays the entity – Anchor / Product / Program / Spoke and so on.
Entity Name	Displays the name of the entity.
Breach Type	Displays any limit breach exception that has occurred with respect to the entity. (Limits Frozen, Amount Breach, Limits Expired).
Processing Outcome	Displays the action that will be taken on the limit as a result of settlement.  • Utilize - If the limit is being booked.
	<ul> <li>Stop - If in case of an exception, the transaction should be blocked and not allowed to be processed further.</li> <li>Skip - If in case of an exception, the transaction is to be processed without limit booking.</li> </ul>
	This behavior is driven by the credit limit mapping as configured in product parameters.
Amount	Displays the finance amount with respect to the entity.
Line Ccy	Displays the currency of the limit line.
Exchange Rate	Displays the exchange rate between the finance amount currency and the line currency.
Amount (In line CCY)	Displays the finance amount in line currency.



Table 5-11 (Cont.) Limits - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Sanctioned Amount	Displays the limit amount assigned to the entity, in line currency.
Total Blocked Amount	Displays the total amount that has been blocked for finances that are currently being processed, with respect to the entity.
Total Utilized Amount	Displays the limit amount that has already been utilized.
Available Amount	Displays the limit amount available to the entity for financing.
Line Id	Displays the unique ID of the limit line of the entity.
Action	Displays the action being taken on the amount being settled.
Actual Available Limits	Displays the actual limit available to the entity for financing.

- **26.** Perform any of the below actions from the **Limits** screen.
  - Click Next to go to the Advice screen.
  - Click Save and Close to save the details and complete the processing stage of the amendment.



If the **Amendment Auth Required** toggle is enabled for the program associated with the transaction, an approval task is created in the system.

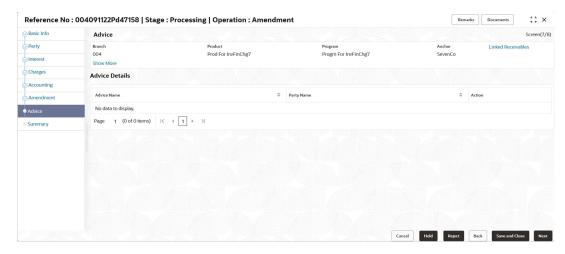
- Click Back to go to the Amendment screen.
- · Click **Reject** to purge the amendment transaction.
- Click Hold to move the transaction to the Hold Tasks list.
- Click Cancel to cancel the transaction and return to the Free Tasks screen.

### **Advice**

27. Click Next on the Accounting tab.

The **Advice** screen displays.

Figure 5-17 Advice



28. Specify the fields on Advice screen.





### (i) Note

The fields marked as **Required** are mandatory.

For more information on fields, refer to the field description table.

Table 5-12 Advice - Field Description

Field	Description
Advice Name	Displays the name of the advice.
Party Name	Displays the name of the party to whom advice will be sent.
Action	Click <b>Options</b> icon to view the actions that can be taken on the party record.

- 29. Perform any of the below actions from the Advice screen.
  - Click **Next** to go to the **Summary** screen.
  - Click Save and Close to save the details and complete the processing stage of the amendment.



#### (i) Note

If the Amendment Auth Required toggle is enabled for the program associated with the transaction, an approval task is created in the system.

- Click **Back** to go to the **Limits** screen.
- Click **Reject** to purge the amendment transaction.
- Click Hold to move the transaction to the Hold Tasks list.
- Click **Cancel** to cancel the transaction and return to the **Free Tasks** screen.

### **Summary**

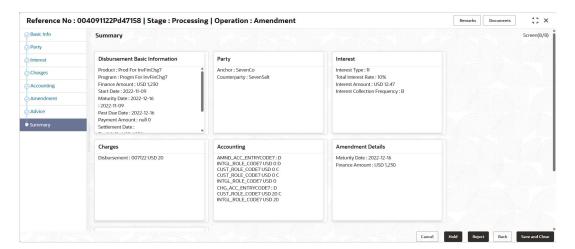
The Amendment Summary tab shows a snapshot of the complete amendment transaction along with finance amount, interest applicable, amendment details, terms, and so on. A tile is displayed for each data segment.

30. Click Next on the Limits tab.

The **Summary** screen displays.



Figure 5-18 Amendment - Summary



- **31.** Review the details of the amendment transaction and perform any of the following action from the **Summary** screen.
  - Click each tile to view the detailed information of the data segments.
  - Click Save and Close to save the details and complete the processing stage of the amendment.

## Note

If the **Amendment Auth Required** toggle is enabled for the program associated with the transaction, an approval task is created in the system. Once approved, the finance gets modified in the core lending system, which in-turn will return the amendment status to Supply Chain Finance system.

- Click Back to go to the Advice screen.
- · Click Reject to purge the amendment transaction.
- Click Hold to move the transaction to the Hold Tasks list.
- Click Cancel to cancel the transaction and return to the Free Tasks screen.

# Transaction Reversal

This topic describes the process to initiate reversal of disbursement and settlement transactions.

Transaction Reversal functionality enables the banks to reverse the completed disbursement and settlement transactions of a finance in the supply chain finance system. Once a transaction is reversed, it is rolled back completely. The reversal request can be initiated from the **Transaction Reversal** screen.

The Transaction Reversal process involves the below steps:

- Initiate Transaction Reversal
  - This topic describes the systematic steps to initiate reversal of the disbursement and settlement transactions for corporate customers.
- <u>Disbursement Reversal Task</u>
   This topic describes the steps to process the disbursement transaction reversal record.
- <u>Settlement Reversal Task</u>
   This topic describes the steps to process the settlement transaction reversal record.
- Amendment Reversal Task Process
   This topic describes the steps to process the amendment transaction reversal record.

# 6.1 Initiate Transaction Reversal

This topic describes the systematic steps to initiate reversal of the disbursement and settlement transactions for corporate customers.

The user can manually initiate a reversal in the **Transaction Reversal** screen. You can search and select the finance transactions, and initiate the reversal process. Multiple transactions can be selected for reversal. For each finance reference number you select, a reversal transaction is created under **Free Tasks**.

#### (i) Note

The application allows transaction reversal for a finance chronologically i.e., you can only reverse the latest transaction in the finance lifecycle. For example, if you search for finance reference number FIN123 and it has two records in its lifecycle, a disbursement and a partial settlement, the application only displays the settlement transaction record. You must initiate reversal for settlement transaction first and then proceed to reverse the disbursement transaction.

#### (i) Note

The application lists only the latest transaction record of the finance that are in complete status. For example, if you search for finance reference number FIN345 and it has two records in its lifecycle, a completed disbursement transaction and an in progress settlement transaction, the application will not list the finance for reversal.



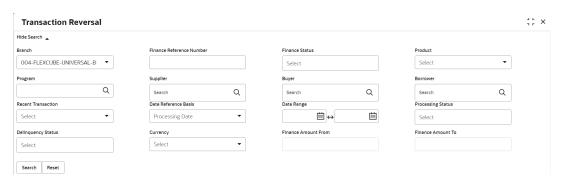


The application will not list the finance for reversal if the latest transaction executed is an amendment on a finance.

 On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Transaction Reversal.

The Transaction Reversal screen displays.

Figure 6-1 Transaction Reversal Initiation - Finance Search



Specify the fields on Transaction Reversal screen to search for the finances for which reversal needs to be initiated.



Table 6-1 Transaction Reversal - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Branch	Select the account branch.
Finance Reference Number	Specify the reference number to search for the finance.
Finance Status	Select the current status of the finance.
	The available options are:  • Disbursed
	Disbursement Reversed
	Outstanding
	Overdue
	Partial Settled
	Settled
Product	Select the product for which the finance is processed.
Program	Click the Search icon to select the program for which the finance is processed.
Supplier	Click the Search icon to select the supplier party of the finance.



Table 6-1 (Cont.) Transaction Reversal - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Buyer	Click the Search icon to select the buyer party of the finance.
Borrower	Click the Search icon to select the borrower.
Recent Transactions	Select the value to search for the finance transactions in the selected period.
	The available options are:  Past 2 Days
	• Today
	This Week
	Yesterday
	• All
Date Reference Basis	Select the value to specify the reference for date criteria.
	The available options are:
	Finance Date
	Finance Maturity Date
	Processing Date
	This field is auto-populated to <b>Processing Date</b> if any of the values in <b>Recent Transactions</b> is selected.
Date Range	Click the Calendar icons and select the required starting and ending ranges for the date to search for the finance.
	This field is enabled only if any value is selected in the <b>Date</b> Reference Basis field.
	The date range is auto-populated based on the values selected in the <b>Recent Transactions</b> field.
Processing Status	Select the current processing status to search for the finance.
Delinquency Status	Select the current delinquency status to search for the finance.
Currency	Select the currency of the finance to search for.
Finance Amount From	Specify the start of the amount-range within which the finance needs to be searched.
Finance Amount To	Specify the end of the amount-range within which the finance needs to be searched.

3. Click **Search** after you specify the required details.

The list of finance records displays in the grid.



Figure 6-2 List of Finances

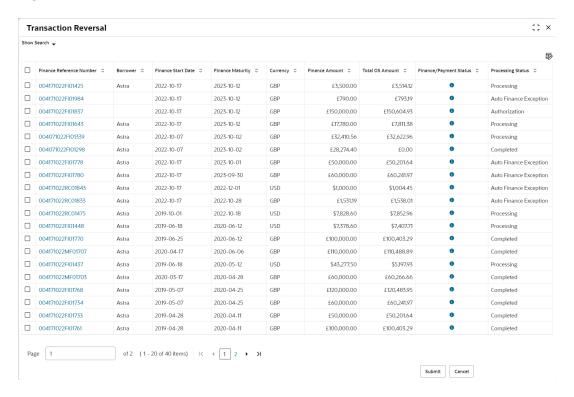


Table 6-2 List of Finances - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Finance Reference Number	Displays the reference number of the finance.
Borrower	Displays the name of the borrower for the finance.
Finance Start Date	Displays the start date of the finance.
Finance Maturity Date	Displays the maturity date of the finance.
Currency	Displays the currency of the finance
Finance Amount	Displays the amount that has been financed.
Total O/S Amount	Displays the total outstanding amount of the finance.
Finance/Payment Status	Click the Info icon to view the status of the finance/payment.
Processing Status	Displays the current processing status of the finance.

- Click the checkbox to select the required finance transaction(s) for which reversal needs to be initiated.
  - Click the hyperlink in the Finance Reference Number column to view more details on the finance.
- Click Submit to initiate reversal for the selected finance transactions.
  - Click Cancel to cancel the transaction reversal process.

A transaction reversal task is created in the system based on the associated system, product, or program parameters.



# 6.2 Disbursement Reversal Task

This topic describes the steps to process the disbursement transaction reversal record.

When a reversal for disbursement transaction is initiated, a disbursement reversal task is created in the system based on the associated system parameters.

## (i) Note

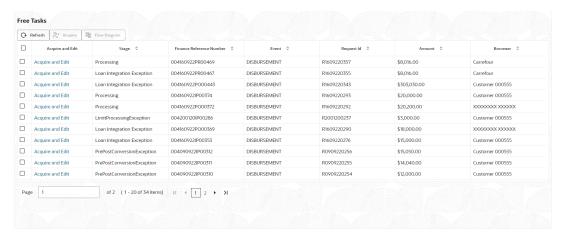
Only authorized users can process and authorize the disbursement reversal tasks.

The disbursement reversal tasks are segregated into the following data segments:

- Basic Info
- Pre-Shipment Liquidation
- Party
- Limits
- Interest
- Charges
- Accounting
- Summary
- On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Tasks.
- Under Tasks, click Finance. Under Finance, click Free Tasks.

The **Finance - Free Tasks** screen displays.

Figure 6-3 Finance - Free Tasks



- Perform any of the below action from the Free Tasks screen.
  - Click the Acquire and Edit link beside the required disbursement reversal tasks to process.
  - Select the checkbox of the required tasks and click **Acquire** button above the grid to acquire multiple tasks. Once you acquire a task, it is moved to the **My Tasks** list. You



can then navigate to **My Tasks** screen and click **Edit** link beside the required disbursement reversal tasks to process.

## (i) Note

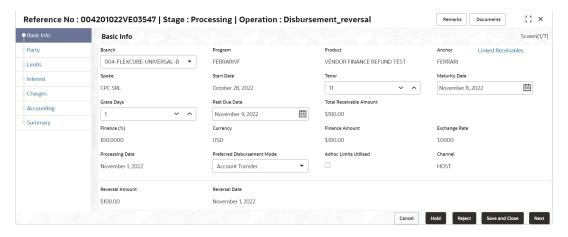
The following information is displayed at the top of the disbursement reversal tasks screen for each data segment.

- The reference number, the stage, and the operation name of the transaction acquired for processing.
- Click Remarks button to add any comments about the transaction.
- Click **Documents** button to upload any new documents or view the uploaded documents relevant to the transaction.

#### **Basic Info**

Click the Acquire and Edit link beside the required disbursement reversal tasks.
 The Basic Info screen displays.

Figure 6-4 Disbursement Reversal - Basic Info



Specify the fields on Basic Info screen.

Note
 The fields marked as Required are mandatory.

Table 6-3 Basic Info - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Branch	Displays the branch where the disbursement reversal is being processed. By default, the logged-in user's branch is displayed.
Program	Displays the name of the program that is linked to the receivables being financed.



Table 6-3 (Cont.) Basic Info - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Product	Displays the name of the product associated with the program.
Anchor	Displays the name of the anchor party in the program.
Linked Receivables/PO	Click the link to view a list of receivables (invoices/debit notes) / PO that is being financed.
Spoke	Displays the name of the counter party in the program.
Start Date	Displays the start date of the finance. By default, this field displays the current business date.
Tenor	Displays the tenor of the finance. It is lesser than the maximum tenor and greater than the minimum tenor as defined in product/program and spoke parameter.
	The tenor of the finance gets defaulted basis start date and maturity date.
Maturity Date	Displays the maturity date of the finance. Maturity date gets calculated basis maturity date parameter selected at product level.
Grace Days	Displays the number of days, post maturity, within which the finance can be repaid without incurring penalty.
Past Due Date	Displays the new maturity date post the initial finance maturity date.  By default, the date displayed is Maturity Date + Grace Days.
Total Receivable/PO Amount	Displays the total amount of the receivables/PO being financed.
Finance (%)	Applicable Finance % is displayed in this field. The Finance amount and consequently the finance percentage can be changed in the initiation stage.
Currency	Displays the currency of the finance amount.
Finance Amount	Finance Amount finalized and captured during the initiation stage is displayed. The field displays the Finance (%) value of the Total Receivable Amount.
Exchange Rate	Displays the exchange rate between the receivable/PO amount currency and the finance currency.
Processing Date	Displays the date of processing of the disbursement.
Preferred Disbursement	Displays the preferred mode of finance disbursement.
Mode	The options are:  • Account Transfer
	• Cheque
	• EFT
Adhoc Limits Utilized	This checkbox is auto-selected if adhoc limits are being utilized in the transaction.
Skip Pre-Shipment Liquidation	This field is displayed only if any outstanding pre-shipment finance is identified for the respective parties of the post-shipment finance.
Channel	Displays the source application from which the transaction is initiated.
Reversal Amount	Displays the disbursement amount that is reversed.
Reversal Date	Displays the date when the disbursement transaction is reversed.

- **6.** Perform any of the below actions from the **Basic Info** screen.
  - Click Next to go to the Pre-Shipment Liquidation screen.
  - Click Save and Close to save the details and complete the processing stage of the disbursement reversal.





#### (i) Note

If the **Reversal Auth Required** toggle is enabled in the system parameters, an approval task is created in the system.

- Click **Reject** to purge the disbursement reversal transaction.
- Click Hold to move the transaction to the Hold Tasks list.
- Click Cancel to cancel the transaction and return to the Free Tasks screen.

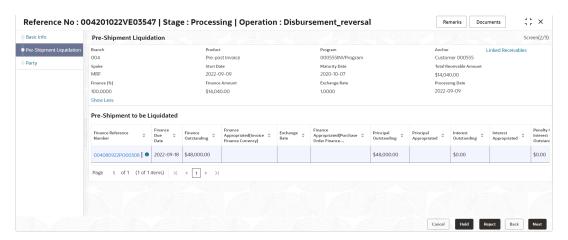
#### **Pre-Shipment Liquidation**

Pre-Shipment Liquidation screen displays the details of the pre-shipment finances that are liquidated on reversal of a post-shipment disbursement. This tab is displayed only if there are any settled pre-shipment finances identified for the buyer-seller combination.

Click **Next** on the **Basic Info** tab.

The Pre-Shipment Liquidation screen displays.

Figure 6-5 **Disbursement Reversal - Pre-Shipment Liquidation** 



Specify the fields on Pre-Shipment Liquidation screen.



The fields marked as **Required** are mandatory.

Table 6-4 Pre-Shipment Liquidation - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Branch	Displays the branch where the disbursement reversal is being processed. By default, the logged-in user's branch is displayed.
Product	Displays the name of the product associated with the program.
Program	Displays the name of the program that is linked to the receivables being financed.
Anchor	Displays the name of the anchor party in the program.



Table 6-4 (Cont.) Pre-Shipment Liquidation - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Linked Receivables/PO	Click the link to view a list of receivables (invoices/debit notes) / PO that is being financed.
Spoke	Displays the name of the counter party in the program.
Start Date	Displays the start date of the finance. By default, it is the current business date.
Maturity Date	Displays the maturity date of the finance. Maturity date gets calculated basis maturity date parameter selected at product level.
Total Receivable/PO Amount	Displays the total amount of the receivables/PO being financed.
Finance (%)	Displays the percentage of the total receivable/PO amount to be financed.
Finance Amount	Displays the amount that has been financed. By default, this field displays the Finance (%) value of the total receivable amount.
Reversal Amount	Displays the disbursement amount that is reversed.
Reversal Date	Displays the date when the disbursement transaction is reversed.
Exchange Rate	Displays the exchange rate between the receivable/PO amount currency and the finance currency.
Disbursement Date	Displays the date of the disbursement.
Pre-Shipment Settlement Amount	Displays the total pre-shipment settlement amount appropriated against the relevant outstanding pre-shipment finances.
Net Disbursed Amount	Displays the disbursed amount from post-shipment finance, that is Net Disbursed Amount = Post-Shipment Finance Amount – Pre-Shipment Settlement Amount.
Liquidated Pre-Shipment Finances	The list of pre-shipment finances that are liquidated are displayed in this section.
Finance Reference Number	Displays the reference number of the pre-shipment finance settled. Click the hyperlink data to view more details of the finance.
Finance Status	Displays the current status of the pre-shipment finance.
Finance Due Date	Displays the maturity date of the pre-shipment finance.
Finance Outstanding	Displays the total outstanding amount of the pre-shipment finance.
Finance Appropriated (Invoice Finance Currency)	Displays the amount appropriated against the total outstanding of the pre-shipment finance in invoice currency.
Exchange Rate	Displays the exchange rate between invoice finance currency and PO finance currency.
Finance Appropriated (Purchase Order Finance Currency)	Displays the amount appropriated against the total outstanding of the pre-shipment finance in purchase order currency.
Principal Appropriated	Displays the amount appropriated against the outstanding principal of the pre-shipment finance.
Principal Reversed	Displays the reversed principal amount of the pre-shipment finance.
Interest Appropriated	Displays the amount appropriated against the outstanding interest of the pre-shipment finance.
Interest Reversed	Displays the reversed interest amount of the pre-shipment finance.
Penalty On Interest Appropriated	Displays the amount appropriated against the outstanding penalty on interest of the pre-shipment finance.
Penalty On Interest Reversed	Displays the reversed penalty on interest amount of the pre-shipment finance.



Table 6-4 (Cont.) Pre-Shipment Liquidation - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Penalty On Principal Appropriated	Displays the amount appropriated against the outstanding penalty on principal of the pre-shipment finance.
Penalty On Principal Reversed	Displays the reversed penalty on principal amount of the pre- shipment finance.

- Perform any of the below actions from the Pre-Shipment Liquidation screen.
  - Click Next to go to the Party screen.
  - Click Save and Close to save the details and complete the processing stage of the disbursement reversal.

## Note

If the **Reversal Auth Required** toggle is enabled in the system parameters, an approval task is created in the system.

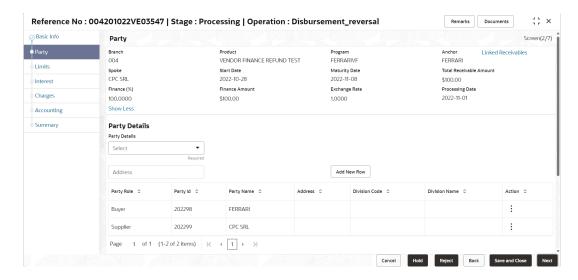
- Click Back to go to the Basic Info screen.
- Click Reject to purge the disbursement reversal transaction.
- Click Hold to move the transaction to the Hold Tasks list.
- Click Cancel to cancel the transaction and return to the Free Tasks screen.
- The following options are displayed only if there are any errors in reversing the preshipment settlements and the transaction moves to PrePostConversionException stage.
  - Click Retry to reverse the pre-shipment settlement.
  - Click Approve to approve the transaction once the errors are resolved.

### **Party**

10. Click Next on the Pre-Shipment Liquidation tab.

The Party screen displays.

Figure 6-6 Disbursement Reversal - Party





# 11. Specify the fields on Party screen.



# Note

The fields marked as **Required** are mandatory.

Table 6-5 Party - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Branch	Displays the branch where the disbursement reversal is being processed. By default, the logged-in user's branch is displayed.
Product	Displays the name of the product associated with the program.
Program	Displays the name of the program that is linked to the receivables being financed.
Anchor	Displays the name of the anchor party in the program.
Linked Receivables/PO	Click the link to view a list of receivables (invoices/debit notes) / PO that is being financed.
Spoke	Displays the name of the counter party in the program.
Start Date	Displays the start date of the finance. By default, it is the current business date.
Maturity Date	Displays the maturity date of the finance. Maturity date gets calculated basis maturity date parameter selected at product level.
Total Receivable/PO Amount	Displays the total amount of the receivables/PO being financed.
Finance (%)	Displays the percentage of the total receivable/PO amount to be financed.
Finance Amount	Displays the amount that has been financed. By default, this field displays the Finance (%) value of the total receivable amount.
Exchange Rate	Displays the exchange rate between the receivable/PO amount currency and the finance currency.
Processing Date	Displays the date of processing of the disbursement.
Pre-Shipment Settlement Amount	Displays the total pre-shipment settlement amount appropriated against the relevant outstanding pre-shipment finances.
	This field is displayed only if <b>Pre-Shipment Liquidation</b> is applicable.
Net Disbursed Amount	Displays the disbursed amount from post-shipment finance, that is Net Disbursed Amount = Post-Shipment Finance Amount – Pre-Shipment Settlement Amount.
	This field is displayed only if <b>Pre-Shipment Liquidation</b> is applicable.
Party Details	Parties with specific roles in the program can be added in this section.



Table 6-5 (Cont.) Party - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Party Details	Select the party role to be added.
	The available options are:
	Buyer
	Supplier
	Import Factor
	Export Factor
	Insurance
	Beneficiary/Counter Party
Search Party	Click the Search icon to select the party.
Division	Click the Search icon to select the division code of the party.
Address	Specify the address of the selected party.
Add New Row	Click this button to add the selected party to the grid.
Party Role	Displays the role of the party.
Party Id	Displays the unique ID of the party.
Party Name	Displays the name of the party
Address	Displays the address of the party.
<b>Division Code</b>	Displays the division code of the party.
<b>Division Name</b>	Displays the division name of the party.
Action	Click <b>Options</b> icon to view the actions that can be taken on the party record.

- 12. Perform the following steps to take action on the parties in the grid:
  - Click **Add New Row** to add more parties.
  - Select the record in the grid and click **Options** icon under the **Actions** column and then click **Delete** to remove the party.
- **13.** Perform any of the below actions from the **Party** screen.
  - Click **Next** to go to the **Limits** screen.
  - Click **Save and Close** to save the details and complete the processing stage of the disbursement reversal.



#### (i) Note

If the **Reversal Auth Required** toggle is enabled in the system parameters, an approval task is created in the system.

- Click Back to go to the Pre-Shipment Liquidation screen.
- Click **Reject** to purge the disbursement reversal transaction.
- Click **Hold** to move the transaction to the **Hold Tasks** list.
- Click **Cancel** to cancel the transaction and return to the **Free Tasks** screen.

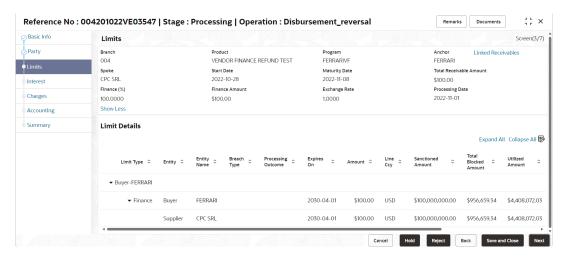
## Limits

14. Click Next on the Party tab.

The Limits screen displays.



Figure 6-7 Disbursement Reversal - Limits



15. Specify the fields on Limits screen.



Table 6-6 Limits - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Branch	Displays the branch where the disbursement reversal is being processed. By default, the logged-in user's branch is displayed.
Product	Displays the name of the product associated with the program.
Program	Displays the name of the program that is linked to the receivables being financed.
Anchor	Displays the name of the anchor party in the program.
Linked Receivables/PO	Click the link to view a list of receivables (invoices/debit notes) / PO that is being financed.
Spoke	Displays the name of the counter party in the program.
Start Date	Displays the start date of the finance. By default, it is the current business date.
Maturity Date	Displays the maturity date of the finance. Maturity date gets calculated basis maturity date parameter selected at product level.
Total Receivable/PO Amount	Displays the total amount of the receivables/PO being financed.
Finance (%)	Displays the percentage of the total receivable/PO amount to be financed.
Finance Amount	Displays the amount that has been financed. By default, this field displays the Finance (%) value of the total receivable amount.
Exchange Rate	Displays the exchange rate between the receivable/PO amount currency and the finance currency.
Processing Date	Displays the date of processing of the disbursement.



Table 6-6 (Cont.) Limits - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Pre-Shipment Settlement Amount	Displays the total pre-shipment settlement amount appropriated against the relevant outstanding pre-shipment finances.
	This field is displayed only if <b>Pre-Shipment Liquidation</b> is applicable.
Net Disbursed Amount	Displays the disbursed amount from post-shipment finance, that is Net Disbursed Amount = Post-Shipment Finance Amount – Pre-Shipment Settlement Amount.
	This field is displayed only if <b>Pre-Shipment Liquidation</b> is applicable.
Limit Details	Limit details of the entity that is being financed is displayed in this section.
Limit Type	Displays a label of the entity and the linked limit type.
Entity	Displays the entity – Anchor / Product / Program / Spoke and so on.
Entity Name	Displays the name of the entity.
Breach Type	Displays any limit breach exception that has occurred with respect to the entity. (Limits Frozen, Amount Breach, Limits Expired).
Processing Outcome	Displays the action that will be taken on the limit as a result of disbursement.  Utilize - If the limit is being booked.  Stop - If in case of an exception, the transaction should be blocked and not allowed to be processed further.  Skip - If in case of an exception, the transaction is to be processed without limit booking.  This behavior is driven by the credit limit mapping as configured in product parameters.
Amount	Displays the finance amount.
Line Ccy	Displays the currency of the limit line.
Exchange Rate	Displays the exchange rate between the finance amount currency and the line currency.
Amount (In line CCY)	Displays the finance amount in line currency.
Sanctioned Amount	Displays the limit amount assigned to the entity.
Total Blocked Amount	Displays the total amount that has been blocked for finances that are currently being processed, with respect to the entity.
Total Utilized Amount	Displays the limit amount that has already been utilized.
Available Amount	Displays the limit amount available for financing.
Line Id	Displays the unique ID of the limit line of the entity.
Action	Displays the action <b>RELEASE</b> , as the blocked limits are released as part of disbursement reversal.
Actual Available Limits	Displays the actual limit available to the entity for financing.

- **16.** Perform any of the below actions from the **Limits** screen.
  - Click Next to go to the Interest screen.
  - Click **Save and Close** to save the details and complete the processing stage of the disbursement reversal.





If the **Reversal Auth Required** toggle is enabled in the system parameters, an approval task is created in the system.

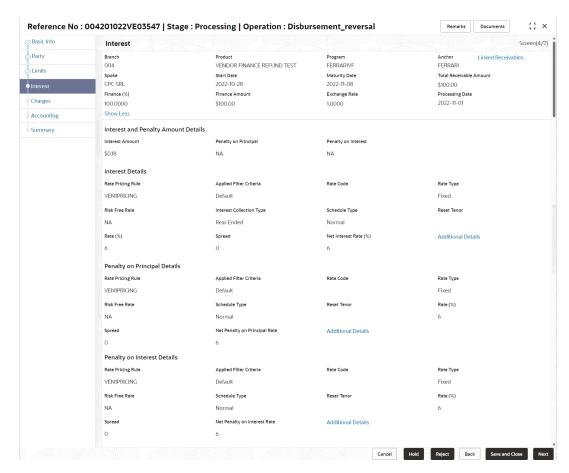
- Click Back to go to the Party screen.
- Click Reject to purge the disbursement reversal transaction.
- Click Hold to move the transaction to the Hold Tasks list.
- Click Cancel to cancel the transaction and return to the Free Tasks screen.

#### **Interest**

17. Click Next on the Limits tab.

The **Interest** screen displays.

Figure 6-8 Disbursement Reversal - Interest



18. Specify the fields on Interest screen.



The fields marked as **Required** are mandatory.



**Table 6-7 Interest - Field Description** 

Field Name	Description
Branch	Displays the branch where the disbursement reversal is being processed. By default, the logged-in user's branch is displayed.
Product	Displays the name of the product associated with the program.
Program	Displays the name of the program that is linked to the receivables being financed.
Anchor	Displays the name of the anchor party in the program.
Linked Receivables/PO	Click the link to view a list of receivables (invoices/debit notes) / PO that is being financed.
Spoke	Displays the name of the counter party in the program.
Start Date	Displays the start date of the finance. By default, it is the current business date.
Maturity Date	Displays the maturity date of the finance. Maturity date gets calculated basis maturity date parameter selected at product level.
Total Receivable/PO Amount	Displays the total amount of the receivables/PO being financed.
Finance (%)	Displays the percentage of the total receivable/PO amount to be financed.
Finance Amount	Displays the amount that has been financed. By default, this field displays the Finance (%) value of the total receivable amount.
Exchange Rate	Displays the exchange rate between the receivable/PO amount currency and the finance currency.
Processing Date	Displays the date of processing of the disbursement.
Pre-Shipment Settlement Amount	Displays the total pre-shipment settlement amount appropriated against the relevant outstanding pre-shipment finances.
	This field is displayed only if <b>Pre-Shipment Liquidation</b> is applicable.
Net Disbursed Amount	Displays the disbursed amount from post-shipment finance, that is Net Disbursed Amount = Post-Shipment Finance Amount – Pre-Shipment Settlement Amount.
	This field is displayed only if <b>Pre-Shipment Liquidation</b> is applicable.
Interest and Penalty Amount Details	Interest, Penalty on Principal, and Penalty on Interest details of the finance is displayed in this section.
Interest Amount	Displays the interest amount that has been calculated.
Penalty on Principal	Displays the penalty on the outstanding principal that has been calculated, if any.
Penalty on Interest	Displays the penalty on the outstanding interest that has been calculated, if any.
Interest Details	Interest details of the finance is displayed in this section.
Rate Pricing Rule	Displays the pricing rule applied for the interest rate.
Applied Filter Criteria	Displays the filter criteria applied for the interest rate.
Rate Code	Displays the unique code associated with the interest rate.
Rate Type	Displays whether the rate is floating or fixed.
Risk Free Rate	Displays whether the interest rate applied is risk free.
Interest Collection Type	Displays the type of interest collection, whether rear-ended, or front-ended.
Schedule Type	Displays whether the interest collection schedule is normal or compounding.



Table 6-7 (Cont.) Interest - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Reset Tenor	Displays the tenor for applying the new interest rate, in case of floating rate type.
Rate (%)	Displays the base rate of interest.
Spread	Displays the spread or margin rate of interest.
Net Interest Rate (%)	Displays the total rate of interest. This is the sum of Rate (%) and Spread.
Additional Details	Click this link to view additional interest details.     Interest Additional Details - Displays additional information related to the interest.
	<ul> <li>Interest Payment Schedule - Displays the details of periodic interest dues for monthly rest transactions.</li> </ul>
Penalty on Principal Details	Penalty on principal details of the finance is displayed in this section.
Rate Pricing Rule	Displays the pricing rule applied for the interest rate.
Applied Filter Criteria	Displays the filter criteria applied for the interest rate.
Rate Code	Displays the code of the penalty on principal.
Rate Type	Displays whether the rate is floating or fixed.
Risk Free Rate	Displays whether the interest rate applied is risk free.
Schedule Type	Displays whether the interest collection schedule is normal or compounding.
Reset Tenor	Displays the tenor for applying the new interest rate, in case of floating rate type.
Rate (%)	Displays the base rate of interest.
Spread	Displays the spread or margin rate of interest.
Net Penalty on Principal Rate (%)	Displays the total rate of interest. This is the sum of Rate (%) and Spread.
Additional Details	Click this link to view additional details related to penalty on principal.
Penalty on Interest Details	Penalty on interest details of the finance is displayed in this section.
Rate Pricing Rule	Displays the pricing rule applied for the interest rate.
Applied Filter Criteria	Displays the filter criteria applied for the interest rate.
Rate Code	Displays the code of the penalty on the penalty on interest.
Rate Type	Displays whether the rate is floating or fixed.
Risk Free Rate	Displays whether the interest rate applied is risk free.
Schedule Type	Displays whether the interest collection schedule is normal or compounding.
Reset Tenor	Displays the tenor for applying the new interest rate, in case of floating rate type.
Rate (%)	Displays the base rate of interest.
Spread	Displays the spread or margin rate of interest.
Net Penalty on Principal Rate (%)	Displays the total rate of interest. This is the sum of Rate (%) and Spread.
Additional Details	Click this link to view additional details related to penalty on interest.

- **19.** Perform any of the below actions from the **Interest** screen.
  - Click Next to go to the Charges screen.
  - Click Save and Close to save the details and complete the processing stage of the disbursement reversal.





If the **Reversal Auth Required** toggle is enabled in the system parameters, an approval task is created in the system.

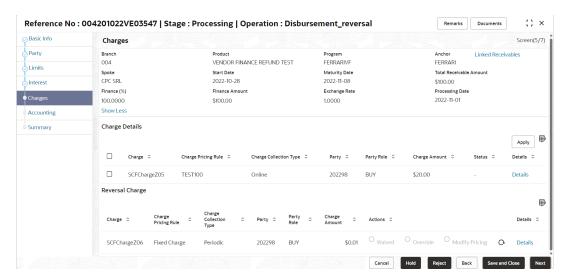
- Click Back to go to the Limits screen.
- Click Reject to purge the disbursement reversal transaction.
- · Click Hold to move the transaction to the Hold Tasks list.
- Click Cancel to cancel the transaction and return to the Free Tasks screen.

### Charges

20. Click Next on the Interest tab.

The Charges screen displays.

Figure 6-9 Disbursement Reversal - Charges



21. Specify the fields on Charges screen.

① Note

The fields marked as **Required** are mandatory.

**Table 6-8 Charges - Field Description** 

Field Name	Description
Branch	Displays the branch where the disbursement reversal is being processed. By default, the logged-in user's branch is displayed.
Product	Displays the name of the product associated with the program.
Program	Displays the name of the program that is linked to the receivables being financed.



Table 6-8 (Cont.) Charges - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Anchor	Displays the name of the anchor party in the program.
Linked Receivables/PO	Click the link to view a list of receivables (invoices/debit notes) / PO that is being financed.
Spoke	Displays the name of the counter party in the program.
Start Date	Displays the start date of the finance. By default, it is the current business date.
Maturity Date	Displays the maturity date of the finance. Maturity date gets calculated basis maturity date parameter selected at product level.
Total Receivable/PO Amount	Displays the total amount of the receivables/PO being financed.
Finance (%)	Displays the percentage of the total receivable/PO amount to be financed.
Finance Amount	Displays the amount that has been financed. By default, this field displays the Finance (%) value of the total receivable amount.
Exchange Rate	Displays the exchange rate between the receivable/PO amount currency and the finance currency.
Processing Date	Displays the date of processing of the disbursement.
Pre-Shipment Settlement Amount	Displays the total pre-shipment settlement amount appropriated against the relevant outstanding pre-shipment finances.
	This field is displayed only if <b>Pre-Shipment Liquidation</b> is applicable.
Net Disbursed Amount	Displays the disbursed amount from post-shipment finance, that is Net Disbursed Amount = Post-Shipment Finance Amount – Pre-Shipment Settlement Amount.
	This field is displayed only if <b>Pre-Shipment Liquidation</b> is applicable.
Charge Details	Charge details of the finance is displayed in this section.
Charge	Displays the charge code.
Apply	Click this button to reverse the amount charged for the disbursement.
Checkbox	Select the checkbox against the charges to reverse the charge amount.
Charge Pricing Rule	Displays the charge pricing rule applicable to the transaction.
Charge Collection Type	Displays the type of charge collection applicable to the transaction.
Party	Displays the ID of the party that has been charged.
Party Role	Displays the role of the party that has been charged.
Charge Amount	Displays the amount charged along with the currency. If the charge is <b>Auto Waived</b> , then the charge amount field defaults to zero.
Status	Displays the status of the charge and View Original Charges hyperlink is enabled. Click the link to view the system calculated charges.
	This field is displayed only if <b>Auto Waive</b> is selected in the <b>Charge Decisioning</b> screen or if the disbursement transaction is viewed from checker login.



Table 6-8 (Cont.) Charges - Field Description

Field Name	Description
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Details	Click the link to view the charge details, external pricing details, and schedule of periodic charges.
	External Pricing Details tab is displayed only if External Pricing switch is enabled in the Charge Decisioning and Charge Preferential Pricing screens.
	Schedule of Periodic Charges tab is displayed only if the Charge Collection Type or Charge Calculation Type is selected as Periodic.
Reversal Charge	Charge details of the disbursement reversal is displayed in this section.
Charge	Displays the charge code.
Charge Pricing Rule	Displays the charge pricing rule applicable to the transaction.  This field becomes editable if <b>Modify Pricing</b> radio button is selected in the <b>Actions</b> column.
	Click the search icon in the Charge Pricing Rule column. The Charge Pricing Rule pop-up screen displays.
	a. Enter complete or partial value in the Charge Pricing Id or Charge Pricing Description fields .
	b. Click <b>Fetch</b> . The relevant pricing rule(s) displays.
	c. Select the pricing rule to be applied.
Charge Collection Type	Displays the type of charge collection applicable to the transaction.
Party	Displays the ID of the party that has been charged.
Party Role	Displays the role of the party that has been charged.
Charge Amount	Displays the amount charged along with the currency. If the charge is <b>Auto Waived</b> , then the charge amount field defaults to zero.
Actions	Displays the below radio buttons:  Waive – Click the button to waive the charge amount. If selected, the charge amount field defaults to zero.
	Override – Click the button to modify the existing charge amount . For Charge Collection Type selected as Periodic, the override charge amount entered will be proportionately adjusted across the schedule.
	Modify Pricing – Click the button to modify the charge pricing rule. Charge Pricing Rule field becomes editable to select a different pricing rule.
	Reset – Click the button to reset to the original calculation of charges and charge pricing rule.
	These fields are enabled or disabled as per the charge maintenance parameters set in the Charge Decisioning and the Charge Preferential Pricing screens.
Status	Displays the status of the charge and <b>View Original Charges</b> hyperlink is enabled. Click the link to view the system calculated charges.
	This field is displayed only if <b>Auto Waive</b> is selected in the <b>Charge Decisioning</b> screen or if the disbursement reversal transaction is viewed from checker login.



Table 6-8 (Cont.) Charges - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Details	Click the link to view the charge details, external pricing details, and schedule of periodic charges.
	External Pricing Details tab is displayed only if External Pricing switch is enabled in the Charge Decisioning and Charge Preferential Pricing screens.
	Schedule of Periodic Charges tab is displayed only if the Charge Collection Type or Charge Calculation Type is selected as Periodic.

22. Click the link in the **Details** column to view the charge details, external pricing details, and schedule of periodic charges.

Figure 6-10 Charge Details

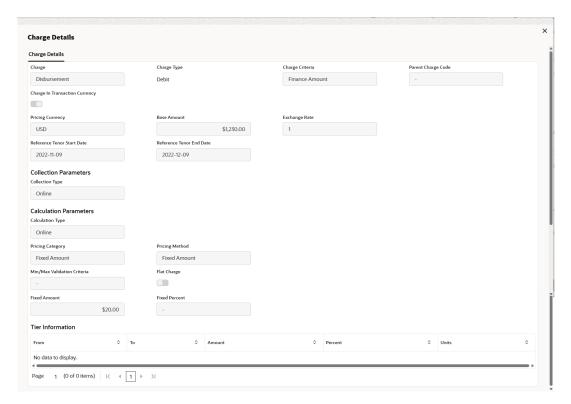
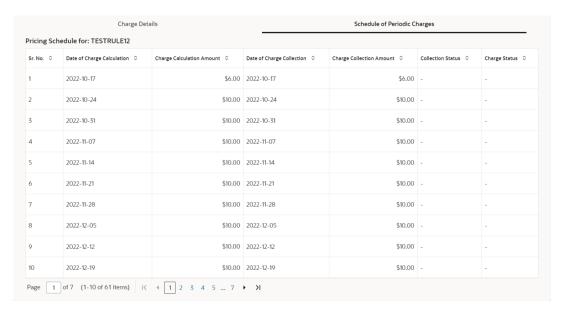




Figure 6-11 Schedule of Charges



- 23. Perform any of the below actions from the Charges screen.
  - Click Next to go to the Accounting screen.
  - Click Save and Close to save the details and complete the processing stage of the disbursement reversal.

## Note

If the **Reversal Auth Required** toggle is enabled in the system parameters, an approval task is created in the system.

- Click Back to go to the Interest screen.
- Click Reject to purge the disbursement reversal transaction.
- Click Hold to move the transaction to the Hold Tasks list.
- Click Cancel to cancel the transaction and return to the Free Tasks screen.

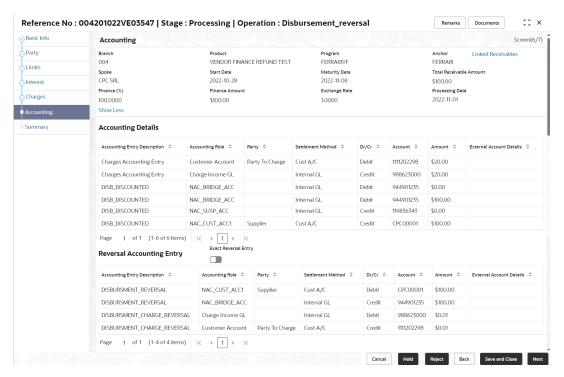
#### Accounting

24. Click Next on the Charges tab.

The Accounting screen displays.



Figure 6-12 Disbursement Reversal - Accounting



25. Specify the fields on Accounting screen.



The fields marked as **Required** are mandatory.

Table 6-9 Accounting - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Branch	Displays the branch where the disbursement reversal is being processed. By default, the logged-in user's branch is displayed.
Product	Displays the name of the product associated with the program.
Program	Displays the name of the program that is linked to the receivables being financed.
Anchor	Displays the name of the anchor party in the program.
Linked Receivables/PO	Click the link to view a list of receivables (invoices/debit notes) / PO that is being financed.
Spoke	Displays the name of the counter party in the program.
Start Date	Displays the start date of the finance. By default, it is the current business date.
Maturity Date	Displays the maturity date of the finance. Maturity date gets calculated basis maturity date parameter selected at product level.
Total Receivable/PO Amount	Displays the total amount of the receivables/PO being financed.
Finance (%)	Displays the percentage of the total receivable/PO amount to be financed.



Table 6-9 (Cont.) Accounting - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Finance Amount	Displays the amount that has been financed. By default, this field displays the Finance (%) value of the total receivable amount.
Exchange Rate	Displays the exchange rate between the receivable/PO amount currency and the finance currency.
Processing Date	Displays the date of processing of the disbursement.
Pre-Shipment Settlement Amount	Displays the total pre-shipment settlement amount appropriated against the relevant outstanding pre-shipment finances.
	This field is displayed only if <b>Pre-Shipment Liquidation</b> is applicable.
Net Disbursed Amount	Displays the disbursed amount from post-shipment finance, that is Net Disbursed Amount = Post-Shipment Finance Amount - Pre- Shipment Settlement Amount.
	This field is displayed only if <b>Pre-Shipment Liquidation</b> is applicable.
Accounting Details	Accounting details of the finance is displayed in this section.
Accounting Entry Description	Displays the description of the accounting entry.
Accounting Role	Displays the accounting role code associated with the accounting entry.
Party	Displays the name of the party associated with the accounting entry.
Settlement Method	Displays the settlement mode of the transaction.
Dr/Cr	Displays whether the amount is debited or credited for the accounting entry.
Account	Displays the account number involved in the transaction.
Amount	Displays the amount of the transaction.
External Account Details	Displays the details of the account if it is an external account.
Reversal Accounting Entry	Accounting entries maintained for the disbursement reversal of the finance is displayed in this section.
Exact Reversal Entry	Switch this toggle ON to reverse the original accounting entries of the disbursement transaction. By default, this switch is OFF.
Accounting Entry Description	Displays the description of the accounting entry.
Accounting Role	Displays the accounting role code associated with the accounting entry.
Party	Displays the name of the party associated with the accounting entry.
Settlement Method	Displays the settlement mode of the transaction.
Dr/Cr	Displays whether the amount is debited or credited for the accounting entry.
Account	Displays the account number involved in the transaction.
Amount	Displays the amount of the transaction.
External Account Details	Displays the details of the account if it is an external account.

- **26.** Perform any of the below actions from the **Accounting** screen.
  - Click Next to go to the Summary screen.
  - Click **Save and Close** to save the details and complete the processing stage of the disbursement reversal.





- Click Back to go to the Charges screen.
- Click Reject to purge the disbursement reversal transaction.
- Click Hold to move the transaction to the Hold Tasks list.
- Click Cancel to cancel the transaction and return to the Free Tasks screen.

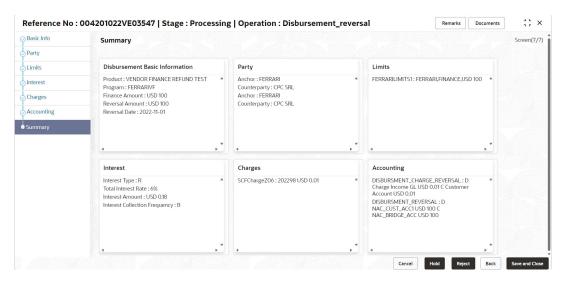
### Summary

The Summary screen shows a snapshot of the complete disbursement reversal transaction along with finance amount, interest applicable, terms, and so on. A tile is displayed for each data segment.

27. Click Next on the Accounting tab.

The Summary screen displays.

Figure 6-13 Disbursement Reversal - Summary



- 28. Review the details of the disbursement transaction and perform any of the following action from the **Summary** screen.
  - Click each tile to view the detailed information of the data segments.
  - Click Save and Close to save the details and complete the processing stage of the disbursement reversal.

# (i) Note

If the **Reversal Auth Required** toggle is enabled in the system parameters, an approval task is created in the system. Once approved, the finance gets reversed in the core lending system, which in-turn will return the disbursement reversed status to Supply Chain Finance system.

Click Back to go to the Accounting screen.



- Click Reject to purge the disbursement reversal transaction.
- Click Hold to move the transaction to the Hold Tasks list.
- Click Cancel to cancel the transaction and return to the Free Tasks screen.

# 6.3 Settlement Reversal Task

This topic describes the steps to process the settlement transaction reversal record.

When a reversal for settlement transaction is initiated, a settlement reversal task is created in the system based on the associated system parameters.



Only authorized users can process and authorize the settlement reversal tasks.

The settlement reversal tasks are segregated into the following data segments:

- Basic Info
- Party
- Limits
- Interest
- Charges
- Accounting
- Summary
- On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Tasks.
- Under Tasks, click Finance. Under Finance, click Free Tasks.

The Finance - Free Tasks screen displays.

Figure 6-14 Finance - Free Tasks



- Perform any of the below action from the Free Tasks screen.
  - Click the Acquire and Edit link beside the required settlement reversal tasks to process.



Select the checkbox of the required tasks and click Acquire button above the grid to
acquire multiple tasks. Once you acquire a task, it is moved to the My Tasks list. You
can then navigate to My Tasks screen and click Edit link beside the required
settlement reversal tasks to process.

### Note

The following information is displayed at the top of the settlement reversal tasks screen for each data segment.

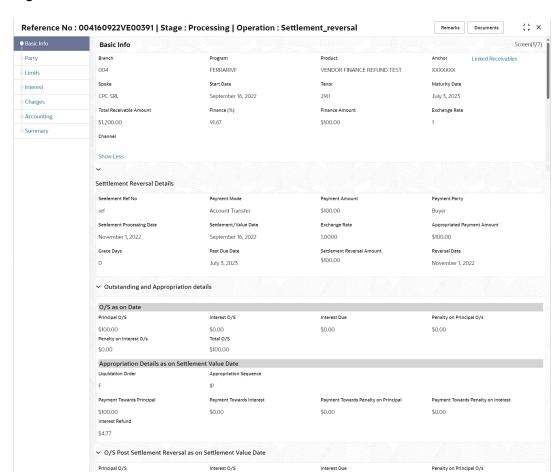
- The reference number, the stage, and the operation name of the transaction acquired for processing.
- Click **Remarks** button to add any comments about the transaction .
- Click **Documents** button to upload any new documents or view the uploaded documents relevant to the transaction.

### **Basic Info**

4. Click the Acquire and Edit link beside the required settlement tasks.

The **Basic Info** screen displays.





\$0.00

\$0.00

Figure 6-15 Settlement Reversal - Basic Info

5. Specify the fields on **Basic Info** screen.

\$100.00

\$0.00

Penalty on Interest O/s

(i) Note

The fields marked as **Required** are mandatory.

\$0.00

Total O/S

\$100.00

Table 6-10 Basic Info - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Basic Info	Basic information of the settlement transaction being reversed is displayed in this section.
Branch	Displays the branch where the settlement reversal is being processed. By default, the logged-in user's branch is displayed.
Program	Displays the name of the program that is linked to the receivables that have been financed.
Product	Displays the name of the product associated with the program.



Table 6-10 (Cont.) Basic Info - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Anchor	Displays the name of the anchor party in the program.
Linked Receivables/PO	Click the link to view a list of receivables (invoices/debit notes) / PO that have been financed.
Spoke	Displays the name of the counter party in the program.
Start Date	Displays the start date of the finance. By default, it is the current business date.
Tenor	Displays the tenor of the finance. The tenor of the finance gets defaulted basis start date and maturity date.
Maturity Date	Displays the maturity date of the finance. Maturity date gets calculated basis maturity date parameter selected at product level.
Total Receivable/PO Amount	Displays the total amount of the receivables/PO that have been financed.
Finance (%)	Displays the percentage of the total receivable/PO amount that have been financed.
Currency	Displays the currency of the finance amount.
Finance Amount	Displays the amount that has been financed. By default, this field displays the Finance (%) value of the Total Receivable Amount.
Exchange Rate	Displays the exchange rate between the receivable/PO amount currency and the finance currency.
Channel	Displays the source application from which the transaction is initiated.
Settlement Reversal Details	Settlement Reversal details of the finance is displayed in this section.
Settlement Ref No	Displays the reference number of the settlement.
Payment Mode	Displays the mode of payment of the settlement amount.
Payment Amount	Displays the total amount being paid by the payment party.
Payment Party	Displays the name of the party making the payment.
Settlement Processing Date	Displays the date of processing the settlement.
Settlement / Value Date	Displays the date on which the settlement process was initiated.
Exchange Rate	Displays the exchange rate between the finance currency and the settlement currency.
Appropriated Payment Amount	Displays the amount that is appropriated for the settlement of the selected finances.
Grace Days	Displays the number of days past the finance due date, within which the finance can be settled without penalty.
Past Due Date	Displays the new due date post the initial finance maturity date.
Settlement Reversal Amount	Displays the settlement amount that is reversed.
Reversal Date	Displays the date when the settlement transaction is reversed.
Post-Shipment Disbursement Details	This section is displayed only when post-shipment disbursement proceeds are used to liquidate a pre-shipment finance.
Finance Reference Number	Displays the reference number of the post-shipment finance. Click the hyperlink in the <b>Finance Reference Number</b> field to view more details on the finance
Settlement Processing Date	Displays the date of processing of the settlement.
Finance Start Date	Displays the start date of the finance.
Finance Maturity Date	Displays the maturity date of the finance.



Table 6-10 (Cont.) Basic Info - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Finance Amount	Displays the amount financed.
Pre-Shipment Settlement Amount	Displays the total pre-shipment settlement amount appropriated against the relevant outstanding pre-shipment finances.
Net Disbursed Amount	Displays the disbursed amount from post-shipment finance, Net Disbursed Amount = Post-Shipment Finance Amount – Pre-Shipment Settlement Amount.
Outstanding and Appropriation details	Outstanding and Appropriation details of the settled finance settled is displayed in this section.
O/S as on Date	Outstanding details of the finance on the current date is displayed in this section.
Principal O/S	Displays the outstanding principal amount as on the current date.
Interest O/S	Displays the outstanding interest as on the current date.
Interest Due	Displays the monthly interest due as on the current date.
Penalty on Principal O/S	Displays any penalty on the outstanding principal as on the current date.  A hyperlink for the <b>Penalty on Principal O/S</b> field is enabled only if any penalty on principal O/S is applicable. Click the hyperlink to open the pop-up screen to view the breakup.
Penalty on Interest O/S	Displays any penalty on the outstanding interest as on the current date.  A hyperlink for the <b>Penalty on Interest O/S</b> field is enabled only if any penalty on interest O/S is applicable. Click the hyperlink to open the pop-up screen to view the breakup.
Total O/S	Displays the total outstanding amount as on current date.
O/S as on Value/ Settlement Date	Outstanding details of the finance on the settlement date is displayed in this section.
Principal O/S	Displays the outstanding principal as on the settlement date.
Interest O/S	Displays the outstanding interest as on the settlement date.
Interest Due	Displays the monthly interest due as on the settlement date.
	A hyperlink for the <b>Interest Due</b> field is enabled only if any interest is due. Click the hyperlink to open the pop-up screen to view the datewise calculation details for interest due.
Penalty on Principal O/S	Displays any penalty on the outstanding principal as on the settlement date.
	A hyperlink for the <b>Penalty on Principal O/S</b> field is enabled only if any penalty on principal O/S is applicable. Click the hyperlink to open the pop-up screen to view the breakup.
Penalty on Interest O/S	Displays any penalty on the outstanding interest as on the settlement date.  A hyperlink for the <b>Penalty on Interest O/S</b> field is enabled only if any penalty on interest O/S is applicable. Click the hyperlink to open
T-1-1-0/0	the pop-up window to view the breakup.
Total O/S	Displays the total outstanding amount as on the settlement date.
Appropriation Details as on Settlement Value Date	Appropriation details of the payment towards the finance on the settlement value date is displayed in this section.



Table 6-10 (Cont.) Basic Info - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Liquidation Order	Displays the actual order in which the components are liquidated.  I - Interest due Date  E - Penalty on Interest Start Date  O - Penalty on Principal Start Date  F - Finances (Outstanding Finances)  D - Overdue Finance (Delinquent)
Appropriation Sequence	Displays the appropriation sequence of settlement amount.  P - Principal Amount  I - Interest amount  O - Penalty on Principal  E - Penalty on Interest
Payment Towards Principal	Displays the amount settled against the principal of the finance.  By default, the value entered as the payment amount in the  Settlement Details section is auto-populated.
Payment Towards Interest	Displays the amount settled against the interest of the finance.
Payment Towards Penalty on Principal	Displays the amount settled against the penalty on principal of the finance.
Payment Towards Penalty on Interest	Displays the amount settled against the penalty on interest of the finance.
Interest Refund	Displays any interest amount refunded.
O/S Post Settlement Reversal as on Settlement Value Date	Outstanding details of the finance post settlement reversal on the settlement value date is displayed in this section.
Principal O/S	Displays the principal amount that will be outstanding, post settlement reversal.
Interest O/S	Displays the interest amount that will be outstanding, post settlement reversal.
Interest Due	Displays the monthly interest due amount that will be outstanding, post settlement reversal.  A hyperlink for the <b>Interest Due</b> field is enabled only if any interest is due. Click the hyperlink to open the pop-up screen to view the datewise calculation details for interest due.
Penalty on Principal O/S	Displays the penalty on principal amount that will be outstanding, post settlement reversal.  A hyperlink for the <b>Penalty on Principal O/S</b> field is enabled only if any penalty on principal O/S is applicable. Click the hyperlink to open the pop-up window to view the breakup.
Penalty on Interest O/S	Displays the penalty on interest that will be outstanding, post settlement reversal.  A hyperlink for the <b>Penalty on Interest O/S</b> field is enabled only if any penalty on interest O/S is applicable. Click the hyperlink to open the pop-up window to view the breakup.
Total O/S	Displays the total amount that will be outstanding, post settlement reversal.

- 6. Perform any of the below actions from the **Basic Info** screen.
  - Click Next to go to the Party screen.
  - Click **Save and Close** to save the details and complete the processing stage of the settlement reversal.





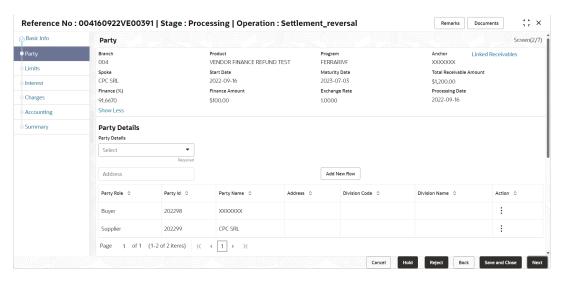
- Click Reject to purge the settlement reversal transaction.
- Click Hold to move the transaction to the Hold Tasks list.
- Click **Cancel** to cancel the transaction and return to the **Free Tasks** screen.

### **Party**

Click Next on the Basic Info tab.

The Party screen displays.

Figure 6-16 Settlement Reversal - Party



8. Specify the fields on Party screen.

(i) Note

The fields marked as **Required** are mandatory.

Table 6-11 Party - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Branch	Displays the branch code where the settlement reversal is being processed. By default, the logged-in user's branch code is displayed.
Product	Displays the name of the product associated with the program.
Program	Displays the name of the program that is linked to the receivables that have been financed.
Anchor	Displays the name of the anchor party in the program.



Table 6-11 (Cont.) Party - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Linked Receivables/PO	Click the link to view a list of receivables (invoices/debit notes) / PO that have been financed.
Spoke	Displays the name of the counter party in the program.
Settlement Processing Date	Displays the date of processing the settlement.
Settlement / Value Date	Displays the actual date of settlement.
Settlement Amount	Displays the amount being settled.
Party Details	Parties with specific roles in the program can be added in this section.
Party Details	Select the party role to be added.
	The available options are:
	• Buyer
	Supplier     Import Factor
	Import Factor     Export Factor
	• Insurance
	Beneficiary/Counter Party
Search Party	Click the Search icon to select the party.
Division	Click the Search icon to select the division code of the party.
Address	Specify the address of the selected party.
Add New Row	Click this button to add the selected party to the grid.
Party Role	Displays the role of the party.
Party Id	Displays the unique ID of the party.
Party Name	Displays the name of the party
Address	Displays the address of the party.
Division Code	Displays the division code of the party.
Division Name	Displays the division name of the party.
Action	Click <b>Options</b> icon to view the actions that can be taken on the party record.

- 9. Perform the following steps to take action on the parties in the grid:
  - Click Add New Row to add more parties.
  - Select the record in the grid and click **Options** icon under the **Actions** column and then click **Delete** to remove the party.
- **10.** Perform any of the below actions from the **Party** screen.
  - Click Next to go to the Limits screen.
  - Click Save and Close to save the details and complete the processing stage of the settlement reversal.
  - Click Back to go to the Basic Info screen.
  - Click Reject to purge the settlement transaction reversal.
  - Click Hold to move the transaction to the Hold Tasks list.
  - Click **Cancel** to cancel the transaction and return to the **Free Tasks** screen.

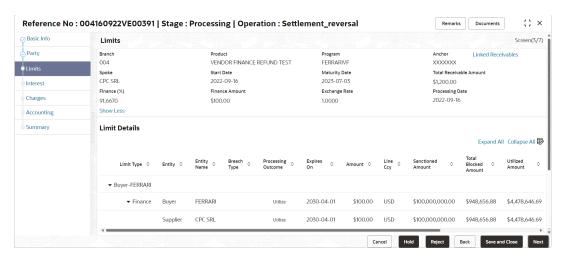
### Limits

11. Click **Next** on the **Party** tab.

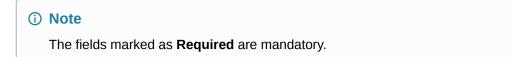


The Limits screen displays.

Figure 6-17 Settlement Reversal - Limits



12. Specify the fields on Limits screen.



**Table 6-12 Limits - Field Description** 

Field Name	Description
Branch	Displays the branch code where the settlement reversal is being processed. By default, the logged-in user's branch code is displayed.
Product	Displays the name of the product associated with the program.
Program	Displays the name of the program that is linked to the receivables that have been financed.
Anchor	Displays the name of the anchor party in the program.
Linked Receivables/PO	Click the link to view a list of receivables (invoices/debit notes) / PO that have been financed.
Spoke	Displays the name of the counter party in the program.
Settlement Processing Date	Displays the date of processing the settlement.
Settlement / Value Date	Displays the actual date of settlement.
Settlement Amount	Displays the amount being settled.
Limit Details	Limit details of the entity for which the settlement reversed is displayed in this section.
Limit Type	Displays a label of the entity and the linked limit type.
Entity	Displays the entity – Anchor / Product / Program / Spoke and so on.
Entity Name	Displays the name of the entity.
Breach Type	Displays any limit breach exception that has occurred with respect to the entity. (Limits Frozen, Amount Breach, Limits Expired).



Table 6-12 (Cont.) Limits - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Processing Outcome	Displays the action that will be taken on the limit as a result of settlement.  • Utilize - If the limit is being booked.
	Stop - If in case of an exception, the transaction should be blocked and not allowed to be processed further.
	Skip - If in case of an exception, the transaction is to be processed without limit booking.
	This behavior is driven by the credit limit mapping as configured in product parameters.
Amount	Displays the settlement amount with respect to the entity.
Line Ccy	Displays the currency of the limit line.
Exchange Rate	Displays the exchange rate between the settlement amount currency and the line currency.
Amount (In line CCY)	Displays the settlement amount in line currency.
Sanctioned Amount	Displays the limit amount assigned to the entity, in line currency.
Total Blocked Amount	Displays the total amount that has been blocked for finances that are currently being processed, with respect to the entity.
Total Utilized Amount	Displays the limit amount that has already been utilized.
Available Amount	Displays the limit amount available to the entity for financing.
Line Id	Displays the unique ID of the limit line of the entity.
Action	Displays the action <b>BLOCK</b> , as the released limits are blocked again as part of settlement reversal.
Actual Available Limits	Displays the actual limit available to the entity for financing.

- **13**. Perform any of the below actions from the **Limits** screen.
  - Click Next to go to the Interest screen.
  - Click Save and Close to save the details and complete the processing stage of the settlement reversal.

# (i) Note

If the **Reversal Auth Required** toggle is enabled in the system parameters, an approval task is created in the system.

- Click Back to go to the Party screen.
- Click Reject to purge the settlement reversal transaction.
- Click Hold to move the transaction to the Hold Tasks list.
- Click Cancel to cancel the transaction and return to the Free Tasks screen.

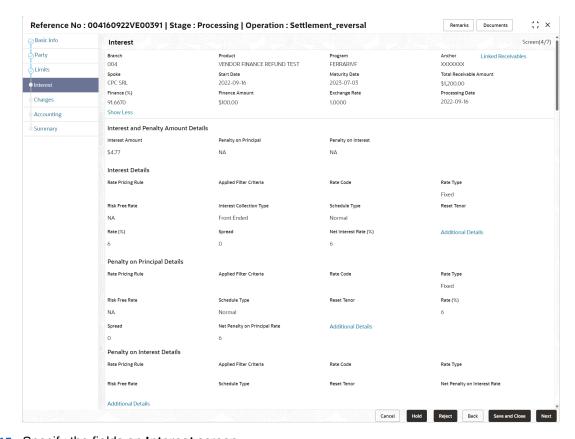
### Interest

14. Click Next on the Limits tab.

The Interest screen displays.



Figure 6-18 Settlement Reversal - Interest



15. Specify the fields on Interest screen.



The fields marked as **Required** are mandatory.

**Table 6-13 Interest - Field Description** 

Field Name	Description
Branch	Displays the branch code where the settlement reversal is being processed. By default, the logged-in user's branch code is displayed.
Product	Displays the name of the product associated with the program.
Program	Displays the name of the program that is linked to the receivables that have been financed.
Anchor	Displays the name of the anchor party in the program.
Linked Receivables/PO	Click the link to view a list of receivables (invoices/debit notes) / PO that have been financed.
Spoke	Displays the name of the counter party in the program.
Settlement Processing Date	Displays the date of processing the settlement.
Settlement / Value Date	Displays the actual date of settlement.
Settlement Amount	Displays the amount being settled.



Table 6-13 (Cont.) Interest - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Interest and Penalty Amount Details	Interest, Penalty on Principal, and Penalty on Interest details of the finance is displayed in this section.
Interest Amount	Displays the interest amount that has been calculated.
Penalty on Principal	Displays the penalty on the outstanding principal that has been calculated, if any.
Penalty on Interest	Displays the penalty on the outstanding interest that has been calculated, if any.
Interest Details	Interest details of the finance is displayed in this section.
Rate Pricing Rule	Displays the pricing rule applied for the interest rate.
Applied Filter Criteria	Displays the filter criteria applied for the interest rate.
Rate Code	Displays the unique code associated with the interest rate.
Rate Type	Displays whether the rate is floating or fixed.
Risk Free Rate	Displays whether the interest rate applied is risk free.
Interest Collection Type	Displays the type of interest collection, whether rear-ended, or front-ended.
Schedule Type	Displays whether the interest collection schedule is normal or compounding.
Reset Tenor	Displays the tenor for applying the new interest rate, in case of floating rate type.
Rate (%)	Displays the base rate of interest.
Spread	Displays the spread or margin rate of interest.
Net Interest Rate (%)	Displays the total rate of interest. This is the sum of Rate (%) and Spread.
Additional Details	Click this link to view additional interest details. Interest Additional Details - Displays additional information related to the interest.
	<ul> <li>Interest Payment Schedule - Displays the details of periodic interest dues for monthly rest transactions.</li> </ul>
Penalty on Principal Details	Penalty on principal details of the finance is displayed in this section.
Rate Pricing Rule	Displays the pricing rule applied for the interest rate.
Applied Filter Criteria	Displays the filter criteria applied for the interest rate.
Rate Code	Displays the code of the penalty on principal.
Rate Type	Displays whether the rate is floating or fixed.
Risk Free Rate	Displays whether the interest rate applied is risk free.
Schedule Type	Displays whether the interest collection schedule is normal or compounding.
Reset Tenor	Displays the tenor for applying the new interest rate, in case of floating rate type.
Rate (%)	Displays the base rate of interest.
Spread	Displays the spread or margin rate of interest.
Net Penalty on Principal Rate (%)	Displays the total rate of interest. This is the sum of Rate (%) and Spread.
Additional Details	Click this link to view additional details related to penalty on principal.
Penalty on Interest Details	Penalty on interest details of the finance is displayed in this section.
Rate Pricing Rule	Displays the pricing rule applied for the interest rate.
Applied Filter Criteria	Displays the filter criteria applied for the interest rate.



Table 6-13 (Cont.) Interest - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Rate Code	Displays the code of the penalty on the penalty on interest.
Rate Type	Displays whether the rate is floating or fixed.
Risk Free Rate	Displays whether the interest rate applied is risk free.
Schedule Type	Displays whether the interest collection schedule is normal or compounding.
Reset Tenor	Displays the tenor for applying the new interest rate, in case of floating rate type.
Rate (%)	Displays the base rate of interest.
Spread	Displays the spread or margin rate of interest.
Net Penalty on Principal Rate (%)	Displays the total rate of interest. This is the sum of Rate (%) and Spread.
Additional Details	Click this link to view additional details related to penalty on interest.

- **16.** Perform any of the below actions from the **Interest** screen.
  - Click Next to go to the Charges screen.
  - Click Save and Close to save the details and complete the processing stage of the settlement reversal.



### (i) Note

If the **Reversal Auth Required** toggle is enabled in the system parameters, an approval task is created in the system.

- Click Back to go to the Limits screen.
- Click **Reject** to purge the settlement reversal transaction.
- Click Hold to move the transaction to the Hold Tasks list.
- Click **Cancel** to cancel the transaction and return to the **Free Tasks** screen.

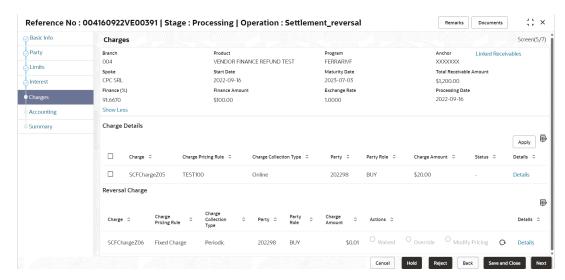
# Charges

17. Click Next on the Interest tab.

The **Charges** screen displays.



Figure 6-19 Settlement Reversal - Charges



18. Specify the fields on Charges screen.



**Table 6-14 Charges - Field Description** 

Field Name	Description
Branch	Displays the branch code where the settlement reversal is being processed. By default, the logged-in user's branch code is displayed.
Product	Displays the name of the product associated with the program.
Program	Displays the name of the program that is linked to the receivables that have been financed.
Anchor	Displays the name of the anchor party in the program.
Linked Receivables/PO	Click the link to view a list of receivables (invoices/debit notes) / PO that have been financed.
Spoke	Displays the name of the counter party in the program.
Settlement Processing Date	Displays the start date of the finance. By default, it is the current business date.
Settlement Processing Date	Displays the date of processing the settlement.
Settlement / Value Date	Displays the actual date of settlement.
Settlement Amount	Displays the amount being settled.
Charge Details	Charge details of the finance is displayed in this section.
Charge	Displays the charge code.
Charge Pricing Rule	Displays the charge pricing rule applicable to the transaction.
Charge Collection Type	Displays the type of charge collection applicable to the transaction.
Party	Displays the ID of the party that has been charged.
Party Role	Displays the role of the party that has been charged.



Table 6-14 (Cont.) Charges - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Charge Amount	Displays the amount charged along with the currency. If the charge is <b>Auto Waived</b> , then the charge amount field defaults to zero.
Status	Displays the status of the charge and View Original Charges hyperlink is enabled. Click the link to view the system calculated charges.
	This field is displayed only if <b>Auto Waive</b> is selected in the <b>Charge Decisioning</b> screen or if the settlement transaction is viewed from checker login.
Details	Click the link to view the charge details, external pricing details, and schedule of periodic charges.
	External Pricing Details tab is displayed only if External Pricing switch is enabled in the Charge Decisioning and Charge Preferential Pricing screens.
	Schedule of Periodic Charges tab is displayed only if the Charge Collection Type or Charge Calculation Type is selected as Periodic.
Reversal Charge	Charge details of the settlement reversal is displayed in this section.
Charge	Displays the charge code.
Charge Pricing Rule	Displays the charge pricing rule applicable to the transaction.
Charge Collection Type	Displays the type of charge collection applicable to the transaction.
Party	Displays the ID of the party that has been charged.
Party Role	Displays the role of the party that has been charged.
Charge Amount	Displays the amount charged along with the currency.  If the charge is <b>Auto Waived</b> , then the charge amount field defaults to zero.
Status	Displays the status of the charge and <b>View Original Charges</b> hyperlink is enabled. Click the link to view the system calculated charges.
	This field is displayed only if <b>Auto Waive</b> is selected in the <b>Charge Decisioning</b> screen or if the settlement reversal transaction is viewed from checker login.
Details	Click the link to view the charge details, external pricing details, and schedule of periodic charges.
	External Pricing Details tab is displayed only if External Pricing switch is enabled in the Charge Decisioning and Charge Preferential Pricing screens.
	Schedule of Periodic Charges tab is displayed only if the Charge Collection Type or Charge Calculation Type is selected as Periodic.

**19.** Click the link in the **Details** column to view the charge details, external pricing details, and schedule of periodic charges.



Figure 6-20 Charge Details

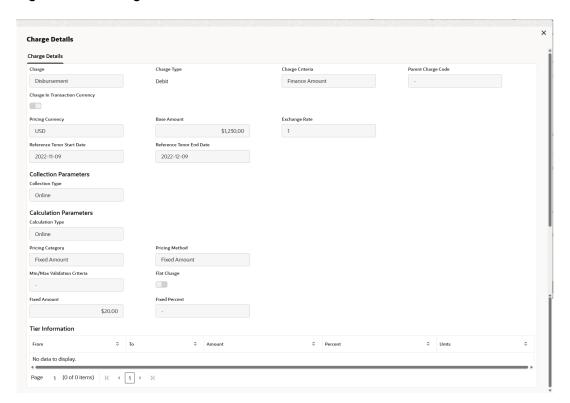
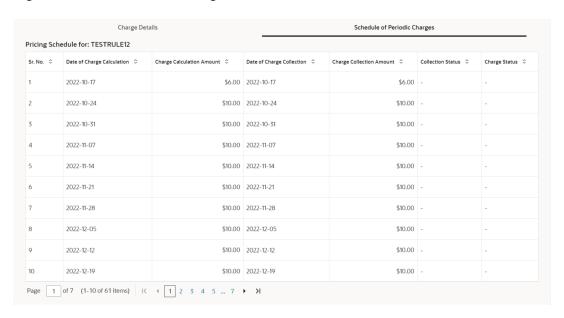


Figure 6-21 Schedule of Charges



- 20. Perform any of the below actions from the Charges screen.
  - Click Next to go to the Accounting screen.
  - Click Save and Close to save the details and complete the processing stage of the settlement reversal.





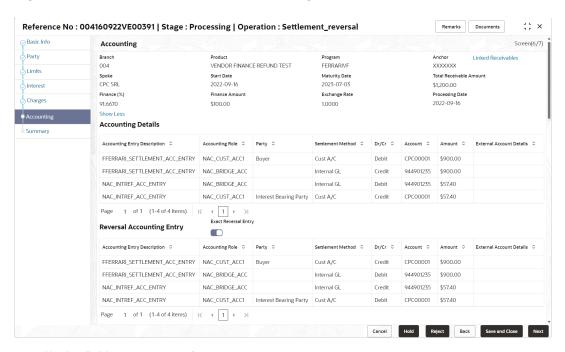
- Click Back to go to the Interest screen.
- Click Reject to purge the settlement reversal transaction.
- Click Hold to move the transaction to the Hold Tasks list.
- Click Cancel to cancel the transaction and return to the Free Tasks screen.

### **Accounting**

21. Click Next on the Charges tab.

The **Accounting** screen displays.

Figure 6-22 Settlement Reversal - Accounting



22. Specify the fields on Accounting screen.



The fields marked as **Required** are mandatory.

Table 6-15 Accounting - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Branch	Displays the branch code where the settlement reversal is being processed. By default, the logged-in user's branch code is displayed.



Table 6-15 (Cont.) Accounting - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Product	Displays the name of the product associated with the program.
Program	Displays the name of the program that is linked to the receivables that have been financed.
Anchor	Displays the name of the anchor party in the program.
Linked Receivables/PO	Click the link to view a list of receivables (invoices/debit notes) / PO that have been financed.
Spoke	Displays the name of the counter party in the program.
Settlement Processing Date	Displays the start date of the finance. By default, it is the current business date.
Settlement Processing Date	Displays the date of processing the settlement.
Settlement / Value Date	Displays the actual date of settlement.
Settlement Amount	Displays the amount being settled.
Accounting Details	Accounting details of the finance is displayed in this section.
Accounting Entry Description	Displays the description of the accounting entry.
Accounting Role	Displays the accounting role code associated with the accounting entry.
Party	Displays the name of the party associated with the accounting entry.
Settlement Method	Displays the settlement mode of the transaction.
Dr/Cr	Displays whether the amount is debited or credited for the accounting entry.
Account	Displays the account number involved in the transaction.
Amount	Displays the amount of the transaction.
<b>External Account Details</b>	Displays the details of the account if it is an external account.
Reversal Accounting Entry	Accounting entries maintained for the settlement reversal of the finance is displayed in this section.
Exact Reversal Entry	Switch this toggle ON to reverse the original accounting entries of the settlement transaction. By default, this switch is OFF.
Accounting Entry Description	Displays the description of the accounting entry.
Accounting Role	Displays the accounting role code associated with the accounting entry.
Party	Displays the name of the party associated with the accounting entry.
Settlement Method	Displays the settlement mode of the transaction.
Dr/Cr	Displays whether the amount is debited or credited for the accounting entry.
Account	Displays the account number involved in the transaction.
Amount	Displays the amount of the transaction.
External Account Details	Displays the details of the account if it is an external account.

- 23. Perform any of the below actions from the **Accounting** screen.
  - Click Next to go to the Summary screen.
  - Click Save and Close to save the details and complete the processing stage of the settlement reversal.





- Click Back to go to the Charges screen.
- Click Reject to purge the settlement reversal transaction.
- Click Hold to move the transaction to the Hold Tasks list.
- Click Cancel to cancel the transaction and return to the Free Tasks screen.

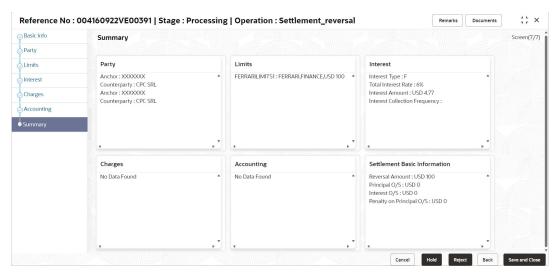
### Summary

The Summary tab shows a snapshot of the complete settlement reversal transaction along with finance amount, interest applicable, terms, and so on. A tile is displayed for each data segment.

24. Click Next on the Accounting tab.

The Summary screen displays.

Figure 6-23 Settlement Reversal - Summary



- **25.** Review the details of the settlement reversal transaction and perform any of the following action from the **Summary** screen.
  - Click each tile to view the detailed information of the data segments.
  - Click Save and Close to save the details and complete the processing stage of the settlement reversal.

### Note

If the **Reversal Auth Required** toggle is enabled in the system parameters, an approval task is created in the system. Once approved, the finance gets reversed in the core lending system, which in-turn will return the settlement reversed status to Supply Chain Finance system.

Click Back to go to the Accounting screen.



- Click Reject to purge the settlement reversal transaction.
- Click Hold to move the transaction to the Hold Tasks list.
- Click Cancel to cancel the transaction and return to the Free Tasks screen.

# 6.4 Amendment Reversal Task Process

This topic describes the steps to process the amendment transaction reversal record.

When a reversal for amendment transaction is initiated, a amendment reversal task is created in the system based on the associated system parameters.



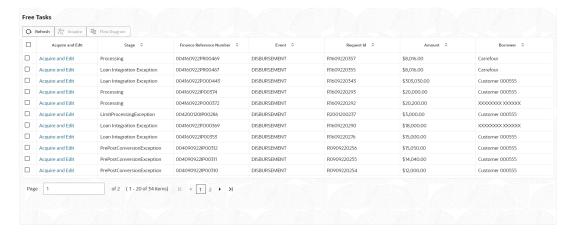
Only authorized users can process and authorize the amendment reversal tasks.

The amendment reversal tasks are segregated into the following data segments:

- Basic Info
- Party
- Interest
- Charges
- Accounting
- Summary
- On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Tasks.
- 2. Under Tasks, click Finance. Under Finance, click Free Tasks.

The **Finance - Free Tasks** screen displays.

Figure 6-24 Finance - Free Tasks



- Perform any of the below action from the Free Tasks screen.
  - Click the Acquire and Edit link beside the required amendment reversal tasks to process.



Select the check-box, and click the Acquire button above the grid to get multiple
tasks. After acquiring a task, it will be moved to your My Tasks list. You can go to the
My Tasks screen and click the Edit link next to the tasks you need to reverse to
process them.

# (i) Note

The following information is displayed at the top of the amendment reversal tasks screen for each data segment.

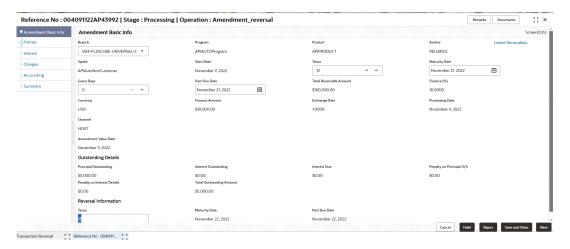
- The reference number, the stage, and the operation name of the transaction acquired for processing.
- Click Remarks button to add any comments about the transaction.
- Click **Documents** button to upload any new documents or view the uploaded documents relevant to the transaction.

### **Basic Info**

4. Click the **Acquire and Edit** link beside the required amendment tasks.

The **Basic Info** screen displays.

Figure 6-25 Amendment Reversal - Basic Info



5. Specify the fields on **Basic Info** screen.



The fields marked as **Required** are mandatory.



Table 6-16 Basic Info - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Basic Info	Basic information of the amendment transaction being reversed is displayed in this section.
Branch	Displays the branch where the amendment reversal is being processed. By default, the logged-in user's branch is displayed.
Program	Displays the name of the program that is linked to the receivables that have been financed.
Product	Displays the name of the product associated with the program.
Anchor	Displays the name of the anchor party in the program.
Linked Receivables/PO	Click the link to view a list of receivables (invoices/debit notes) / PO that have been financed.
Spoke	Displays the name of the counter party in the program.
Start Date	Displays the start date of the finance. By default, it is the current business date.
Tenor	Displays the tenor of the finance. The tenor of the finance gets defaulted basis start date and maturity date.
Maturity Date	Displays the maturity date of the finance. Maturity date gets calculated basis maturity date parameter selected at product level.
Total Receivable/PO Amount	Displays the total amount of the receivables/PO that have been financed.
Finance (%)	Displays the percentage of the total receivable/PO amount that have been financed.
Currency	Displays the currency of the finance amount.
Finance Amount	Displays the amount that has been financed. By default, this field displays the Finance (%) value of the Total Receivable Amount.
Exchange Rate	Displays the exchange rate between the receivable/PO amount currency and the finance currency.
Channel	Displays the source application from which the transaction is initiated.
Amendment Reversal Details	Amendment Reversal details of the finance is displayed in this section.
Amendment Ref No	Displays the reference number of the amendment.
Payment Mode	Displays the mode of payment of the amendment amount.
Payment Amount	Displays the total amount being paid by the payment party.
Payment Party	Displays the name of the party making the payment.
Amendment Processing Date	Displays the date of processing the amendment.
Amendment / Value Date	Displays the date on which the amendment process was initiated.
Exchange Rate	Displays the exchange rate between the finance currency and the amendment currency.
Appropriated Payment Amount	Displays the amount that is appropriated for the amendment of the selected finances.
Grace Days	Displays the number of days past the finance due date, within which the finance can be settled without penalty.
Past Due Date	Displays the new due date post the initial finance maturity date.
Amendment Reversal Amount	Displays the amendment amount that is reversed.
Reversal Date	Displays the date when the amendment transaction is reversed.



Table 6-16 (Cont.) Basic Info - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Post-Shipment Disbursement Details	This section is displayed only when post-shipment disbursement proceeds are used to liquidate a pre-shipment finance.
Finance Reference Number	Displays the reference number of the post-shipment finance. Click the hyperlink in the <b>Finance Reference Number</b> field to view more details on the finance
Amendment Processing Date	Displays the date of processing of the amendment.
Finance Start Date	Displays the start date of the finance.
Finance Maturity Date	Displays the maturity date of the finance.
Finance Amount	Displays the amount financed.
Pre-Shipment Amendment Amount	Displays the total pre-shipment amendment amount appropriated against the relevant outstanding pre-shipment finances.
Net Disbursed Amount	Displays the disbursed amount from post-shipment finance, that is Net Disbursed Amount = Post-Shipment Finance Amount – Pre- Shipment amendment Amount.
Outstanding and Appropriation details	Outstanding and Appropriation details of the settled finance settled is displayed in this section.
O/S as on Date	Outstanding details of the finance on the current date is displayed in this section.
Principal O/S	Displays the outstanding principal amount as on the current date.
Interest O/S	Displays the outstanding interest as on the current date.
Interest Due	Displays the monthly interest due as on the current date.
Penalty on Principal O/S	Displays any penalty on the outstanding principal as on the current date.
	A hyperlink for the <b>Penalty on Principal O/S</b> field is enabled only if any penalty on principal O/S is applicable. Click the hyperlink to open the pop-up screen to view the breakup.
Penalty on Interest O/S	Displays any penalty on the outstanding interest as on the current date.
	A hyperlink for the <b>Penalty on Interest O/S</b> field is enabled only if any penalty on interest O/S is applicable. Click the hyperlink to open the pop-up screen to view the breakup.
Total O/S	Displays the total outstanding amount as on current date.
O/S as on Value/ Amendment Date	Outstanding details of the finance on the amendment date is displayed in this section.
Principal O/S	Displays the outstanding principal as on the amendment date.
Interest O/S	Displays the outstanding interest as on the amendment date.
Interest Due	Displays the monthly interest due as on the amendment date.
	The link for the <b>Interest Due</b> field is active only when there is interest owed. Click the link to see a pop-up with the detailed date-wise calculations for the interest due.
Penalty on Principal O/S	Displays any penalty on the outstanding principal as on the amendment date.
	A link for the <b>Penalty on Principal O/S</b> field is active only when a penalty on principal O/S is applicable. Click the link to see a pop-up screen to view a detailed breakup.



Table 6-16 (Cont.) Basic Info - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Penalty on Interest O/S	Displays any penalty on the outstanding interest as on the amendment date.
	A link for the <b>Penalty on Interest O/S</b> field is active only when a penalty on interest O/S is applicable. Click the link to see a pop-up window view a detailed breakup.
Total O/S	Displays the total outstanding amount as on the amendment date.
Appropriation Details as on Amendment Value Date	Appropriation details of the payment towards the finance on the amendment value date is displayed in this section.
Liquidation Order	Displays the actual order in which the components are liquidated.  I - Interest due Date  E - Penalty on Interest Start Date  O - Penalty on Principal Start Date  F - Finances (Outstanding Finances)  D - Overdue Finance (Delinquent)
Appropriation Sequence	Displays the appropriation sequence of amendment amount.  P - Principal Amount  I - Interest amount  O - Penalty on Principal  E - Penalty on Interest
Payment Towards Principal	Displays the amount settled against the principal of the finance.  By default, the value entered as the payment amount in the amendment Details section is auto-populated.
Payment Towards Interest	Displays the amount settled against the interest of the finance.
Payment Towards Penalty on Principal	Displays the amount settled against the penalty on principal of the finance.
Payment Towards Penalty on Interest	Displays the amount settled against the penalty on interest of the finance.
Interest Refund	Displays any interest amount refunded.
O/S Post Amendment Reversal as on Amendment Value Date	Outstanding details of the finance post amendment reversal on the amendment value date is displayed in this section.
Principal O/S	Displays the principal amount that will be outstanding, post amendment reversal.
Interest O/S	Displays the interest amount that will be outstanding, post amendment reversal.
Interest Due	Displays the monthly interest due amount that will be outstanding, post amendment reversal.
	A hyperlink for the <b>Interest Due</b> field is enabled only if any interest is due. Click the hyperlink to open the pop-up screen to view the datewise calculation details for interest due.
Penalty on Principal O/S	Displays the penalty on principal amount that will be outstanding, post amendment reversal.
	A hyperlink for the <b>Penalty on Principal O/S</b> field is enabled only if any penalty on principal O/S is applicable. Click the hyperlink to open the pop-up window to view the breakup.



Table 6-16 (Cont.) Basic Info - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Penalty on Interest O/S	Displays the penalty on interest that will be outstanding, post amendment reversal.
	A hyperlink for the <b>Penalty on Interest O/S</b> field is enabled only if any penalty on interest O/S is applicable. Click the hyperlink to open the pop-up window to view the breakup.
Total O/S	Displays the total amount that will be outstanding, post amendment reversal.

- 6. Perform any of the below actions from the **Basic Info** screen.
  - Click Next to go to the Party screen.
  - Click Save and Close to save the details and complete the processing stage of the amendment reversal.



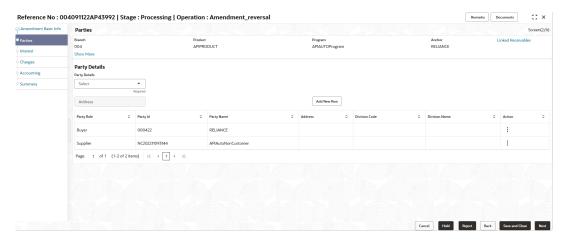
- Click **Reject** to purge the amendment reversal transaction.
- Click Hold to move the transaction to the Hold Tasks list.
- Click **Cancel** to cancel the transaction and return to the **Free Tasks** screen.

### **Party**

7. Click Next on the Basic Info tab.

The Party screen displays.

Figure 6-26 Amendment Reversal - Party



8. Specify the fields on **Party** screen.

Note

The fields marked as **Required** are mandatory.



Table 6-17 Party - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Branch	Displays the branch code where the amendment reversal is being processed. By default, the logged-in user's branch code is displayed.
Product	Displays the name of the product associated with the program.
Program	Displays the name of the program that is linked to the receivables that have been financed.
Anchor	Displays the name of the anchor party in the program.
Linked Receivables/PO	Click the link to view a list of receivables (invoices/debit notes) / PO that have been financed.
Spoke	Displays the name of the counter party in the program.
Amendment Processing Date	Displays the date of processing the amendment.
Amendment / Value Date	Displays the actual date of amendment.
Amendment Amount	Displays the amount being settled.
Party Details	Parties with specific roles in the program can be added in this section.
Party Details	Select the party role to be added.  The available options are:  Buyer  Supplier  Import Factor  Export Factor  Insurance  Beneficiary/Counter Party
Search Party	Click the Search icon to select the party.
Division	Click the Search icon to select the division code of the party.
Address	Specify the address of the selected party.
Add New Row	Click this button to add the selected party to the grid.
Party Role	Displays the role of the party.
Party Id	Displays the unique ID of the party.
Party Name	Displays the name of the party
Address	Displays the address of the party.
Division Code	Displays the division code of the party.
Division Name	Displays the division name of the party.
Action	Click <b>Options</b> icon to view the actions that can be taken on the party record.

- 9. Perform the following steps to take action on the parties in the grid:
  - Click Add New Row to add more parties.
  - Select the record in the grid and click **Options** icon under the **Actions** column and then click **Delete** to remove the party.
- **10.** Perform any of the below actions from the **Party** screen.
  - Click Next to go to the Interest screen.
  - Click Save and Close to save the details and complete the processing stage of the amendment reversal.



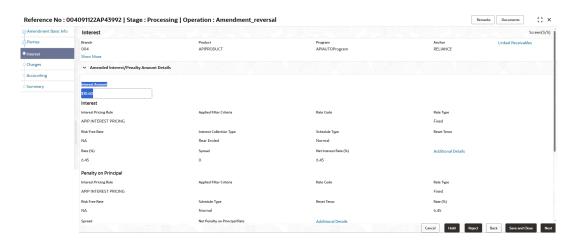
- Click Back to go to the Basic Info screen.
- Click Reject to purge the amendment transaction reversal.
- Click Hold to move the transaction to the Hold Tasks list.
- Click Cancel to cancel the transaction and return to the Free Tasks screen.

### **Interest**

11. Click **Next** on the **Interest** tab.

The Interest screen displays.

Figure 6-27 Amendment Reversal - Interest



**12.** Specify the fields on **Interest** screen.

Note
 The fields marked as Required are mandatory.

Table 6-18 Interest - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Branch	Displays the branch code where the amendment reversal is being processed. By default, the logged-in user's branch code is displayed.
Product	Displays the name of the product associated with the program.
Program	Displays the name of the program that is linked to the receivables that have been financed.
Anchor	Displays the name of the anchor party in the program.
Linked Receivables/PO	Click the link to view a list of receivables (invoices/debit notes) / PO that have been financed.
Spoke	Displays the name of the counter party in the program.
Amendment Processing Date	Displays the date of processing the amendment.
Amendment / Value Date	Displays the actual date of amendment.
Amendment Amount	Displays the amount being settled.



Table 6-18 (Cont.) Interest - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Interest and Penalty Amount Details	Interest, Penalty on Principal, and Penalty on Interest details of the finance is displayed in this section.
Interest Amount	Displays the interest amount that has been calculated.
Penalty on Principal	Displays the penalty on the outstanding principal that has been calculated, if any.
Penalty on Interest	Displays the penalty on the outstanding interest that has been calculated, if any.
Interest Details	Interest details of the finance is displayed in this section.
Interest Pricing Rule	Displays the pricing rule applied for the interest rate.
Applied Filter Criteria	Displays the filter criteria applied for the interest rate.
Rate Code	Displays the unique code associated with the interest rate.
Rate Type	Displays whether the rate is floating or fixed.
Risk Free Rate	Displays whether the interest rate applied is risk free.
Interest Collection Type	Displays the type of interest collection, whether rear-ended, or front-ended.
Schedule Type	Displays whether the interest collection schedule is normal or compounding.
Reset Tenor	Displays the tenor for applying the new interest rate, in case of floating rate type.
Rate (%)	Displays the base rate of interest.
Spread	Displays the spread or margin rate of interest.
Net Interest Rate (%)	Displays the total rate of interest. This is the sum of Rate (%) and Spread.
Additional Details	Click this link to view additional interest details. Interest Additional Details - Displays additional information related to the interest.
	<ul> <li>Interest Payment Schedule - Displays the details of periodic interest dues for monthly rest transactions.</li> </ul>
Penalty on Principal Details	Penalty on principal details of the finance is displayed in this section.
Interest Pricing Rule	Displays the pricing rule applied for the interest rate.
Applied Filter Criteria	Displays the filter criteria applied for the interest rate.
Rate Code	Displays the code of the penalty on principal.
Rate Type	Displays whether the rate is floating or fixed.
Risk Free Rate	Displays whether the interest rate applied is risk free.
Schedule Type	Displays whether the interest collection schedule is normal or compounding.
Reset Tenor	Displays the tenor for applying the new interest rate, in case of floating rate type.
Rate (%)	Displays the base rate of interest.
Spread	Displays the spread or margin rate of interest.
Net Penalty on Principal Rate (%)	Displays the total rate of interest. This is the sum of Rate (%) and Spread.
Additional Details	Click this link to view additional details related to penalty on principal.
Penalty on Interest Details	Penalty on interest details of the finance is displayed in this section.
Interest Pricing Rule	Displays the pricing rule applied for the interest rate.
Applied Filter Criteria	Displays the filter criteria applied for the interest rate.



Table 6-18 (Cont.) Interest - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Rate Code	Displays the code of the penalty on the penalty on interest.
Rate Type	Displays whether the rate is floating or fixed.
Risk Free Rate	Displays whether the interest rate applied is risk free.
Schedule Type	Displays whether the interest collection schedule is normal or compounding.
Reset Tenor	Displays the tenor for applying the new interest rate, in case of floating rate type.
Rate (%)	Displays the base rate of interest.
Spread	Displays the spread or margin rate of interest.
Net Penalty on Principal Rate (%)	Displays the total rate of interest. This is the sum of Rate (%) and Spread.
Additional Details	Click this link to view additional details related to penalty on interest.

- **13.** Perform any of the below actions from the **Interest** screen.
  - Click Next to go to the Charges screen.
  - Click Save and Close to save the details and complete the processing stage of the amendment reversal.



### (i) Note

If the **Reversal Auth Required** toggle is enabled in the system parameters, an approval task is created in the system.

- Click Back to go to the Parties screen.
- Click **Reject** to purge the amendment reversal transaction.
- Click Hold to move the transaction to the Hold Tasks list.
- Click **Cancel** to cancel the transaction and return to the **Free Tasks** screen.

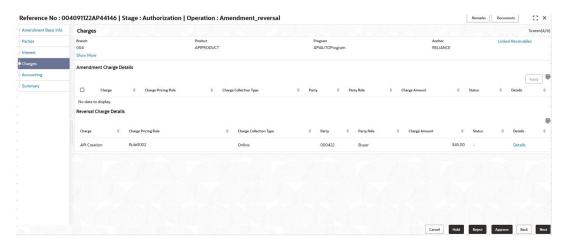
# Charges

14. Click Next on the Interest tab.

The **Charges** screen displays.



Figure 6-28 Amendment Reversal - Charges



15. Specify the fields on **Charges** screen.



The fields marked as **Required** are mandatory.

**Table 6-19 Charges - Field Description** 

Field Name	Description
Branch	Displays the branch code where the amendment reversal is being processed. By default, the logged-in user's branch code is displayed.
Product	Displays the name of the product associated with the program.
Program	Displays the name of the program that is linked to the receivables that have been financed.
Anchor	Displays the name of the anchor party in the program.
Linked Receivables/PO	Click the link to view a list of receivables (invoices/debit notes) / PO that have been financed.
Spoke	Displays the name of the counter party in the program.
Amendment Processing Date	Displays the start date of the finance. By default, it is the current business date.
Amendment Processing Date	Displays the date of processing the amendment.
Amendment / Value Date	Displays the actual date of amendment.
Amendment Amount	Displays the amount being settled.
Charge Details	Charge details of the finance is displayed in this section.
Charge	Displays the charge code.
Charge Pricing Rule	Displays the charge pricing rule applicable to the transaction.
Charge Collection Type	Displays the type of charge collection applicable to the transaction.
Party	Displays the ID of the party that has been charged.
Party Role	Displays the role of the party that has been charged.



Table 6-19 (Cont.) Charges - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Charge Amount	Displays the amount charged along with the currency.  If the charge is <b>Auto Waived</b> , then the charge amount field defaults to zero.
Status	Displays the status of the charge and View Original Charges hyperlink is enabled. Click the link to view the system calculated charges.  This field is displayed only if <b>Auto Waive</b> is selected in the <b>Charge</b>
	Decisioning screen or if the amendment transaction is viewed from checker login.
Details	Click the link to view the charge details, external pricing details, and schedule of periodic charges.
	External Pricing Details tab is displayed only if External Pricing switch is enabled in the Charge Decisioning and Charge Preferential Pricing screens.
	Schedule of Periodic Charges tab is displayed only if the Charge Collection Type or Charge Calculation Type is selected as Periodic.
Reversal Charge	Charge details of the amendment reversal is displayed in this section.
Charge	Displays the charge code.
Charge Pricing Rule	Displays the charge pricing rule applicable to the transaction.
Charge Collection Type	Displays the type of charge collection applicable to the transaction.
Party	Displays the ID of the party that has been charged.
Party Role	Displays the role of the party that has been charged.
Charge Amount	Displays the amount charged along with the currency.  If the charge is <b>Auto Waived</b> , then the charge amount field defaults to zero.
Status	Displays the status of the charge and <b>View Original Charges</b> hyperlink is enabled. Click the link to view the system calculated charges.
	This field is displayed only if <b>Auto Waive</b> is selected in the <b>Charge Decisioning</b> screen or if the amendment reversal transaction is viewed from checker login.
Details	Click the link to view the charge details, external pricing details, and schedule of periodic charges.
	External Pricing Details tab is displayed only if External Pricing switch is enabled in the Charge Decisioning and Charge Preferential Pricing screens.
	Schedule of Periodic Charges tab is displayed only if the Charge Collection Type or Charge Calculation Type is selected as Periodic.

- **16.** Perform any of the below actions from the **Charges** screen.
  - Click Next to go to the Accounting screen.
  - Click **Save and Close** to save the details and complete the processing stage of the amendment reversal.





### (i) Note

If the **Reversal Auth Required** toggle is enabled in the system parameters, an approval task is created in the system.

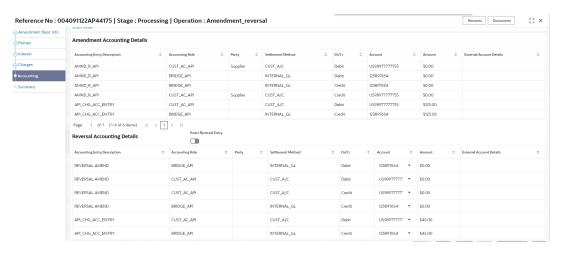
- Click Back to go to the Interest screen.
- Click **Reject** to purge the amendment reversal transaction.
- Click Hold to move the transaction to the Hold Tasks list.
- Click **Cancel** to cancel the transaction and return to the **Free Tasks** screen.

### **Accounting**

17. Click Next on the Charges tab.

The **Accounting** screen displays.

Figure 6-29 Amendment Reversal - Accounting



18. Specify the fields on Accounting screen.



### Note

The fields marked as **Required** are mandatory.

Table 6-20 Accounting - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Branch	Displays the branch code where the amendment reversal is being processed. By default, the logged-in user's branch code is displayed.
Product	Displays the name of the product associated with the program.
Program	Displays the name of the program that is linked to the receivables that have been financed.
Anchor	Displays the name of the anchor party in the program.



Table 6-20 (Cont.) Accounting - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Linked Receivables/PO	Click the link to view a list of receivables (invoices/debit notes) / PO that have been financed.
Spoke	Displays the name of the counter party in the program.
Amendment Processing Date	Displays the start date of the finance. By default, it is the current business date.
Amendment Processing Date	Displays the date of processing the amendment.
Amendment / Value Date	Displays the actual date of amendment.
Amendment Amount	Displays the amount being settled.
Accounting Details	Accounting details of the finance is displayed in this section.
Accounting Entry Description	Displays the description of the accounting entry.
Accounting Role	Displays the accounting role code associated with the accounting entry.
Party	Displays the name of the party associated with the accounting entry.
Amendment Method	Displays the amendment mode of the transaction.
Dr/Cr	Displays whether the amount is debited or credited for the accounting entry.
Account	Displays the account number involved in the transaction.
Amount	Displays the amount of the transaction.
External Account Details	Displays the details of the account if it is an external account.
Reversal Accounting Entry	Accounting entries maintained for the amendment reversal of the finance is displayed in this section.
Exact Reversal Entry	Switch this toggle ON to reverse the original accounting entries of the amendment transaction. By default, this switch is OFF.
Accounting Entry Description	Displays the description of the accounting entry.
Accounting Role	Displays the accounting role code associated with the accounting entry.
Party	Displays the name of the party associated with the accounting entry.
Amendment Method	Displays the amendment mode of the transaction.
Dr/Cr	Displays whether the amount is debited or credited for the accounting entry.
Account	Displays the account number involved in the transaction.
Amount	Displays the amount of the transaction.
External Account Details	Displays the details of the account if it is an external account.

- **19.** Perform any of the below actions from the **Accounting** screen.
  - Click Next to go to the Summary screen.
  - Click Save and Close to save the details and complete the processing stage of the amendment reversal.





- Click Back to go to the Charges screen.
- Click Reject to purge the amendment reversal transaction.
- Click Hold to move the transaction to the Hold Tasks list.
- Click Cancel to cancel the transaction and return to the Free Tasks screen.

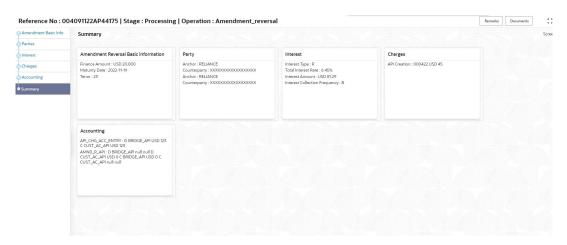
### **Summary**

The Summary tab shows a snapshot of the complete amendment reversal transaction along with finance amount, interest applicable, terms, and so on. A tile is displayed for each data segment.

20. Click Next on the Accounting tab.

The **Summary** screen displays.

Figure 6-30 Amendment Reversal - Summary



- 21. Check the details of the amendment reversal transaction and take any of the following actions from the **Summary** screen.
  - Click each tile to view the detailed information of the data segments.
  - Click Save and Close to save the details and complete the processing stage of the amendment reversal.

### Note

When the **Reversal Auth Required** option is turned on in the system settings, an approval task is generated. After approval, the finance is reversed in the main lending system, which then updates the Supply Chain Finance system with the reversed status.

- Click Back to go to the Accounting screen.
- Click Reject to purge the amendment reversal transaction.
- Click Hold to move the transaction to the Hold Tasks list.
- Click Cancel to cancel the transaction and return to the Free Tasks screen.

## Inquiries

This topic describes the information on the various inquiries supported in the Supply Chain Finance module.

This topic consists the following sub-topics:

#### Accounting Inquiry

This topic describes the systematic instruction to search for accounting entries based on various criteria such as File Reference Number, Event, Product, Party, Account Number, and so on.

#### Charge Inquiry

This topic describes the systematic instruction to search for charges based on various criteria such as Branch, Event, Party, Party Role, Product, Charge Type, and so on.

#### Finance Inquiry

This topic describes the systematic instruction to search for finances based on various criteria such as File Reference Number, Buyer, Supplier, Processing Date, Finance Date, Finance Amount, and so on.

#### Message Inquiry

This topic describes the systematic instruction to search for FCI messages based on various criteria such as Inward/Outward, Message Type, Buyer, Supplier, Message Reference Number, Status, Date Range, and so on.

#### Structure Limits Inquiry

This topic describes the systematic instruction to search for party limits based on various criteria such as Limit Type, Entity, Party Id, External Line Id, Date Reference Basis, Date Range, and so on.

#### • Structure Limits Txn Inquiry

This topic describes the systematic instruction to search for party limits with respect to a specific transaction based on various criteria such as Reference Basis, Limit Entity Type, Limit Type, Limit Event, External Line Id, Date Range, and so on.

### 7.1 Accounting Inquiry

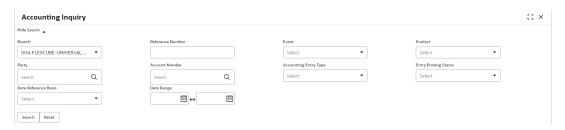
This topic describes the systematic instruction to search for accounting entries based on various criteria such as File Reference Number, Event, Product, Party, Account Number, and so on.

- On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Inquiry.
- 2. Under Inquiry, click Accounting Inquiry.

The **Accounting Inquiry** screen displays.



Figure 7-1 Accounting Inquiry



3. Specify the fields on Accounting Inquiry screen.

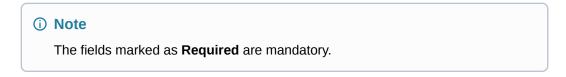


Table 7-1 Accounting Inquiry - Field Description

Field	Description
Branch	Select the required branch to proceed further. By default, the branch of the logged-in user is selected.
Reference Number	Specify the reference number.
Event	Select the event to search the accounting information for.
	The available options are:  • Amendment
	Auto Debit
	Disbursement
	Disbursement Reversal
	Excess Refund
	Interest Refund     Managin Refund
	Margin Refund     Desidual Resument Refund
	Residual Payment Refund     Settlement
	Settlement Reversal
Product	Select the product to inquire the accounting for.
Party	Click the Search icon to select the party.
Account Number	Click the Search icon to select the account number.
Accounting Entry Type	Select the account entry type.
	The available options are:
	Both
	Credit
	Debit
Entry Posting Status	Select the status of the accounting entry to inquire for.
	The available options are:
	Failure
	Success



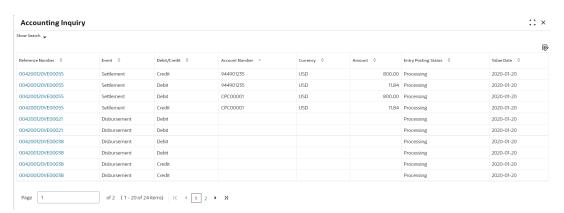
Table 7-1 (Cont.) Accounting Inquiry - Field Description

Field	Description
Date Reference Basis	Select the basis for a date range search.
	The available options are:
	Processing Date
	Value Date
Date Range	Click the Calendar icons and select the start and end dates of the date range for the selected <b>Date Reference Basis</b> .

4. Click **Search** to view the search results.

The Accounting Inquiry - Search Results screen displays.

Figure 7-2 Accounting Inquiry - Search Results



Click on the hyperlink data in the Reference Number column to view more details of the record.

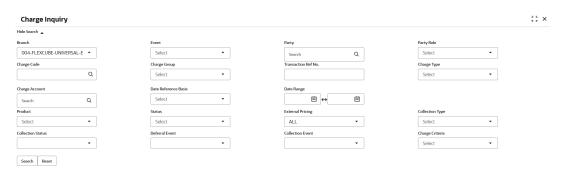
### 7.2 Charge Inquiry

This topic describes the systematic instruction to search for charges based on various criteria such as Branch, Event, Party, Party Role, Product, Charge Type, and so on.

- On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Inquiry.
- 2. Under Inquiry, click Charge Inquiry.

The **Charge Inquiry** screen displays.

Figure 7-3 Charge Inquiry





Specify the fields on Charge Inquiry screen.

#### Note

The fields marked as **Required** are mandatory.

Table 7-2 Charge Inquiry - Field Description

Field	Description
Branch	Select the required branch to proceed further. By default, the branch of the logged-in user is selected.
Event	Select the event to which the charge is applicable.
	The available options are:
	• Amendment
	Disbursement     Disbursement Reversal
	Settlement
	Settlement Reversal
Party	Click the Search icon and select the party that has been charged.
Party Role	Select the role of the party.
	The available options are:
	Buyer     Import Factor
	Import Factor     Insurance Party
	• Supplier
Charge Code	Click the Search icon and select the charge code to inquire for.
Charge Group	Select the group to which the charge code belongs.
	The available options are:
	Commission     Fees
	Rebates
	• Tax
Transaction Ref No.	Specify the reference number or charge reference number to inquire for.
Charge Type	Select the value to specify whether the type of charge is <b>Debit</b> or <b>Credit</b> .
Charge Account	Click the Search icon and select the account in which charges takes effect.
Date Reference Basis	Select the type of date range to be applied for search.
	Calculation Date – To list all relevant charges only on the basis of calculation irrespective of its posting details.
	<ul> <li>Posting Date – To list all relevant charges only on the basis of posting irrespective of when it was calculated.</li> </ul>
Date Range	Click the Calendar icon and select the start date and end date of the date range.



Table 7-2 (Cont.) Charge Inquiry - Field Description

Field	Description
Collection Type	Select collection type from the drop-down. The available options are: Periodic Deferred Online
Product	Select the product to which the charge is applicable.
Status	Select the value to specify the status of charge. The available options are: Auto Waived Modified Overridden Waived
External Pricing	Select the value to specify whether external pricing is applied.  The available options are:  ALL  Yes  No
Collection Status	Select collection status from the drop-down. The available options are:  Collected  Not Collected
Deferral Event	Select deferral event from the drop-down. The available options are:  Assignment  EOD Invoice Recon Manage Dispute Mark Indirect Payment Mark PUA Raise Dispute Reassignment Amendment Disbursement Disbursement Settlement Settlement Reversal
Collection Event	Select collection event from the drop-down. The available options are:  • Amendment • Amendment Reversal • Disbursement • Disbursement Reversal • Settlement • Settlement Reversal



Table 7-2 (Cont.) Charge Inquiry - Field Description

Field	Description
Charge Criteria	Select charge criteria from the drop-down. The available options are:  • Assignment Amount
	Base Invoice Amount
	Base PO Amount
	Finance Amount
	Invoice Acceptance Amount
	Net Invoice Amount
	Parent Charge Code
	PO Accpetance Amount
	Net PO Amount
	Total Invoice Amount
	Total PO Amount

Click Search to view the search results.

The Charge Inquiry - Search Results screen displays.

Figure 7-4 Charge Inquiry - Search Results



5. Click on the hyperlink data in the **Txn Ref No.** column to view more details of the record.

### 7.3 Finance Inquiry

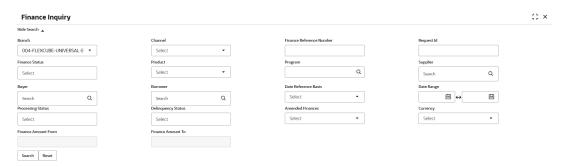
This topic describes the systematic instruction to search for finances based on various criteria such as File Reference Number, Buyer, Supplier, Processing Date, Finance Date, Finance Amount, and so on.

- On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Inquiry.
- Under Inquiry, click Finance Inquiry.

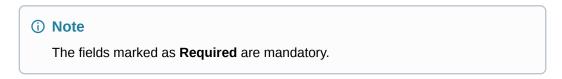
The Finance Inquiry screen displays.



Figure 7-5 Finance Inquiry



3. Specify the fields on Finance Inquiry screen.



**Table 7-3** Finance Inquiry - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Branch	Select the required branch to proceed further. By default, the branch of the logged-in user is selected.
Channel	Select the channel from the drop-down. The available options are:  External  External File Upload  Host  Host File Upload  Host Auto Debit  OBDX  OBDX File Upload
Finance Reference Number	Specify the finance reference number to inquire for.
Request Id	Specify the request id to inquire for.
Finance Status	Select the current finance status to inquire for. User can select multiple status in this field.  The available options are:  Disbursed  Disbursement Reversed  Outstanding  Overdue  Partial Settled
Product	Click the Search icon to select the product for which the finance is processed.
Program	Click the Search icon to select the program for which the finance is processed.
Supplier	Click the Search icon to select the supplier party of the finance.
Buyer	Click the Search icon to select the buyer party of the finance.



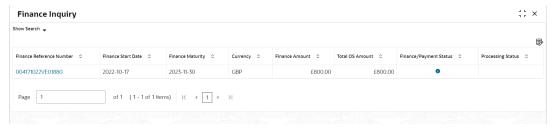
Table 7-3 (Cont.) Finance Inquiry - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Borrower	Click the Search icon to select the borrower.
Date Reference Basis	Select the type of date range to be applied for search.
	The available options are:  • Finance Date
	<ul><li>Finance Maturity Date</li><li>Processing Date</li></ul>
Date Range	Click the Calendar icon and select the start date and end date of the date range.
Processing Status	Select the current status of the finance to filter the search result. User can select multiple status in this field.
Delinquency Status	Select the delinquency status of the finance to filter the search result. User can select multiple status in this field.
Amendment Status	Select the amendment status of the finance to filter the search result. The available options are:  No Yes All
Currency	Select the currency of the transaction.
Finance Amount From	Specify the minimum finance amount to be considered for the search.
Finance Amount To	Specify the maximum finance amount to be considered for the search.

4. Click **Search** to view the search results.

The Finance Inquiry - Search Results screen displays.

Figure 7-6 Finance Inquiry - Search Results



Click on the hyperlink data in the Finance Reference Number column to view more details of the record.

### 7.4 Message Inquiry

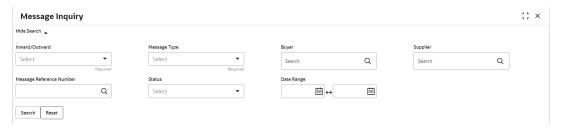
This topic describes the systematic instruction to search for FCI messages based on various criteria such as Inward/Outward, Message Type, Buyer, Supplier, Message Reference Number, Status, Date Range, and so on.

- On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Inquiry.
- 2. Under Inquiry, click Message Inquiry.

The Message Inquiry screen displays.

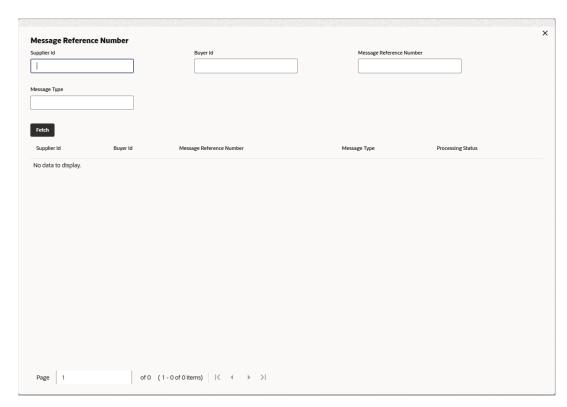


Figure 7-7 Message Inquiry



3. Click on Search icon to get the Message Reference Number Screen.

The Message Reference Number screen displays.



For more information on fields, refer to the field description table.

**Table 7-4** Message Reference Number

Field	Description
Supplier Id	Specify the supplier Id of message reference number.
Buyer Id	Specify the buyer Id of message reference number.
Message Type	Specify the message type of inquiry.
Message Reference Number	Specify the reference number for the message.

4. Specify the fields on **Message Inquiry** screen.





#### (i) Note

The fields marked as **Required** are mandatory.

For more information on fields, refer to the field description table.

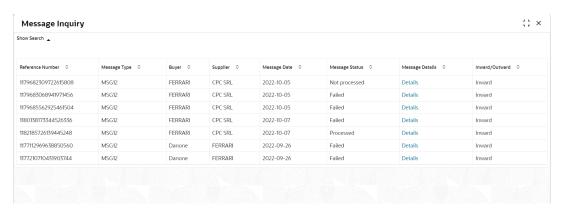
**Message Inquiry - Field Description** Table 7-5

Field Name	Description
Inward/Outward	Select the value to specify if the message is <b>Inward</b> or <b>Outward</b> .
Message Type	Select the value to specify the type of message.
	The available options are:  • MESSAGE 1 – Seller's Information  • MESSAGE 09 – Invoices and Credit Notes
	MESSAGE 12 – Inforces and Great Notes     MESSAGE 12 – Indirect Payment
	MESSAGE 14 – Dispute
Buyer	Click the Search icon to select the buyer party of the message.
Supplier	Click the Search icon to select the supplier party of the message.
Message Reference Number	Click the Search icon to select the message reference number.
Status	Select the status of the message to filter the search result.
	The available options are:  Failed
	Not Processed
	Processed
Date Range	Click the Calendar icon and select the start date and end date of the date range.

Click **Search** to view the search results.

The **Message Inquiry - Search Results** screen displays.

Figure 7-8 **Message Inquiry - Search Results** 



Click on the hyperlink data in the Message Details column to view more details of the record.



### 7.5 Structure Limits Inquiry

This topic describes the systematic instruction to search for party limits based on various criteria such as Limit Type, Entity, Party Id, External Line Id, Date Reference Basis, Date Range, and so on.

- On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Inquiry.
- 2. Under Inquiry, click Structure Limits Inquiry.

The Structure Limits Inquiry screen displays.

Figure 7-9 Structure Limits Inquiry



3. Specify the fields on **Structure Limits Inquiry** screen.

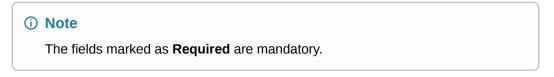


Table 7-6 Structure Limits Inquiry - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Limit Type	Select the type of limit to search for.
	The available options are:
	Advance Payment
	Assignment
	Committed
	Concentrate
	Credit Cover
	Finance
	Invoice
	Main
	Non-Recourse
	Recourse
	Uncommitted



Table 7-6 (Cont.) Structure Limits Inquiry - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Entity	Select the entity type related to the party, whose limits are to be searched.
	The available options are:  Buyer
	Import Factor
	Insurance Party
	• Pool
	Product     Program
	Supplier
	An entry field appears to specify the corresponding entity to search for.
Entity search	Click the Search icon to select the entity value for which the limits is processed.
External Line Id	Click the Search icon to select the line ID from the external system, if applicable.
Date Reference Basis	Select the type of date range to be applied for search.
	The available options are:
	Main Limit expiry Date     Main Limit Sanctioned Date
	Adhoc Limit expiry Date
	Adhoc Limit Sanctioned Date
Date Range	Click the Calendar icon and select the start date and end date of the date range.
Interchangeability	Switch the toggle to search for limit structures where interchangeability is applicable.
Currency	Select the limit structure currency.
Root Entity	Select the main entity in the limit structure.
	The available options are:
	Buyer     Import Factor
	Insurance Party
	• Product
	Program
	Supplier

4. Click **Search** to view the search results.

The **Structure Limits Inquiry - Search Results** screen displays.

Figure 7-10 Structure Limits Inquiry - Search Result



5. Click on the hyperlink data in the **Entity Name** column to view more details of the record.



### 7.6 Structure Limits Txn Inquiry

This topic describes the systematic instruction to search for party limits with respect to a specific transaction based on various criteria such as Reference Basis, Limit Entity Type, Limit Type, Limit Event, External Line Id, Date Range, and so on.

- On Home screen, click Supply Chain Finance. Under Supply Chain Finance, click Inquiry.
- 2. Under Inquiry, click Structure Limits Txn Inquiry.

The Structure Limits Txn Inquiry screen displays.

Figure 7-11 Structure Limits Txn Inquiry



Specify the fields on Structure Limits Txn Inquiry screen.

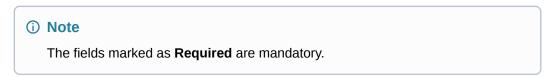


Table 7-7 Structure Limits Txn Inquiry - Field Description

Field Name	Description
Reference Basis	Select the type of reference basis.
	The available options are:
	Finance Transaction Ref No
	Invoice No
	Invoice Transaction Ref No
	An entry field appears to specify the corresponding reference number to search for.



Table 7-7 (Cont.) Structure Limits Txn Inquiry - Field Description

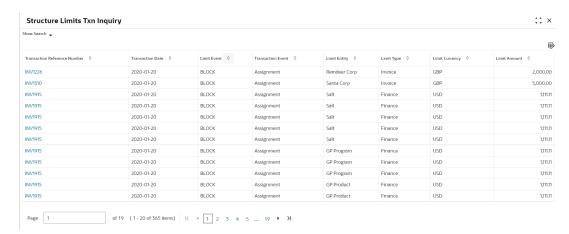
Et al I November	Post title
Field Name	Description
Limit Entity Type	Select the entity type whose limits are to be searched.  The available options are:  Buyer  Import Factor  Insurance Party  Pool  Product  Program  Supplier  An entry field appears to specify the corresponding entity to search for.
Limit Type	Select the limit type of the transaction.  The available options are:  Advance Payment  Assignment  Committed  Concentrate  Credit Cover  Finance  Invoice  Main  Non-Recourse  Recourse  Uncommitted
Limit Event	Select the event for which the limit is applicable. The available options are: Booking Release
Transaction Event	Select the event of the transaction.  The available options are:      Assignment      Auto Debit      De Reconcile      Disbursement      Disbursement Reversal      Paid      Dispute      Re-Assignment      Dispute Resolution      Settlement      Settlement Reversal      Write Off Dispute
Date Range	Click the Calendar icon and select the start date and end date of the date range.
External Line Id	Click the Search icon to select the line ID from the external system, if applicable.
Currency	Select the transaction currency.

4. Click **Search** to view the search results.



The Structure Limits Txn Inquiry - Search Results screen displays.

Figure 7-12 Structure Limits Txn Inquiry - Search Results



Click on the hyperlink data in the Transaction Reference Number column to view more details of the record.

### **Batch Jobs**

This topic describes the events that are part of Beginning of Day (BOD) and End of Day (EOD) batch jobs run by the system on daily basis. These activities are run by the system as a batch job at the beginning and/or end of the day.

This topic consists the following sub-topics:

- EOD Batch
- Independent Batch

### 8.1 EOD Batch

Table 8-1 EOD Batch

Sr. No.	Job Name	Description
1	Mark Cut Off	This job marks the successful completion of EOD and beginning of the new day.
2	Pre-EOD	If there are any finance transactions pending to be processed, this job will not be completed. For example: Finance request waiting for approval or with exception. This job is the first one to get executed as part of EOD batch job.
3	Outstanding Transaction	This job does accrual processing, and fetches the updated interest amount.
4	Modify Contract	This job processes repricing for tenor-based spread.
5	Limits Structure Refresh	This job is triggered for synchronizing the limits data with external system.
6	Invoice Limit Approval Marking	This job is triggered to approve limits associated with the invoices. This job is only triggered when assignment is applicable for products.
7	Stale Invoice	This job marks the Invoices as stale based on the configured settings for each product.
8	Stale PO	This job marks the PO's as stale based on the configured settings for each product.
9	Invoice Acceptance	This job changes invoice status as accepted based on the configurations set in the system.
10	Overdue Invoices	This job updates the invoices as overdue.
11	Invoice Charges	This job calculates the charges for invoices. Invoices are grouped into different bunches and all the applicable charges are applied for a particular bunch. Once the charges are applied, those are calculated immediately if they are online charges. In case of periodic charges, charges are calculated if the charge calculation date matches with the business date on which EOD is run. Accounting entries are posted once charges are calculated.



Table 8-1 (Cont.) EOD Batch

Sr. No.	Job Name	Description
12	PO Charges	This job calculates charges for the purchase orders. Purchase orders are grouped into different bunches and all the applicable charges are applied for a particular bunch. Once the charges are applied, those are calculated immediately if they are online charges. In case of periodic charges, charges are calculated if the charge calculation date matches with the business date on which EOD is run. Accounting entries posted once charges are calculated.
13	Charges Batch Processing	This job calculates & collect periodic charges. All the charges for all the transactions present in the system are calculated and account entries are posted if the charge calculation date matches with the business date on which EOD is run.
14	NPA	This job evaluates status of the loans and marks the delinquency status of the customer along with identification of Non-Performing Asset (NPA)/Inactive customers.
15	External NPA	This job consolidates the customer delinquency status which is sent from external system with the delinquency status arrived in the previous event. If external system integration is not applicable for NPA, this job is not executed.
16	Product Expired	This job closes the product as per expiry date configured in the system.
17	Program Expired	This job closes the program as per expiry date configured in the system.
18	Limit Structure Expired	This job closes the limits structure as per expiry date configured in the system.
19	Alerts	This job identifies all the alerts that are to be sent in EOD, generates, and sends them.
20	Mark EOFI	This job is used to identify the end of SCF EOD and initiates the common core events.
21	Forget Core Accounts	This is a common core event which marks forget flag for the customer accounts as per expiry date.
22	Forget Core Customers	This is a common core event which marks forget flag for the customer as per expiry date.
23	Change Date Job	This job flips the business date to the next working date.
24	Release Cut Off	This job designates the end of common core EOD.
25	Mark TI	This job prepares for the next day transactions.
26	FCI Message Job	This job finds out the eligible FCI messages which have not been sent and creates an FCI message for them and sends them via a configurable workflow.
27	FCI Incoming Messages	This job manages two new batch jobs, one is to saves the messages in envelopes and other one is to process the messages into a details table through configurable workflows.

#### (i) Note

Refer the **Branch EOD** section in *Oracle Banking Common Core User Guide* to configure, invoke, and view the EOD batch jobs.



#### (i) Note

Events marked with \* are executed always.

#### (i) Note

Before executing any EOD batch, it is recommended to take a backup of the database.

#### (i) Note

During the execution of EOD batch jobs, there is a possibility of occurrence of technical or functional errors. These errors are captured and displayed on the UI itself, enabling the user to rectify them.

### 8.2 Independent Batch

Table 8-2 Independent Batch

S No	Event Name	Description
1	Auto-Reconciliation	This job reconciles transactions for invoice, debit note, and finance, with payment/credit note based on configured autorecon rules.
2	Future Dated Disbursement Processing	This job processes transactions with future dated disbursements.
3	Auto Debit Finance	This job processes auto debits for finance transactions as per configurations set in the system.
4	Auto Debit Invoice	This job processes auto debits for invoice transactions as per configurations set in the system.

#### (i) Note

Refer the **Task Management** section in *Tasks User Guide* to create, view, configure, trigger, and view status of the tasks.

### **Process Codes**

This topic describes the information on the manual stages along with the functional activity codes.

The following table represents the manual stages in Finance workflow along with the functional activity codes which can be used for mapping in role activity screen under Security Management System menu.

Table 9-1

Stage	Functional Activity Code	Description
Limit Processing Exception	LimitProcessingException	This is a stage before authorization and transaction falls in this stage when maintenance of limits is not done properly.
Credit Approval Exception	CreditApprovalException	This is a stage before authorization and transaction falls in this stage when exception handling behavior has been maintained as STOP in the Product Parameters screen for limit amount and limit expiry breach.
Create Adhoc Limits Transaction Exception	CreateAdhocLimitsTransactio nException	This is a stage before authorization and transaction falls in this stage if there is a technical error while identifying Adhoc limits applicability in transaction.
Initiate Workflow for Adhoc Limit Txn Exception	InitiateWorkflowForAdhocLimi tTxnException	This is a stage before authorization and transaction falls in this stage if there is a technical error due to which a transaction for Adhoc limits is not initiated in the system.
Auto Finance Exception	AUTOFIN_EXCEPTION	This is a stage before authorization and after limit is blocked. Transaction falls in this stage when auto processing is enabled and it fails due to financing validations being done as per finance parameters maintained in Product/Program/Interest/ Accounting/Charges.
Processing	PROCESSING	This is a stage before authorization and after limit is blocked. Transaction falls in this stage when auto-processing is disabled in Program/Product parameters.
Authorization	AUTHORIZATION	This is authorization step wherein user can either Approve/Reject the record. Transaction falls in this stage when auto-authorization is disabled in Product/Program parameters.
Loan Integration Exception	OBCL_EXCEPTION	This stage is after authorization and transaction falls in this stage when integration with lending product (OBCL) to create contracts or make payment fails.
Accounting Entries Post Exception	ACC_ENTRIES_EXCEPTION	This stage is after authorization and transaction falls in this stage when accounting entries posting integration is configured as 'Yes' in system parameters with another product and posting fails.



Table 9-1 (Cont.)

Stage	Functional Activity Code	Description
Account Posting Response Awaited	ACCPOSTING_RESPONSE_ AWAITED (Not be mapped on screen)	This stage is after authorization and transaction falls in this stage if accounting entries posting integration is configured as 'Yes' in system parameters with another product and the mode of integration is asynchronous and transaction is waiting for response.
External Payment Exception	EXTERNAL_PAYMENT_EXC EPTION	This stage is after authorization and transaction falls in this stage when external payment integration is required as per payment mode in transaction and external payment system integration fails.
Outgoing Payment Response Awaited	OUTPAY_RESPONSE_AWAI TED (Not be mapped on screen)	This stage is after authorization and transaction falls in this stage when external payment integration is required as per payment mode in transaction and integration is asynchronous and transaction is waiting for response.
Limits Update Exception	LIMITS_UPDATE_EXCEPTIO N	This stage is after authorization and transaction falls in this stage when limits utilization/release fails due to technical error. The user can retry the transaction after the technical error is resolved.
Finance Master Update	POSTAUTH_UPDATE_EXCE PTION	This stage is after authorization and transaction falls in this stage when work table to main table approval update fails due to technical errors. The user can retry the transaction after the technical error is resolved.
Instrument Update Exception	INSTRUMENT_UPDATE_EX CEPTION	This stage is after authorization and transaction falls in this stage when update of linked invoice/PO as financed/paid fails due to technical errors. The user can retry the transaction after the technical error is resolved.
Alerts Exception	ALERTS_EXCEPTION	This stage is after authorization and transaction falls in this stage when alerts generation for transaction fails due to technical errors. The user can retry the transaction after the technical error is resolved.
Recon Completion Exception	RECON_COMPLETION_EX CEPTION	This stage is after authorization and transaction falls in this stage for settlement transactions when payment is initiated through Finance Payment Recon (FPR) and FIFO (First In First Out) is not completed and status of the same cannot be found due to technical errors. The user can retry the transaction after the technical error is resolved.
Recon Authorization Exception	RECON_AUTHORIZATION_ EXCEPTION	This stage is after authorization and transaction falls in this stage for settlement transactions when payment is initiated through Finance Payment Recon (FPR) and FIFO (First In First Out) is not completed and status of recon of current finance settlement is not updated due to technical errors. The user can retry the transaction after the technical error is resolved.



#### Table 9-1 (Cont.)

Stage	Functional Activity Code	Description
Recon Step Authorization Exception	RECON_STEP_AUTHORIZA TION_EXCEPTION	This stage is after authorization and transaction falls in this stage for settlement transactions when payment is initiated through Finance Payment Recon (FPR) and FIFO (First In First Out) is not completed and status of payment corresponding to current finance settlement is not updated due to technical errors. The user can retry the transaction after the technical error is resolved.

#### Note

Refer the Role section in *Oracle Banking Security Management System User Guide* to understand procedure for creating roles and assigning activity to it.



# **Functional Activity Codes**

Table A-1 List of Functional Activity Codes

Screen Name/API Name	Functional Activity Code	Action	Description
Accounting Entries	SCF_FA_ACCNT_ENTR IES_CREATE_SERVICE	Create	Create Accounting Entries
Accounting Entries	SCF_FA_ACCNT_ENTR IES_VIEW_SERVICE	View	View Accounting Entries
Accounting Entries	SCF_FA_ACCNT_ENTR IES_VIEW_AUTHORIZE _SERVICE	Authorize	Authorize the Accounting Entries record
Accounting Entries	SCF_FA_ACCNT_ENTR IES_VIEW_UPDATE_S ERVICE	Unlock	Unlock and edit the Accounting Entries record
Accounting Entries	SCF_FA_ACCNT_ENTR IES_VIEW_DELETE_S ERVICE	Delete	Delete the Accounting Entries record
Accounting Entries	SCF_FA_ACCNT_ENTR IES_VIEW_CLOSE_SE RVICE	Close	Close the Accounting Entries record
Accounting Entries	SCF_FA_ACCNT_ENTR IES_VIEW_REOPEN_S ERVICE	Reopen	Reopen a closed Accounting Entries record
Accounting Entries	SCF_FA_ACCNT_ENTR IES_VIEW_COPY_SER VICE	Сору	Copy and create a new Accounting Entries record
Entry Codes	SCF_FA_ACCNT_ENTR YCODE_CREATE_SER VICE	Create	Create Entry Codes
Entry Codes	SCF_FA_ACCNT_ENTR YCODE_VIEW_SERVIC E	View	View Entry Codes
Entry Codes	SCF_FA_ACCNT_ENTR YCODE_VIEW_UPDAT E_SERVICE	Unlock	Unlock and edit the Entry Codes record
Entry Codes	SCF_FA_ACCNT_ENTR YCODE_VIEW_AUTHO RIZE_SERVICE	Authorize	Authorize the Entry Codes record
Entry Codes	SCF_FA_ACCNT_ENTR YCODE_VIEW_CLOSE _SERVICE	Close	Close the Entry Codes record
Entry Codes	SCF_FA_ACCNT_ENTR YCODE_VIEW_REOPE N_SERVICE	Reopen	Reopen a closed Entry Codes record
Entry Codes	SCF_FA_ACCNT_ENTR YCODE_VIEW_DELET E_SERVICE	Delete	Delete an existing Entry Codes record



Table A-1 (Cont.) List of Functional Activity Codes

Screen Name/API Name	Functional Activity Code	Action	Description
Entry Codes	SCF_FA_ACCNT_ENTR YCODE_VIEW_COPY_ SERVICE	Сору	Copy and create a new Entry Codes record
External Account Mapping	SCF_FA_EXT_ACC_MA PP_CREATE_SERVICE	Create	Create External Account Mapping
External Account Mapping	SCF_FA_EXT_ACC_MA PP_VIEW_SERVICE	View	View External Account Mapping
External Account Mapping	SCF_FA_EXT_ACC_MA PP_VIEW_AUTHORIZE _SERVICE	Authorize	Authorize the External Account Mapping record
External Account Mapping	SCF_FA_EXT_ACC_MA PP_VIEW_CLOSE_SER VICE	Close	Close the External Account Mapping record
External Account Mapping	SCF_FA_EXT_ACC_MA PP_VIEW_REOPEN_S ERVICE	Reopen	Reopen a closed External Account Mapping record
External Account Mapping	SCF_FA_EXT_ACC_MA PP_VIEW_DELETE_SE RVICE	Delete	Delete an existing External Account Mapping record
External Account Mapping	SCF_FA_EXT_ACC_MA PP_VIEW_UPDATE_SE RVICE	Unlock	Unlock and edit the External Account Mapping record
External Account Mapping	SCF_FA_EXT_ACC_MA PP_VIEW_COPY_SER VICE	Сору	Copy and create a new External Account Mapping record
Internal Account Mapping	SCF_FA_INT_ACC_MA PP_CREATE_SERVICE	Create	Create Internal Account Mapping
Internal Account Mapping	SCF_FA_INT_ACC_MA PP_VIEW_SERVICE	View	View Internal Account Mapping
Internal Account Mapping	SCF_FA_INT_ACC_MA PP_VIEW_UPDATE_SE RVICE	Unlock	Unlock and edit the Internal Account Mapping record
Internal Account Mapping	SCF_FA_INT_ACC_MA PP_VIEW_AUTHORIZE _SERVICE	Authorize	Authorize the Internal Account Mapping record
Internal Account Mapping	SCF_FA_INT_ACC_MA PP_VIEW_CLOSE_SER VICE	Close	Close the Internal Account Mapping record
Internal Account Mapping	SCF_FA_INT_ACC_MA PP_VIEW_REOPEN_S ERVICE	Reopen	Reopen a closed Internal Account Mapping record
Internal Account Mapping	SCF_FA_INT_ACC_MA PP_VIEW_DELETE_SE RVICE	Delete	Delete an existing Internal Account Mapping record
Internal Account Mapping	SCF_FA_INT_ACC_MA PP_VIEW_COPY_SER VICE	Сору	Copy and create a new Internal Account Mapping record
Account Role	SCF_FA_ACCNT_ROLE _CREATE_SERVICE	Create	Create an Accounting Role



Table A-1 (Cont.) List of Functional Activity Codes

	ı		I
Screen Name/API Name	Functional Activity Code	Action	Description
Account Role	SCF_FA_ACCNT_ROLE _VIEW_SERVICE	View	View Accounting Role
Account Role	SCF_FA_ACCNT_ROLE _VIEW_AUTHORIZE_S ERVICE	Authorize	Authorize the Accounting Role record
Account Role	SCF_FA_ACCNT_ROLE _VIEW_CLOSE_SERVI CE	Close	Close the Accounting Role record
Account Role	SCF_FA_ACCNT_ROLE _VIEW_REOPEN_SER VICE	Reopen	Reopen a closed Accounting Role record
Account Role	SCF_FA_ACCNT_ROLE _VIEW_UPDATE_SERV ICE	Unlock	Unlock and edit the Accounting Role record
Account Role	SCF_FA_ACCNT_ROLE _VIEW_DELETE_SERV ICE	Delete	Delete an existing Accounting Role record
Account Role	SCF_FA_ACCNT_ROLE _VIEW_COPY_SERVIC E	Сору	Copy and create a new Accounting Role record
Alert Contact Details	OBSCF_FA_ALERTCO NTACTDETAILS_CREA TE_SERVICE	Create	Create Alert Contact Details
Alert Contact Details	OBSCF_FA_ALERTCO NTACTDETAILS_VIEW_ SERVICE	View	View Alert Contact Details
Alert Contact Details	OBSCF_FA_ALERTCO NTACTDETAILS_VIEW_ AUTHORIZE_SERVICE	Authorize	Authorize the Alert Contact Details record
Alert Contact Details	OBSCF_FA_ALERTCO NTACTDETAILS_VIEW_ UPDATE_SERVICE	Unlock	Unlock and edit the Alert Contact Details record
Alert Contact Details	OBSCF_FA_ALERTCO NTACTDETAILS_VIEW_ CLOSE_SERVICE	Close	Close the Alert Contact Details record
Alert Contact Details	OBSCF_FA_ALERTCO NTACTDETAILS_VIEW_ REOPEN_SERVICE	Reopen	Reopen a closed Alert Contact Details record
Alert Contact Details	OBSCF_FA_ALERTCO NTACTDETAILS_VIEW_ DELETE_SERVICE	Delete	Delete an existing Alert Contact Details record
Alert Contact Details	OBSCF_FA_ALERTCO NTACTDETAILS_VIEW_ COPY_SERVICE	Сору	Copy and create a new Alert Contact Details record
Alert Decisioning	SCF_FA_ALERT_DECI SION_CREATE_SERVI CE	Create	Create Alert Decisioning
Alert Decisioning	SCF_FA_ALERT_DECI SION_VIEW_SERVICE	View	View Alert Decisioning



Table A-1 (Cont.) List of Functional Activity Codes

			1
Screen Name/API Name	Functional Activity Code	Action	Description
Alert Decisioning	SCF_FA_ALERT_DECI SION_VIEW_UPDATE_ SERVICE	Unlock	Unlock and edit the Alert Decisioning record
Alert Decisioning	SCF_FA_ALERT_DECI SION_VIEW_AUTH_SE RVICE	Authorize	Authorize the Alert Decisioning record
Alert Decisioning	SCF_FA_ALERT_DECI SION_VIEW_DELETE_ SERVICE	Delete	Delete an existing Alert Decisioning record
Alert Decisioning	SCF_FA_ALERT_DECI SION_VIEW_CLOSE_S ERVICE	Close	Close the Alert Decisioning record
Alert Decisioning	SCF_FA_ALERT_DECI SION_VIEW_REOPEN_ SERVICE	Reopen	Reopen a closed Alert Decisioning record
Alert Decisioning	SCF_FA_ALERT_DECI SION_VIEW_COPY_SE RVICE	Сору	Copy and create a new Alert Decisioning record
Alert Definition	SCF_FA_ALERT_DEFN _CREATE_SERVICE	Create	Create Alert Definition
Alert Definition	SCF_FA_ALERT_DEFN _VIEW_SERVICE	View	View Alert Definition
Alert Definition	SCF_FA_ALERT_DEFN _VIEW_AUTH_SERVIC E	Authorize	Authorize the Alert Definition record
Alert Definition	SCF_FA_ALERT_DEFN _VIEW_DELETE_SERV ICE	Delete	Delete an existing Alert Definition record
Alert Definition	SCF_FA_ALERT_DEFN _VIEW_CLOSE_SERVI CE	Close	Close the Alert Definition record
Alert Definition	SCF_FA_ALERT_DEFN _VIEW_REOPEN_SER VICE	Reopen	Reopen a closed Alert Definition record
Alert Definition	SCF_FA_ALERT_DEFN _VIEW_MODIFY_SERV ICE	Unlock	Unlock and edit the Alert Definition record
Alert Definition	SCF_FA_ALERT_DEFN _VIEW_COPY_SERVIC E	Сору	Copy and create a new Alert Definition record
Charge Code	OBSCF_FA_CHGMAST ER_CREATE_SERVICE	Create	Create Charge Code
Charge Code	OBSCF_FA_CHGMAST ER_VIEW_SERVICE	View	View Charge Code
Charge Code	OBSCF_FA_CHGMAST ER_VIEW_AUTHORIZE _SERVICE	Authorize	Authorize the Charge Code record
Charge Code	OBSCF_FA_CHGMAST ER_VIEW_UPDATE_SE RVICE	Unlock	Unlock and edit the Charge Code record



Table A-1 (Cont.) List of Functional Activity Codes

Screen Name/API Name	Functional Activity Code	Action	Description
Charge Code	OBSCF_FA_CHGMAST ER_VIEW_CLOSE_SE RVICE	Close	Close the Charge Code record
Charge Code	OBSCF_FA_CHGMAST ER_VIEW_REOPEN_S ERVICE	Reopen	Reopen a closed Charge Code record
Charge Code	OBSCF_FA_CHGMAST ER_VIEW_DELETE_SE RVICE	Delete	Delete an existing Charge Code record
Charge Code	OBSCF_FA_CHGMAST ER_VIEW_COPY_SER VICE	Сору	Copy and create a new Charge Code record
Charge Decisioning	OBSCF_FA_CHGDEC_ CREATE_SERVICE	Create	Create Charge Decisioning
Charge Decisioning	OBSCF_FA_CHGDEC_ VIEW_SERVICE	View	View Charge Decisioning
Charge Decisioning	OBSCF_FA_CHGDEC_ VIEW_AUTHORIZE_SE RVICE	Authorize	Authorize the Charge Decisioning record
Charge Decisioning	OBSCF_FA_CHGDEC_ VIEW_AMEND_SERVIC E	Unlock	Unlock and edit the Charge Decisioning record
Charge Decisioning	OBSCF_FA_CHGDEC_ VIEW_CLOSE_SERVIC E	Close	Close the Charge Decisioning record
Charge Decisioning	OBSCF_FA_CHGDEC_ VIEW_REOPEN_SERVI CE	Reopen	Reopen a closed Charge Decisioning record
Charge Decisioning	OBSCF_FA_CHGDEC_ VIEW_DELETE_SERVI CE	Delete	Delete an existing Charge Decisioning record
Charge Decisioning	OBSCF_FA_CHGDEC_ VIEW_COPY_SERVICE	Сору	Copy and create a new Charge Decisioning record
Charge Preferential Pricing	OBSCF_FA_CHGPREF PRC_CREATE_SERVIC E	Create	Create Charge Preferential Pricing
Charge Preferential Pricing	OBSCF_FA_CHGPREF PRC_VIEW_SERVICE	View	View Charge Preferential Pricing
Charge Preferential Pricing	OBSCF_FA_CHGPREF PRC_VIEW_AUTHORIZ E_SERVICE	Authorize	Authorize the Charge Preferential Pricing record
Charge Preferential Pricing	OBSCF_FA_CHGPREF PRC_VIEW_UPDATE_S ERVICE	Unlock	Unlock and edit the Charge Preferential Pricing record
Charge Preferential Pricing	OBSCF_FA_CHGPREF PRC_VIEW_CLOSE_S ERVICE	Close	Close the Charge Preferential Pricing record
Charge Preferential Pricing	OBSCF_FA_CHGPREF PRC_VIEW_REOPEN_ SERVICE	Reopen	Reopen a closed Charge Preferential Pricing record



Table A-1 (Cont.) List of Functional Activity Codes

Screen Name/API Name	Functional Activity Code	Action	Description
Charge Preferential Pricing	OBSCF_FA_CHGPREF PRC_VIEW_DELETE_S ERVICE	Delete	Delete an existing Charge Preferential Pricing record
Charge Preferential Pricing	OBSCF_FA_CHGPREF PRC_VIEW_COPY_SE RVICE	Сору	Copy and create a new Charge Preferential Pricing record
Charge Rule Maintenance	OBSCF_FA_CHARGES _RULE_CREATE_SERV ICE	Create	Create Charge Rule Maintenance
Charge Rule Maintenance	OBSCF_FA_CHARGES _RULE_VIEW_SERVIC E	View	View Charge Rule Maintenance
Charge Rule Maintenance	OBSCF_FA_CHARGES _RULE_VIEW_CLOSE_ SERVICE	Close	Close the Charge Rule Maintenance record
Charge Rule Maintenance	OBSCF_FA_CHARGES _RULE_VIEW_REOPE N_SERVICE	Reopen	Reopen a closed Charge Rule Maintenance record
Charge Rule Maintenance	OBSCF_FA_CHARGES _RULE_VIEW_DELETE _SERVICE	Delete	Delete an existing Charge Rule Maintenance record
Charge Rule Maintenance	OBSCF_FA_CHARGES _RULE_VIEW_AUTHO RIZE_SERVICE	Authorize	Authorize the Charge Rule Maintenance record
Charge Rule Maintenance	OBSCF_FA_CHARGES _RULE_VIEW_MODIFY _SERVICE	Unlock	Unlock and edit the Charge Rule Maintenance record
Charge Rule Maintenance	OBSCF_FA_CHARGES _RULE_VIEW_COPY_S ERVICE	Сору	Copy and create a new Charge Rule Maintenance record
Insurance	SCF_FA_INSURANCE_ CREATE_SERVICE	Create	Create Insurance
Insurance	SCF_FA_INSURANCE_ VIEW_SERVICE	View	View Insurance
Insurance	SCF_FA_INSURANCE_ VIEW_AUTH_SERVICE	Authorize	Authorize the Insurance record
Insurance	SCF_FA_INSURANCE_ VIEW_CLOSE_SERVIC E	Close	Close the Insurance record
Insurance	SCF_FA_INSURANCE_ VIEW_DELETE_SERVI CE	Delete	Delete an existing Insurance record
Insurance	SCF_FA_INSURANCE_ VIEW_REOPEN_SERVI CE	Reopen	Reopen a closed Insurance record
Insurance	SCF_FA_INSURANCE_ VIEW_UPDATE_SERVI CE	Unlock	Unlock and edit the Insurance record
Insurance	SCF_FA_INSURANCE_ VIEW_COPY_SERVICE	Сору	Copy and create a new Insurance record



Table A-1 (Cont.) List of Functional Activity Codes

			ı
Screen Name/API Name	Functional Activity Code	Action	Description
Interest Pricing	SCF_FA_INTEREST_P RC_CREATE_SERVICE	Create	Create Interest Pricing
Interest Pricing	SCF_FA_INTEREST_P RC_VIEW_SERVICE	View	View Interest Pricing
Interest Pricing	SCF_FA_INTEREST_P RC_VIEW_AUTHORIZE _SERVICE	Authorize	Authorize the Interest Pricing record
Interest Pricing	SCF_FA_INTEREST_P RC_VIEW_CLOSE_SE RVICE	Close	Close the Interest Pricing record
Interest Pricing	SCF_FA_INTEREST_P RC_VIEW_REOPEN_S ERVICE	Reopen	Reopen a closed Interest Pricing record
Interest Pricing	SCF_FA_INTEREST_P RC_VIEW_DELETE_SE RVICE	Delete	Delete an existing Interest Pricing record
Interest Pricing	SCF_FA_INTEREST_P RC_VIEW_UPDATE_SE RVICE	Unlock	Unlock and edit the Interest Pricing record
Interest Pricing	SCF_FA_INTEREST_P RC_VIEW_COPY_SER VICE	Сору	Copy and create a new Interest Pricing record
Interest Rate Decisioning	SCF_FA_INTEREST_D EC_CREATE_SERVICE	Create	Create Interest Pricing
Interest Rate Decisioning	SCF_FA_INTEREST_D EC_VIEW_SERVICE	View	View Interest Pricing
Interest Rate Decisioning	SCF_FA_INTEREST_D EC_VIEW_AUTHORIZE _SERVICE	Authorize	Authorize the Interest Rate Decisioning record
Interest Rate Decisioning	SCF_FA_INTEREST_D EC_VIEW_CLOSE_SE RVICE	Close	Close the Interest Rate Decisioning record
Interest Rate Decisioning	SCF_FA_INTEREST_D EC_VIEW_REOPEN_S ERVICE	Reopen	Reopen a closed Interest Rate Decisioning record
Interest Rate Decisioning	SCF_FA_INTEREST_D EC_VIEW_DELETE_SE RVICE	Delete	Delete an existing Interest Rate Decisioning record
Interest Rate Decisioning	SCF_FA_INTEREST_D EC_VIEW_UPDATE_SE RVICE	Unlock	Unlock and edit the Interest Rate Decisioning record
Interest Rate Decisioning	SCF_FA_INTEREST_D EC_VIEW_COPY_SER VICE	Сору	Copy and create a new Interest Rate Decisioning record
Limits Structure	SCF_FA_LIMITS_CREA TE_SERVICE	Create	Create Limits Structure
Limits Structure	SCF_FA_LIMITS_VIEW _SERVICE	View	View Limits Structure
Limits Structure	SCF_FA_LIMITS_VIEW _AUTH_SERVICE	Authorize	Authorize the Limits Structure record



Table A-1 (Cont.) List of Functional Activity Codes

			1
Screen Name/API Name	Functional Activity Code	Action	Description
Limits Structure	SCF_FA_LIMITS_VIEW _REOPEN_SERVICE	Reopen	Reopen a closed Limits Structure record
Limits Structure	SCF_FA_LIMITS_VIEW _DELETE_SERVICE	Delete	Delete an existing Limits Structure record
Limits Structure	SCF_FA_LIMITS_VIEW _CLOSE_SERVICE	Close	Close the Limits Structure record
Limits Structure	SCF_FA_LIMITS_VIEW _UPDATE_SERVICE	Unlock	Unlock and edit the Limits Structure record
Limits Structure	SCF_FA_LIMITS_VIEW _COPY_SERVICE	Сору	Copy and create a new Limits Structures record
Product Parameters	SCF_FA_PRODUCT_C REATE_SERVICE	Create	Create Product Parameter record
Product Parameters	SCF_FA_PRODUCT_VI EW_SERVICE	View	View Product Parameter record
Product Parameters	SCF_FA_PRODUCT_VI EW_AUTHORIZE_SER VICE	Authorize	Authorize the Product Parameter record
Product Parameters	SCF_FA_PRODUCT_VI EW_CLOSE_SERVICE	Close	Close the Product Parameter record
Product Parameters	SCF_FA_PRODUCT_VI EW_DELETE_SERVICE	Delete	Reopen a closed Product Parameter record
Product Parameters	SCF_FA_PRODUCT_VI EW_REOPEN_SERVIC E	Reopen	Delete an existing Product Parameter record
Product Parameters	SCF_FA_PRODUCT_VI EW_AMEND_SERVICE	Unlock	Unlock and edit the Product Parameter record
Product Parameters	SCF_FA_PRODUCT_VI EW_COPY_SERVICE	Сору	Copy and create a new Product Parameter record
Program Parameters	SCF_FA_PROGRAM_C REATE_SERVICE	Create	Create Program Parameter record
Program Parameters	SCF_FA_PROGRAM_VI EW_SERVICE	View	View Program Parameter record
Program Parameters	SCF_FA_PROGRAM_VI EW_AUTHORIZE_SER VICE	Authorize	Authorize the Program Parameter record
Program Parameters	SCF_FA_PROGRAM_VI EW_CLOSE_SERVICE	Close	Close the Program Parameter record
Program Parameters	SCF_FA_PROGRAM_VI EW_DELETE_SERVICE	Delete	Reopen a closed Program Parameter record
Program Parameters	SCF_FA_PROGRAM_VI EW_REOPEN_SERVIC E	Reopen	Delete an existing Program Parameter record
Program Parameters	SCF_FA_PROGRAM_VI EW_AMEND_SERVICE	Unlock	Unlock and edit the Program Parameter record
Program Parameters	SCF_FA_PROGRAM_VI EW_COPY_SERVICE	Сору	Copy and create a new Program Parameter record
System Parameters	SCF_FA_SYS_PARAM_ VIEW_SERVICE	View	View System Parameter record



Table A-1 (Cont.) List of Functional Activity Codes

Screen Name/API Name	Functional Activity Code	Action	Description
System Parameters	SCF_FA_SYS_PARAM_ VIEW_AUTHORIZE_SE RVICE	Authorize	Authorize the System Parameter record
System Parameters	SCF_FA_SYS_PARAM_ VIEW_DELETE_SERVI CE	Delete	Delete the System Parameter record
System Parameters	SCF_FA_SYS_PARAM_ VIEW_UPDATE_SERVI CE	Unlock	Unlock and edit the System Parameter record
Accounting Inquiry	SCF_FA_ACC_TXN_EN Q_VIEW_SERVICE	Accounting Inquiry	Menu for Accounting Inquiry
Charge Inquiry	SCF_FA_CHARGES_E NQUIRY_SERVICE	Charge Inquiry	Menu for Charge Inquiry
Finance Inquiry	SCF_FA_FIN_ENQUIRY _SERVICE	Finance Note Inquiry	Menu for Finance Note Inquiry
Message Inquiry	SCFCM_FA_MESSAGE _INQUIRY	Message Inquiry	Menu for Message Inquiry
Structure Limits Inquiry	SCF_FA_STRUCT_LIMI TS_INQUIRY_SERVICE	Structure Limits Inquiry	Menu for Structure Limits Inquiry
Structure Limits Txn Inquiry	SCF_FA_STRUCT_LIMI TS_TXN_INQ_SERVIC E	Structure Limits Txn Inquiry	Menu for Structure Limits Txn Inquiry
Finance Amendment	SCF_FA_OBSCF_SERV	Finance Amendment	Menu for Finance Amendment
Finance Amendment	SCF_FA_OBSCFCM_S ERVICE	Finance Amendment	Menu for Finance Amendment
Finance Settlement	SCF_FA_FINANCE_SE TTLE_CREATE_SERVI CE	Finance Settlement	Menu for Finance Settlement
Transaction Reversal	SCF_FA_TRANSACTIO N_REVERSAL	Transaction Reversal	Menu for Transaction Reversal

# Glossary

# Index

A	F	
Accounting Entries, 49	Finance Amendment, 1	
Accounting Inquiry, 1	Finance Disbursement, 1	
Accounting Maintenance, 43	Finance Inquiry, 6	
Accounting Role, 44	Finance Settlement, 1	
Alert Contact Details, 63, 76, 79	Functional Activity Codes, A-1	
Alert Decisioning, 69		
Alert Definition, 66	1	
Alerts Maintenance, 63	ı	
	Initiate Finance Amendment, 1	
С	Initiate Finance Settlement, 1	
	Initiate Transaction Reversal, 1	
Charge Code, 82	Inquiries, 1	
Charge Decisioning, 88	Insurance Maintenance, 102	
Charge Inquiry, 3	Interest Maintenance, 105	
Charge Preferential Pricing, 97	Interest Pricing, 106	
Charge Rule Maintenance, 85	Interest Rate Decisioning, 111	
Charges Maintenance, 82	Internal Account Mapping, 60	
Create Account Entries, 49		
Create Account Entry Code, 47	ı	
Create Account Role, 44	L	
Create Alert Contact Details, 64	Limits Structure Maintenance, 115	
Create Alert Decisioning, 69	Limits Structure Wainterfance, 113	
Create Alert Definition, 66		
Create Alert Template Details, 76	M	
Create Alert Template ID, 79	Macaga Inquiry 0	
Create Charge Code, 82	Message Inquiry, 8	
Create Charge Decisioning, 88		
Create Charge Preferential Pricing, 97	Р	
Create Charge Rule Maintenance, 85		
Create External Account Mapping, 55	Process Codes, 1	
Create Insurance, 103	Processing Amendment Reversal Task, 45	
Create Interest Pricing, 106	Processing Amendment Task, 8	
Create Interest Rate Decisioning, 111	Processing Disbursement Reversal Task, 5	
Create Internal Account Mapping, 60	Processing Disbursement Task, 1	
Create Limits Structure, 116	Processing Settlement Reversal Task, 26	
Create Product Parameters, 13	Processing Settlement Task, 6	
Create Program Parameters, 26	Product Parameters Maintenance, 13	
,	Program Parameters Maintenance, 25	
E	_ S	
Entry Codes, 46		
External Account Mapping, 54	Structure Limits Inquiry, 11	
	Structure Limits Txn Inquiry, 13 Supply Chain Finance, 1	

### System Parameters Maintenance, 2

#### Τ

Transaction Reversal, 1

#### V

View Account Entries, 53 View Account Entry Code, 48 View Account Role, 45 View Alert Contact Details, 65, 77 View Alert Decisioning, 74 View Alert Definition, 67, 80
View Charge Code, 83
View Charge Decisioning, 95
View External Account Mapping, 58
View Insurance, 104
View Interest Pricing, 110
View Interest Rate Decisioning, 114
View Internal Account Mapping, 62
View Limits, 123
View Preferential Pricing, 101